

MODUL

UNTUK
PELAJAR,
MAHASISWA,
& UMUM

ENGLISH

GRAMMAR



FREE
ANDROID
APPS



YouTube
CHANNEL

**METODE TERBAIK
MENGUASAI
TATA BAHASA INGGRIS
LISAN DAN TERTULIS**

- Kumpulan Lengkap Materi English Grammar
- Tip & Trik Menguasai English Grammar
- Latihan Soal Komprehensif
- Paket Soal Structure and Written Expression

**MIEN KASMINI
SIWI KADARMO**



MODUL

ENGLISH

GRAMMAR

**METODE TERBAIK
MENGUASAI
TATA BAHASA INGGRIS
LISAN DAN TERTULIS**

MODUL ENGLISH GRAMMAR

Penyusun: Mien Kasmini, Siwi kadarmo

Penyunting: Desy Natalia

Proofreader: Amin

Layout: Devi

Desain cover: Anugrah

Diterbitkan pertama kali oleh: Penerbit Cmedia

Imprint KawanPustaka

Redaksi:

Jl. H. Montong No. 57, Ciganjur, Jagakarsa, Jakarta Selatan, 12630

Telp. (021) 78883030 Ext. 213, 214, 216

Faks. (021) 7270996

E-mail: redaksi@penerbitcmedia.com

Website: www.penerbitcmedia.com

Distributor:

KAWAHmedia

Jl. M. Kahfi II, No.12A, Srengseng Sawah, Jagakarsa, Jakarta Selatan, 12640

Telp. (021) 78881000, ext. 120, 121, 122

Faks. (021) 78882000

E-mail: kawahmedia@gmail.com

Cetakan pertama, 2017

Hak cipta dilindungi undang-undang

Katalog Dalam Terbitan (KDT)

Mien Kasmini dan Siwi Kadarmo

Modul English Grammar; Penyunting, Desy Natalia. —Cet. 1.— Jakarta: Cmedia, 2017

vi + 498 hlm; 23,5 cm

ISBN 978-602-6992-97-0

1. Modul English Grammar

II. Desy Natalia

I. Judul

III. Seri

400

Jika Anda menemukan kesalahan cetak, cacat produk, atau kesalahan lain dalam buku ini, silakan kontak kami, atau kembalikan pada kami untuk kami ganti.

PRAKATA

Modul English Grammar ini hadir karena adanya kebutuhan para pembaca buku-buku *TOEFL Preparation* yang telah kami tulis dan yang alhamdulillah menjadi *best seller* dan sudah beberapa kali dicetak ulang. *Modul English Grammar* diharapkan dapat berfungsi sebagai pendukung keberhasilan penggunaan buku-buku *TOEFL Preparation* kami.

Buku ini terdiri atas 27 bab yang masing-masing diuraikan secara runtut dan sistemik yang satu bagian dengan bagian yang lain saling berhubungan. Buku ini dapat dimisalkan sebagai “untaian mutiara” yang membentuk sebuah “kalung”, yang mana satu butir mutiara dengan yang lain merupakan kesatuan yang tak terpisahkan.

Walaupun begitu, kesempurnaan hanyalah milik Allah SWT. Kekurangan adalah sifat manusia yang juga adalah karunia Allah SWT yang tak dapat dihindari oleh para penulis. Untuk itu mohon dibukakan pintu maaf. Bahkan kami akan sangat berterima kasih jika dari pembaca ada yang menyampaikan saran demi kebaikan bagi para pembaca.

Tim Penulis

DAFTAR ISI

Bab 1	Part of Speech dan Main Verb.....	1
Bab 2	Tenses	19
Bab 3	Modals	89
Bab 4	Causative	117
Bab 5	Conditional	123
Bab 6	Subjunctive.....	131
Bab 7	Passive Voice.....	139
Bab 8	Have + Participle.....	151
Bab 9	Auxiliary Verb	159
Bab 10	Pronouns.....	167
Bab 11	Noun.....	185
Bab 12	Adjective	215
Bab 13	Comparative	251
Bab 14	Preposition.....	267
Bab 15	Conjunction.....	287
Bab 16	Adverbs	305
Bab 17	Sentence and Clause.....	325
Bab 18	Reported Speech	335
Bab 19	Agreement	343
Bab 20	Impersonal "It"	359
Bab 21	Introductory	369
Bab 22	Parallel Structure.....	373
Bab 23	Redundancy	381
Bab 24	Gerund dan Infinitive	389
Bab 25	Question	407

Bab 26	Question Tag	419
Bab 27	Word Choice	427
Practice Test 1	.....	447
Practice Test 2	.....	459
Additional 1	.....	473
Additional 2	.....	481
Additional 3	.....	491
Daftar Pustaka	.....	495
Tentang Penulis	.....	497

BEAUTIES OF ENGLISH

Beauties of English are many. Every Language has its own beauties and peculiarities. English is not an exempted one. Being an international language spoken by more than two billion people around the world, English is growing in different directions day by day and hour by hour. It is impossible for a single person to note down all the beauties and peculiarities of English.

A simple attempt has been made by us to present few of the beauties and peculiarities of English as we come across them during our long period of association with English. We acknowledge our sources from where we have taken few materials which are copyrighted.

Many eminent writers and experts have contributed in great measures to enrich this language. It is impossible to mention the names of all those great personalities of English. Any how, we thank them all.

1

PART OF SPEECH DAN MAIN VERB

A. PENGERTIAN PART OF SPEECH

Parts of speech adalah bagian-bagian mendasar dari kalimat bahasa Inggris. Ada 8 jenis *part of speech*, yaitu: *noun*, *pronoun*, *verb*, *adjective*, *adverb*, *preposition*, *conjunction*, dan *interjection*.

Penjelasan singkat dan contoh *part of speech* adalah sebagai berikut.

PENGERTIAN PART OF SPEECH	CONTOH KALIMAT PART OF SPEECH
Noun (kata benda)	
<i>Part of speech</i> ini digunakan untuk menamai orang, benda, hewan, tempat, dan konsep abstrak.	book, house, car, love;
	Your book is on the table. (Bukumu di atas meja.)
Pronoun (kata ganti)	
<i>Pronoun</i> digunakan untuk menggantikan <i>noun</i> . <i>Part of speech</i> ini bermanfaat untuk menghindari repetisi penggunaan <i>noun</i> .	I, you, she, this, those, none;
	It is on the table. (Itu di atas meja.)
Verb (kata kerja)	
<i>Part of speech</i> ini digunakan untuk menunjukkan tindakan dari subjek, menunjukkan peristiwa, atau keadaan.	hit, touch, write;
	You hit the nail on the head. (idiom: melakukan sesuatu dengan cara paling efektif.)

Adjective (kata sifat)	
<p><i>Part of speech</i> ini digunakan untuk menerangkan <i>noun</i> atau <i>pronoun</i>.</p>	<p>a beautiful girl, the expensive car;</p>
	<p>Vina is a beautiful girl. (Vina adalah gadis yang cantik.)</p>
Adverb (kata keterangan)	
<p><i>Part of speech</i> ini digunakan untuk menerangkan <i>verb</i>, <i>adjective</i>, maupun <i>adverb</i> lain. Macam-macam <i>adverb</i> antara lain:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>adverb of time</i> • <i>adverb of manner</i> • <i>adverb of degree</i> • <i>adverb of modality</i> • <i>adverb of frequency</i> • <i>adverb of place</i> • <i>adverb of focus</i> 	<p>yesterday, quickly, very, maybe, always, there, just;</p>
	<p>They met by chance yesterday. (Mereka tidak sengaja bertemu kemarin.)</p>
Preposition (kata depan)	
<p><i>Part of speech</i> ini dikombinasikan dengan <i>noun</i> atau <i>pronoun</i> untuk membentuk <i>phrase</i> (<i>prepositional phrase</i>) yang menerangkan <i>verb</i>, <i>noun</i>, atau <i>adjective</i></p>	<p>in the classroom, on the floor;</p>
	<p>Is sleeping on the floor good for my back? (Apakah tidur di lantai baik untuk punggung saya?)</p>
Conjunction (kata sambung)	
<p><i>Part of speech</i> ini digunakan untuk menghubungkan dua kata, frasa (<i>phrase</i>), klausa (<i>clause</i>), atau paragraf (<i>paragraph</i>). Kata ini terbagi menjadi:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>coordinate conjunction</i> • <i>correlative conjunction</i> • <i>subordinate conjunction</i> • <i>adverbial conjunction</i> 	<p>but, both, and, although, however;</p>
	<p>I like that car, but I don't have enough money to buy it. (Saya suka mobil itu, tapi saya tidak punya cukup uang untuk membelinya.)</p>

Interjection	
<i>Interjection</i> merupakan ucapan pendek yang digunakan untuk mengungkapkan emosi.	<p>“Alas, he failed.”</p> <p>“Oy! Look at me!”</p>

B. MAIN VERB

Dalam Bahasa Inggris, sebuah kalimat harus mempunyai kata kerja utama (*main verb*), tetapi sebuah kalimat dapat berdiri dengan atau tanpa *auxiliary verb*.

Terkadang ada lebih dari satu macam *verb* dalam sebuah kalimat. Mereka adalah *auxiliary verb*, *modal verb*, dan *main verb* (bisa juga disebut *full* atau *non-auxiliary verbs*).

Main verb menggambarkan tindakan utama atau pernyataan dari pelaku dalam kalimat/subyek dan bentuknya berubah sesuai dengan subjek (*singular*, *plural*, orang pertama, orang kedua, orang ketiga).

Sebagian besar pernyataan dalam pembicaraan dan tulisan mempunyai kata kerja utama (*main verb*).

Main verb berubah bentuknya menurut bentuk kata kerja (*perfect tense*, *past tense*, *simple tense*, dll.).

Contoh:

- Dogs usually chase cats.
- But my cat chases my dog.
- My cat is chasing my dog.
- My dog has sometimes chased my cat.
- But, only because my cat ate my dog's dinner.
- My cat has been eating my dog's dinner a lot.

Subject	Verb	
The sound of the dryer	bothers	my concentration

Contoh lain:

- Salah : The prettiest girl in our class with long brown hair and brown eyes.

- Benar : The prettiest girl in our class has long brown hair and brown eyes.
- Salah : Do you know whether the movie that starts at seven?
Benar : Do you know whether the movie that starts at seven is good?
- atau
- Salah : Do you know whether the movie starts at seven?
- Salah : Sam almost always a lot of fun
Benar : Sam is almost always a lot of fun

EXERCISE I:

You have to read the following sentences and underline the word or words that belong to the part of speech specified in the bracket.

An example is given below.

QUESTION : She must have reached home. (**verb**)

ANSWER : She must have reached home.

1. She went to the market and bought some eggs. (**verb**)
2. I want to go now. (**adverb**)
3. What are you doing there? (**adverb**)
4. There is a mouse underneath the piano. (**preposition**)
5. Masons build houses. (**noun**)
6. John is my best friend. (**proper noun**)
7. She looked up but didn't see anything. (**adverb**)
8. My family live in different parts of India. (**collective noun**)
9. That was a difficult question. (**adjective**)
10. She was very impressed with her results. (**adverb**)
11. Although she is poor, she is happy. (**conjunction**)
12. Have we bought enough chairs? (**adjective**)
13. The policeman didn't run fast enough to catch the thief. (**adverb**)

KUNCI JAWABAN:

1. She went to the market and bought some eggs. (verb)
2. I want to go now. (adverb)
3. What are you doing there? (adverb)
4. There is a mouse underneath the piano. (preposition)

5. Masons build houses. (noun)
6. John is my best friend. (proper noun)
7. She looked up but didn't see anything. (adverb)
8. My family live in different parts of India. (collective noun)
9. That was a difficult question. (adjective)
10. She was very impressed with her results. (adverb)
11. Although she is poor, she is happy. (conjunction)
12. Have we bought enough chairs? (adjective)
13. The policeman didn't run fast enough to catch the thief. (adverb)

Notes

The word **enough** can be an adjective and an adverb.

EXERCISE 1:

Look at the underlined forms of have, has or had in the following sentences. Decide whether these verbs are auxiliary verbs or main verbs.

1. This old house has no central heating.
2. Do you have a glass of water?
3. I have had this computer for three years.
4. She has had her dog since 2005.
5. Lisa has been singing for 10 minutes now.
6. My parents had fish for dinner.
7. Did you have a shower this morning?
8. Frank had played tennis when he was 12.
9. Look, the bus is coming. We have to hurry.
10. Has Mrs. Jones written the essay?

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Main verb | 6. Main verb |
| 2. Main verb | 7. Main verb |
| 3. Auxiliary verb | 8. Auxiliary verb |
| 4. Main verb | 9. Main verb |
| 5. Auxiliary verb | 10. Auxiliary verb |

a. Infinitives

Infinitive adalah bentuk dasar dari *verb*. Dalam bahasa Inggris, penulisan *infinitive* biasanya diawali dengan "to". Misalnya: *to read, to walk, to give*, dan seterusnya. Meskipun pada umumnya *infinitive* diawali dengan "to", akan tetapi ada beberapa *infinitive* tanpa "to", biasanya disebut dengan **bare infinitive**. Contoh: *Help me open the window*.

Beberapa kata kerja (*verbs*) lazim yang dapat diikuti oleh *infinitives* adalah sebagai berikut:

hope to, plan to, advise to, command to, compel to, encourage to, intend to, decide to, promise to, agree to, offer to, refuse to, seem to, appear to, pretend to, ask to, expect to, would like to, want to, need to, forbid to, force to, beg to, instruct to, invite to, order to, etc.

Untuk lebih jelasnya, silakan perhatikan rumus penggunaan *to infinitive* berikut ini.

Subject + Verb + to infinitive
I want to study English. (Saya ingin belajar bahasa inggris)
He refused to go . (Ia menolak pergi)
I hope to see you again. (Saya berharap bertemu kamu lagi)
The driver was ordered to stop . (Pengemudi itu diperintahkan untuk berhenti)
I expect to pass the test. (Saya berharap lolos tes)
We're going out for dinner. Would you like to join us? (Kami akan pergi keluar untuk makan malam. Maukah kamu bergabung dengan kami?)
Jenny offered to lend me a little money. (Jenny menawarkan meminjamkan sedikit uang kepada saya)

Mrs. Allen **promised to come** tomorrow.
(Nyonya Allen berjanji untuk datang besok)

Lucy **pretended to know** the answer to my question.
(Lucy berpura-pura mengetahui jawaban dari pertanyaan saya)

Residents are not **allowed to bring** pets in my apartment.
(Peghuni tidak diizinkan untuk membawa binatang peliharaan di apartemen saya)

CATATAN:

Kata "*intend*" biasanya diikuti oleh *infinitive*, contohnya: ***I intend to go to the meeting.***
Tetapi terkadang kata "*intend*" bisa diikuti oleh *gerund*, contohnya: ***I intend going to the meeting.***
Keduanya tidak memiliki perbedaan arti (memiliki arti yang sama).

Di antara *verbs* di atas ada yang langsung diikuti oleh *infinitive* dan ada juga yang didahului oleh objek (*nouns/pronouns*). Sedangkan beberapa kata kerja (*verbs*) lazim yang didahului objek (*nouns/pronouns*) kemudian diikuti oleh *infinitive* adalah sebagai berikut:

tell someone to, advise someone to, encourage someone to, remind someone to, invite someone to, permit someone to, allow someone to, warn someone to, require someone to, order someone to, force someone to, ask someone to, expect someone to, would like someone to, want someone to, need someone to, etc.

Untuk lebih jelasnya, silakan perhatikan rumus penggunaan *to infinitive* berikut ini.

Subject + Verb + Object (Nouns/Pronouns) + to infinitive

I **want you to study** English, now.

(Saya ingin kamu belajar bahasa Inggris, sekarang)

The doctor **advised him to stop** smoking.

(Dokter menasihatinya untuk berhenti merokok)

The police **ordered the driver to stop**.

(Polisi memerintahkan pengemudi itu berhenti)

He **advised me to buy** a new house.

(Dia menganjurkan saya membeli rumah baru)

I **expect Marry to pass** the test.

(Saya berharap Marry lolos tes)

The teacher **reminded the students to do** their homework.

(Guru itu mengingatkan para siswa untuk mengerjakan PR mereka.)

My boss **expects me to finish** the work as soon as possible.

(Atasan saya mengharapkan saya menyelesaikan pekerjaan sesegera mungkin)

Her wife **forces him to buy** a new car.

(Istrinya memaksa dia membeli mobil baru)

Someone **asked me to bring** this package.

(Seseorang menyuruh saya membawa paket ini)

My father **needs the doctor to examine** his condition.

(Ayah saya membutuhkan dokter untuk memeriksa kondisinya)

CATATAN:

Perlu diingat bahwa bentuk kata *infinitive* ini tidak bisa ditambah *-s*, *-es*, *-ed*, atau *-ing*.

b. Bentuk Kata Kerja -ing

1. *Verb dalam bentuk -ing*

Tata bahasa sangat penting dalam bahasa Inggris apalagi jika Anda senang menulis artikel atau bagi siapa saja yang ingin memperdalam kemampuan menulisnya dalam bahasa Inggris. Salah satu poin *grammar* yang harus Anda kuasai dengan benar adalah penggunaan bentuk kata kerja -ing

Bentuk kata kerja -ing sangat penting untuk Anda kuasai khususnya jika pekerjaan Anda berhubungan dengan tulis-menulis dalam bahasa Inggris. Menulis adalah komunikasi tertulis. Jika komunikasi tertulis Anda sangat terstruktur dengan tata bahasa yang baik dan terdiri atas kata-kata yang sesuai, maka karya tulis Anda akan banyak diminati oleh pembaca. Setidak-tidaknya mereka akan suka membacanya. Bentuk -ing adalah salah satu aspek penting dalam tata bahasa Inggris.

2. *Fungsi dan kegunaan bentuk -ing*

Bagaimana kita bisa menggunakan bentuk *-ing* dalam bahasa Inggris? Bentuk *-ing* digunakan sebagai *gerund* (kata benda yang dibentuk dari kata kerja berbentuk *-ing*). Kata kerja berbentuk *-ing* digunakan setelah kata kerja tertentu, setelah kata depan (*in, on, upon, after, before, by, in spite of, instead of, without*), dan setelah beberapa kata sifat (*adjective*) tertentu.

Contoh:

- Peter loves **cooking**. (*cooking* di sini adalah *gerund*)
- I am interested in **reading** history books. (*reading* adalah *gerund* setelah *preposition*)
- Do you consider **changing** your job? (*changing* adalah *gerund*)
- He is thinking about **moving** to a village. (*moving* adalah *gerund* setelah *preposition*)
- Instead of **drinking**, he ate some bread. (*drinking* adalah *gerund* setelah *preposition*)
- You can succeed by **studying** hard. (*studying* adalah *gerund* setelah *preposition*)

Karena *gerund* adalah kata benda, posisinya bisa sebagai subjek atau objek dalam kalimat.

- **Cooking** is my hobby. (*Cooking* adalah *gerund (noun)* yang berfungsi sebagai subjek)

- She hates **smoking**. (*Smoking* adalah *gerund* yang berfungsi sebagai objek yaitu objek kata kerja *hate*)

Banyak terdapat kata kerja dan kata sifat yang diikuti oleh *gerund*. Berikut adalah beberapa kata kerja dan kata sifat tertentu yang diikuti oleh *gerund* (kata kerja bentuk -ing *tapi* bukan kata kerja).

Gerund setelah kata-kata kerja tertentu:

like, love, remember, forget, avoid, prevent, finish, start, begin, consider, postpone, practice, admit, allow, deny, stop, mind, keep, mention, miss, can't stand, go, delay, escape, need.

Gerund setelah kata-kata sifat tertentu (kata sifat yang kebanyakan berpasangan dengan kata depan):

worth, keen on, interested in, worried about, afraid of, good at, disappointed about, crazy about, famous for, glad about.

Beberapa kata kerja dapat diikuti oleh *gerund* atau "*to infinitive*" namun artinya berbeda, misalnya:

"I stopped to talk" dan "I stopped talking".

"I stopped to talk" artinya saya berhenti untuk mengobrol, sedangkan pada *"I stopped talking"* berarti saya berhenti mengobrol.

Juga berhati-hatilah dengan kalimat ini karena artinya amat sangat berbeda:

"I remember going to Bali" dan "I remember to go to Bali".

Dua kalimat tersebut sangat berbeda. Dalam kalimat yang pertama artinya Anda ingat waktu Anda pergi ke Bali, dan pada kalimat yang kedua Anda ingat untuk pergi ke Bali.

Beberapa kata kerja jika diikuti oleh *gerund* atau *to infinitive* tetap mempunyai arti yang sama.

Contoh:

1. *Jane likes to talk to you* dan *Jane likes talking to you*. Kalimat "*Jane likes talking to you*" mempunyai kesan bahwa Jane pernah bercakap-cakap dengan Anda dan ia menyukai itu, sedangkan "*Jane likes to talk to you*" mempunyai kesan bahwa Jane baru menyampaikan keinginannya untuk mengobrol dengan Anda.

Contoh lain agar lebih jelas:

I **liked living** in London. (Saya pernah mengalami tinggal di London dan saya menyukainya.)

I **like to live** in London. (Saya suka tinggal di London tapi mungkin belum pernah mengalami tinggal di sana.)

2. Don't **neglect looking after** your house.
Don't **neglect to look after** your house.
3. She **started working**.
She **started to work**.
4. We **prefer staying** here with you.
We **prefer to stay** here with you.
5. I **can't bear living** there alone.
I **can't bear to live** there alone.
6. She **hates doing** her chores.
She **hates to do** her chores.
7. He **can't stand working** as a salesman.
He **can't stand to work** as a salesman.
8. We **love traveling** in Bali.
We **love to travel** in Bali.
9. The man **continued working** till late at night.
The man **continued to work** till late at night.
10. Lutfi **proposed spending** a vacation in Puncak.
Lutfi **proposed to spend** a vacation in Puncak.
11. The restaurant want to **cease providing** its customers the free wifi.
The restaurant want to **cease to provide** its customers the free wifi.

3. *Bentuk kata kerja -ing digunakan sebagai present participles*

- *Present participle* dapat digunakan sebagai penjelas kata benda (*noun modifier*). Posisinya berada di depan kata benda yang diterangkan.
 - It is a very **interesting** story. ("*interesting*" adalah *present participle* yang berfungsi sebagai *noun modifier*).
 - Look at that **burning** wood. ("*burning*" adalah *present participle*)
- *Present participles* yang digunakan sebagai *noun modifier* juga bisa menunjukkan kegunaan benda yang diterangkan.
 - Use a **walking** stick to walk in the dark. (It is a stick for walking)
 - Go to the **waiting** room, please. (The room is for waiting)
 - I need a good **fishing** rod. (The rod is for fishing)

- *Present Participle* digunakan pada *Present Continuous tense*.
 - Jane is **cooking** in the kitchen. (*cooking* = sedang memasak)
 - They are **working** in the garden. (*working* = sedang bekerja)
 - She is **reading** a book. (*reading* = sedang membaca)
- *Present Continuous Tense* juga bisa dipakai untuk menyatakan rencana yang sudah diatur. Misalnya jika berpergian, Anda telah membeli tiketnya. Perhatikan contoh dalam kalimat berikut:
 - I am **flying** with Lion Air first thing in the morning tomorrow. (Ini berarti tiket pesawat sudah dibeli atau dipesan).
 - Lutfi and Fitri are **getting** married next week. (Undangan pesta sudah disebar).
- *Present Participles* juga digunakan untuk menyatakan bahwa pekerjaan atau tindakan kedua terjadi pada saat bersamaan dengan tindakan pertama. Perhatikan dengan baik contoh-contoh berikut ini:
 - He read his book **drinking** a cup of coffee. (Dia membaca buku sambil minum kopi.)
 - My mom came home **carrying** a big bag on her back. (Ibu pulang sambil membawa tas besar di punggungnya.)
 - The teacher stood up in front of the classroom **explaining** the lesson. (Guru berdiri di depan kelas sambil menjelaskan pelajaran.)
- *Present Participles* digunakan untuk menyatakan bahwa pekerjaan yang kedua terjadi sebagai akibat dari pekerjaan/tindakan pertama.
 - The plane crashed on the mountain **killing** all passengers on it. (Pesawat itu menabrak gunung, menewaskan semua penumpang.)
 - She fell over the bike **bruising** her knees and hands. (Ia jatuh dari sepeda sehingga mengakibatkan luka pada lutut dan tangannya.)
 - The bomb exploded **wounding** the people around. (Bom meledak sehingga melukai orang-orang di sekitar.)

Demikianlah antara lain penggunaan bentuk -ing yang berfungsi sebagai *present participles*.

EXERCISE III:

Infinitive or Gerund

Choose the correct form (infinitive with or without to or gerund).

1. On 17th February 2003, a congestion charge for in central London was introduced.
A. drive
B. driving
C. to drive
2. The aim was the number of vehicles in London's City.
A. reduce
B. to reduce
C. reducing
3. People now have the choice between the charge and not into the City.
A. pay
B. to pay
C. paying
4. The charge has proven very successful in away traffic from the City.
A. turn
B. to turn
C. turning
5. As the traffic has been reduced by about 20 percent, journey times in the City tend
A. decrease
B. to decrease
C. decreasing
6. They are relieved the traffic more easily.
A. find
B. to find
C. finding
7. Before the charge, average speed in the City was about 10 mph.
A. introduce
B. to introduce
C. introducing

8. Now, people who decide the charge can at a higher speed, approximately 20 mph.
- pay → travel
 - to pay → to travel
 - paying → traveling
9. Many Londoners, however, have chosen by bus as delays to buses are now down by half.
- go
 - to go
 - going
10. London's buses have seen passenger numbers by 14 percent.
- rise
 - to rise
 - rising

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. C | 6. B |
| 2. B | 7. C |
| 3. C | 8. A |
| 4. C | 9. B |
| 5. B | 10. A |

c Verb Phrases

Verb phrases atau frasa verba adalah frasa yang tersusun dari verba utama ditambah dengan *auxiliaries*, *adverbs*, *adverb phrases (or clauses)*, *prepositional phrases*, atau *object*. Dalam kalimat, frasa verba berfungsi sebagai predikat.

Contoh:

- He **was smoking**.
- After she **had learned to drive**, Alice **felt more independent**.
- We **will meet at the library at 3:30 p.m.**
- Henry **made my coach very proud**.

Dalam frasa verba, *verb* selalu menjadi *head*, yang dapat disertai *pre-modifiers* dan/atau *post-modifier*. Jika terdapat *pre-modifiers*, bisa berupa kata negatif (*not/never*) atau *adverb phrase*.

- not **say** what he is doing.
- never **needs** money.
- He deliberately **broke** the window.

Kebanyakan *head* verba harus diikuti oleh *post-modifiers*.

- My son **made** a cake.
- We **keep** pigeons.
- I **recommend** the fish.

Verba yang memerlukan *post-modifiers* biasa disebut *transitive verbs*. *Post-modifiers* pada contoh di atas disebut juga objek langsung (*direct object*) atau komplemen (*complement of the head*).

Sebaliknya, beberapa verba (*intransitive verbs*) digunakan tanpa objek langsung:

- Susan **smiled**.
- The professor **yawned**.

Tetapi, banyak juga verba dalam bahasa Inggris yang berlaku sebagai *transitive* dan *intransitive*, tergantung cara pemakaiannya dalam kalimat. Berikut adalah contoh penggunaan kedua bentuk verba tersebut:

- Mark **smokes**. (Intransitive)
- Mark **smokes cigars**. (Transitive)

Objek atau komplemen yang melengkapi frasa verba tidak hanya objek langsung (*direct object*) tetapi juga dapat berupa objek tidak langsung (*indirect object*).

- We gave **James** a present.

Perhatikan juga contoh berikut yang menggunakan verba *to be* sebagai *head*:

- David **is** a musician.
- Amy **is** clever.
- Our car **is** in the car park.

EXERCISE III:

Complete the sentences using one of these phrasal verbs in the correct form!

break down = stop working	close down = go out of business	drop out = stop taking part in something	show up = appear / arrive
Clear up = get better	doze off = fall asleep	move in = start living in a house, apartment, building, etc.	

Example:

Sorry I'm late. The car broke down on the way here.

1. I arranged to meet Jane after work last night, but she didn't
2. "We've bought a new house." "Oh, you have? When are you ... ?"
3. There used to be a store on the corner, but it ... a year ago.
4. I ran in a marathon last week but ... after 15 miles.
5. I was very sleepy. I was sitting in an armchair and
6. The weather is terrible outside, isn't it? I hope it ... later.

EXERCISE III:

Complete the sentences using a word from "List A" and a word from "List B". You need to use some words more than once!

List A:

along	away	back	forward	out	up
-------	------	------	---------	-----	----

List B:

at	of	to	with		
----	----	----	------	--	--

Example:

You're walking too fast. I can't keep up with you.

1. My vacation is almost over. Next week I'll be ... work.
2. We've nearly run ... money. We hardly have any left.
3. Martin isn't very happy with his job because he doesn't get ... his boss.
4. I love to look ... the stars in the sky at night.
5. Are you looking ... the party next week?
6. There was a bank robbery last week. The robbers got ... \$30,000.

EXERCISE III:

Complete the sentences using one of these verbs in the correct form + it/ them/her/you!

cross out	give away	make up	see off
fill out	give back	show around	turn down

Example:

They gave me an application form and told me to fill it out.

1. If you make a mistake on the test, just
2. The story she told you wasn't true. She
3. I don't like people who borrow things and don't
4. Kate is going to Italy tomorrow night. I'm going to the airport to
5. I had a lot of toys that I didn't want to keep, so I ... to my neighbor.
6. Would you like to see the new office? Would you like me to ... ?
7. Theresa was offered a job as a secretary, but she

EXERCISE III:

Complete the sentences. Use the word in parentheses with one of the following!

that book	your cigarette	a blouse	the radio	a word	it	it	them	him
--------------	-------------------	----------	--------------	-----------	----	----	------	-----

Example:

Don't throw away that book. I want to keep it. **(away)**

or

Don't throw that book away. I want to keep it. **(away)**

1. "Do you want this ball?" "No, you can throw **(away)**
2. Shh! The twins are asleep. Don't wake **(up)**
3. We can turn Nobody is listening to it. **(off)**
4. Tony got very upset and started shouting. I tried to calm **(down)**
5. I tried ... in the clothing store, but it was too expensive. I couldn't buy it. **(on)**
6. Please put This is a no-smoking area. **(out)**
7. You can look ... in a dictionary if you don't know what it means. **(up)**

KUNCI JAWABAN:

Exercise:

- I.
 1. Show up
 2. move in
 3. close down
 4. break down
 5. doze off
 6. clear up

- II.
 1. Back
 2. out
 3. along
 4. at
 5. forward
 6. away

- III.
 1. Cross out
 2. make up
 3. give back
 4. see off
 5. give away
 6. show around
 7. turn down

- IV.
 1. it
 2. them
 3. the radio
 4. him
 5. a blouse
 6. your cigarette
 7. it

2

TENSES

A. PENGERTIAN *TENSES*

Tenses menunjukkan waktu kejadian dilakukan, umumnya yang kita kenal meliputi masa lalu, masa sekarang, dan masa yang akan datang. Di Indonesia, kita tidak mengenal adanya perubahan bentuk kata kerja yang menunjukkan kapan terjadinya suatu kegiatan. Kita biasanya hanya menambahkan kata keterangan waktu; seperti besok, sekarang, nanti, dan lainnya. Berbeda dengan *grammar* bahasa Inggris, kata kerja (*verb*) mengalami perubahan bentuk dan/atau pengucapan untuk setiap waktu yang berbeda

Dalam *English grammar*, perubahan struktur kalimat inilah yang disebut *tenses*. Jumlah *tenses* ada 16 buah yang secara garis besar dikelompokkan menjadi 4 yakni: *Present Tense*, *Past Tense*, *Future Tense*, dan *Past Future Tense*.

Sebelum mempelajari lebih jauh, Anda harus mengingat *basic structure of sentence* atau struktur dasar kalimat. Sama halnya di negara kita, *English grammar* juga menggunakan pola:



Dalam mempelajari *tenses* bahasa Inggris, ada 5 kata kunci yang harus Anda ingat:

- *Present* (sekarang): $V_1(s/es)$
- *Past* (lampau): V_2
- *Future* (akan datang): Will/Shall + V_{bi}
- *Continuous* (sedang dilakukan): be + V_{ing}
- *Perfect* (sudah dilakukan): Have/Has + V_3

CATATAN:

- *Be, have, has, will, dan shall* bukan merupakan kata kerja biasa, melainkan *tense auxiliaries* atau *auxiliaries verb*. Ingat, kelimanya juga bukan merupakan *modal auxiliaries*.
- V_{bi} adalah *Verb Bare Infinitive*, sebut saja kata kerja murni yang tidak mendapat imbuhan.

V_{bi}	V_1	V_2	V_3
be	am, are	were	been
be	is	was	been
have	have/has	had	had
	will	would	
	shall	would	

a. Present Tense1. *Simple present tense*Terdiri atas *present*.

Subject	Verb (present)
S	V_1 (s/es)
Rumus: S + V_1 (s/es)	

2. *Present continuous tense*Terdiri atas *present* dan *continuous*.

Subject	Verb	
	Present	Continuous
S	V_1 (s/es)	be + V_{ing}
S	V_1 (s/es) + be	V_{ing}
S	is/am/are	V_{ing}
Rumus: S + is/am/are + V_{ing}		

3. *Present perfect tense*
Terdiri atas *present* dan *perfect*.

Subject	Verb	
	Present	Perfect
S	V ₁ (s/es)	have/has + V ₃
S	V ₁ (s/es) + have/has	V ₃
S	have/has	V ₃
Rumus: S + have/has + V₃		

4. *Present perfect continuous tense*
Terdiri atas *present*, *perfect*, dan *continuous*.

Subject	Verb		
	Present	Perfect	Continuous
S	V ₁ (s/es)	have/has + V ₃	be + V _{ing}
S	V ₁ (s/es) + have/ has	V ₃ + be	V _{ing}
S	have/has	been	V _{ing}
Rumus: S + have/has + been + V_{ing}			

b. Past Tense

1. *Simple past tense*
Terdiri atas *past*.

Subject	Verb (past)
S	V ₂
Rumus: S + V₂	

2. *Past continuous tense*
Terdiri atas *past* dan *continuous*.

Subject	Verb	
	Past	Continuous
S	V ₂	be + V _{ing}
S	V ₂ + be	V _{ing}

S	was/were	V _{ing}
Rumus: S + was/were + V_{ing}		

3. *Past perfect tense*

Terdiri atas *past* dan *perfect*.

Subject	Verb	
	Past	Perfect
S	V ₂	have/has + V ₃
S	V ₂ + have/has	V ₃
S	had	V ₃
Rumus: S + had + V ₃		

4. *Past perfect continuous tense*

Terdiri atas *past*, *perfect*, dan *continuous*.

Subject	Verb		
	Past	Perfect	Continuous
S	V ₂	have/has + V ₃	be + V _{ing}
S	V ₂ + have/has	V ₃ + be	V _{ing}
S	had	been	V _{ing}
Rumus: S + had + been + V_{ing}			

c. **Future Tense**

1. *Simple future tense*

Terdiri atas *future*.

Subject	Verb (Future)
S	will/shall + V _{bi}
Rumus: S + will/shall + V_{bi}	

2. *Future continuous tense*

Terdiri atas *future* dan *continuous*.

Subject	Verb		
	Future	Continuous	
S	will/shall + V _{bi}	be + V _{ing}	
S	will/shall	V _{bi} + be	V _{ing}
S	will/shall	be	V _{ing}
Rumus: S + will/shall + be + V_{ing}			

3. *Future perfect tense*

Terdiri atas *future* dan *perfect*.

Subject	Verb		
	Future	Perfect	
S	will/shall + V _{bi}	have/has + V ₃	
S	will/shall	V _{bi} + have/has	V ₃
S	will/shall	have	V ₃
Rumus: S + will/shall + have + V₃			

4. *Future perfect continuous tense*

Terdiri atas *future*, *perfect*, dan *continuous*.

Subject	Verb			
	Future	Perfect	Continuous	
S	will/shall + V _{bi}	have/has + V ₃	be + V _{ing}	
S	will/shall	V _{bi} + have/has	V ₃ + be	V _{ing}
S	will/shall	have	been	V _{ing}
Rumus: S + will/shall + have + been + V_{ing}				

d. Past Future Tense

1. *Past future tense*

Terdiri atas *past* dan *future*.

Subject	Verb	
	Past	Future
S	V ₂	will/shall + V _{bi}
S	V ₂ + will/shall	V _{bi}
S	would/should	V _{bi}
Rumus: S + would/should + V_{bi}		

2. *Past future continuous tense*

Terdiri atas *past*, *future*, dan *continuous*.

Subject	Verb		
	Past	Future	Continuous
S	V ₂	will/shall + V _{bi}	be + V _{ing}
S	V ₂ + will/shall	V _{bi} + be	V _{ing}
S	would/should	be	V _{ing}
Rumus: S + would/should + be + V_{ing}			

3. *Past future perfect tense*

Terdiri atas *past*, *future*, dan *perfect*.

Subject	Verb		
	Past	Future	Perfect
S	V ₂	will/shall + V _{bi}	have/has + V ₃
S	V ₂ + will/shall	V _{bi} + have/has	V ₃
S	would/should	have	V ₃
Rumus: S + would/should + have + V₃			

4. *Past future perfect continuous tense*

Terdiri atas *past, future, perfect, dan continuous*.

Subject	Verb			
	Past	Future	Perfect	Continuous
S	V ₂	will/shall + V _{bi}	have/has + V ₃	be + V _{ing}
S	V ₂ + will/ shall	V _{bi} + have/ has	V ₃ + be	V _{ing}
S	would/ should	have	been	V _{ing}
Rumus: S + would/should + have + been + V_{ing}				

Banyak buku *grammar* bahasa Inggris memberikan banyak *tenses*, tetapi dua dasar dari *tenses* adalah *present* dan *past*. Semua tentang masalah 'waktu'. Banyak hal bisa terjadi sekarang (*now*), di masa yang akan datang (*in the future*), atau di waktu lampau (*in the past*).

Tenses secara sederhana menunjukkan masa/waktu tindakan atau pernyataan seperti yang ditunjukkan oleh *verb*. Akhiran pada *verb* berubah (*conjugated*) untuk menunjukkan 'waktu' yang sesuai.

'Waktu' bisa dibagi ke dalam tiga periode:

- *The Present (what you are doing)*,
- *The Past (what you did)*, dan
- *The Future (what you are going to do or hope/plan to do)*

Tenses yang kita gunakan adalah untuk menunjukkan tentang kapan kita berbicara yang dibagi dalam *simple continuous* dan *perfect tense*

Berikut ini adalah skema untuk *tenses*:

Present	Simple Present
	Present Continuous
Past	Simple Past
	Past Continuous
	Present Perfect Simple
	Present Perfect Continuous
	Past Perfect Simple
	Past Perfect Continuous

Future	Using Simple Present
	Using Present Continuous
	Using Present Perfect Simple
	Using Present Perfect Continuous
	Using 'going to'
	Using 'shall/will'

e. Regular dan Irregular Verb

Ada dua jenis kata kerja (*verb*) dalam Bahasa Inggris yaitu kata kerja beraturan (*regular verb*) dan kata kerja tidak beraturan (*irregular verb*).

Regular verb adalah kata kerja yang berubah bentuk apabila dipakai dalam *simple past tense*, yaitu dengan menambahkan akhiran *-ed* atau *-d*.

1. Akhiran (*suffix*) -ed:

- Contoh :**
- talk → talked
 - open → opened
 - play → played
 - jump → jumped
 - walk → walked
 - study + ed → studied
 - accompany + ed → accompanied
 - deny + ed → denied

2. Akhiran -d:

- Contoh :**
- arrive → arrived
 - derive → derived
 - arrange → arranged
 - issue → issued

Beberapa contoh *Irregular Verb*:

Verb Word	Past form	Participle	Meaning
be	was/were	been	adalah
beat	beat	beaten	mengalahkan
become	became	become	menjadi
begin	began	begun	memulai
bite	bit	bitten	menggigit
blow	blew	blown	meniup

break	broke	broken	memecahkan
choose	chose	chosen	memilih
come	came	come	datang
do	did	done	mengerjakan
draw	drew	drawn	menggambar
drink	drank	drunk	minum
drive	drove	driven	menyetir
eat	ate	eaten	makan
fall	fell	fallen	menjatuhkan
fly	flew	flown	menerbangkan
forget	forgot	forgotten	melupakan
forgive	forgave	forgiven	memaafkan
freeze	froze	frozen	membeku
get	got	gotten/got	memperoleh
give	gave	given	memberi
go	went	gone	pergi
grow	grew	grown	tumbuh
hide	hid	hidden	menyembunyikan
know	knew	known	mengetahui
Verb Word	Past form	Participle	Meaning
ride	rode	ridden	mengendarai
run	ran	run	berlari
see	saw	seen	melihat
shake	shook	shaken	menggoyang
shrink	shrank	shrunk	menyusut
sing	sang	sung	menyanyi
speak	spoke	spoken	berbicara
steal	stole	stolen	mencuri
swear	swore	sworn	bersumpah
swim	swam	swum	berenang
take	took	taken	mengambil
tear	tore	torn	merobek
throw	threw	thrown	melempar
wear	wore	worn	mengenakan
weave	wove	woven	melambai
withdraw	withdrew	withdrawn	menarik (uang)
write	wrote	written	menulis

B. POLA DAN CONTOH KALIMAT MASING-MASING TENSES

a. Simple Past Tense

Simple past tense dipakai untuk menunjukkan sifat yang tetap dari orang dan kejadian/peristiwa atau apa yang terjadi secara teratur, suatu kebiasaan, atau dalam suatu kegiatan/peristiwa yang sudah terjadi (lampau).

Pada *simple past tense*, waktu kejadian (*yesterday, last two days, last year*) atau periode waktunya (*for two months, for a day, for an hour*) dapat disebutkan secara spesifik.

Simple past tense juga dapat digunakan untuk membentuk *conditional sentence tipe 2*.

1. Pola kalimat (pattern) simple past tense

Simple past tense dibentuk dari verb 2 (*past tense*) atau *linking verb 'be'* (*was, were*).

Apa itu V_2 ? V_2 merupakan bentuk dasar *verb (bare infinitive)* dengan tambahan *-ed, -en, -d, -t, -n*, atau *-ne* untuk *regular verb* atau bentuk yang tidak konsisten pada *irregular verb*.

Dengan demikian rumus *simple past tense* untuk kalimat positif, negatif, dan interogatif adalah sebagai berikut:

Jenis Kalimat	Rumus	Contoh <i>Simple Past Tense</i>
Positif (+)	$S + V_2$ (<i>past tense</i>)	The teacher came.
	$S + be$ (<i>was/were</i>)	I was a stamp collector.
Negatif (-)	$S + did + not + V_{bi}$	The teacher didn't come.
	$S + be$ (<i>was/were</i>) + not	I wasn't a stamp collector.
Interogatif (?)	$Did + S + V_{bi}?$	Did the teacher come?
	Be (<i>was/were</i>) + S?	Was I a stamp collector?

2. Beberapa contoh kalimat *simple past tense* dengan fungsi-fungsinya.

Fungsi	Contoh kalimat <i>Simple Past Tense</i>
<p><i>Simple past tense</i> untuk membicarakan aksi yang terjadi dengan durasi waktu tertentu di masa lampau. <i>Preposition "for"</i> dapat digunakan untuk menyatakan periode waktu kejadian.</p>	<p>Vina and I went to the Ragunan Zoo three months ago. (Saya dan Vina pergi Taman Margasatwa Ragunan tiga bulan lalu.)</p>
	<p>Did he come on time yesterday? (Apakah dia datang tepat waktu kemarin?)</p>
	<p>The party started at 10.00 a.m. (Pesta mulai jam sepuluh pagi.)</p>
	<p>Did you sleep enough last night? (Apa kamu cukup tidur semalam?)</p>
	<p>I studied civil engineering for almost 4 years. (Saya belajar teknik sipil selama hampir 4 tahun.)</p>
<p><i>Simple past tense</i> untuk membicarakan kebiasaan pada masa lampau. <i>Subordinate conjunction "when"</i> biasanya digunakan pada situasi ini.</p>	<p>I often did exercises in the gym when I lived in Bandung. (Saya sering berlatih di <i>gym</i> ketika tinggal di Bandung.)</p>
	<p>When I was a senior high school student, I always got up at 4 a.m. to study. (Ketika saya SMA, saya selalu bangun pukul 4 pagi untuk belajar.)</p>
<p>Untuk menunjukkan bahwa ada aksi berdurasi pendek (<i>simple past tense</i>) yang terjadi ketika suatu aksi berdurasi panjang (<i>past continuous tense</i>) sedang berlangsung.</p>	<p>I was reading a journal in the library when someone burped out loud. (Saya sedang membaca jurnal di perpustakaan ketika seseorang bersendawa keras.)</p>

Untuk menunjukkan bahwa suatu aksi (<i>simple past tense</i>) langsung mengikuti aksi yang telah selesai (<i>past perfect tense</i>).	I had already finished my breakfast when he picked me up . (Saya telah selesai sarapan ketika dia menjemput saya.)
<i>Simple past tense</i> digunakan pada <i>conditional sentence tipe 2</i> .	If she studied hard, she would be pass. (Jika dia belajar keras, dia akan lulus.)
	I would buy a sport car if I had much money. (Saya akan membeli mobil <i>sport</i> jika punya uang banyak.)

EXERCISE:

I. Complete the sentences, put the verb into the correct form, positive, or negative (simple past tense)!

1. It was warm, so I ... off my coat. (take)
2. The film wasn't very good. I ... it very much. (enjoy)
3. I knew Sarah was very busy, so I ... her. (disturb)
4. I was very tired, so I ... to bed early. (go)
5. The bed was very uncomfortable. I ... very well. (sleep)
6. Sue wasn't hungry, so she ... anything. (eat)
7. We went to Kate's house but she ... at home. (be)
8. It was a funny situation but nobody ... (laugh)
9. The window was open and a bird ... into the room. (fly)
10. The hotel wasn't very expensive. It ... very much. (cost)
11. I was in a hurry, so I ... time to phone you. (have)
12. It was hard work carrying the bags. They ... very heavy. (be)

II. Complete the exercise with the verbs inside the box (simple past tense)!

buy	catch	cost	drink
fall	hurt	sell	spend
teach	throw	win	write

1. Mozart ... more than 600 pieces of music.
2. "How did you learn to drive?" "My father ... me."
3. We couldn't afford to keep our car, so we ... it.
4. I was very thirsty. I ... the water very quickly.
5. Paul and I played tennis yesterday. He's much better than me, so he ... easily.
6. Don ... down the stairs this morning and ... his leg.
7. Jim ... the ball to Sue, who ... it.
8. Ann ... a lot of money yesterday. She ... a dress. It ... 100.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- I.

1. took	7. wasn't
2. didn't enjoy	8. laughed
3. didn't disturb	9. flew
4. went	10. costed
5. didn't sleep	11. didn't have
6. ate	12. were

- II.

1. wrote	5. won
2. taught	6. fell, hurt
3. sold	7. threw, caught
4. drank	8. spent, bought, costed

b. Simple Present Tense

Simple present tense adalah *tense* umum yang sering kita gunakan. *Simple present tense* berfungsi untuk menyatakan kalimat yang bersifat fakta, kebiasaan, atau sesuatu yang terjadi setiap saat.

1. *Pola kalimat/rumus simple present tense*



Subjek merupakan sesuatu yang dijelaskan di dalam kalimat, bisa berupa orang ataupun suatu benda.

Verb merupakan kata kerja yang menerangkan kegiatan apa yang dilakukan oleh si subjek.

Suffix/akhiran *-s* atau *-es* kita tambahkan apabila subjek pada kalimat tersebut adalah orang ketiga (*he, she, it*).

Aturan penambahan *-s* atau *-es* ditentukan oleh huruf terakhir dari kata kerja tersebut. *Suffix -es* digunakan untuk *verb* yang berakhir dengan bunyi desis dan "y" dengan mengubah "y" menjadi "i" terlebih dulu.

Contoh:

kiss = kisses
watch = watches
try = tries
say = says
throw = throws

Untuk *simple present tenses* yang tidak memiliki kata kerja kita dapat menambahkan *to be* sebelum kata bukan kata kerja.

2. *Contoh simple present tense*

Ivan writes an article every day.

(Ivan menulis sebuah artikel setiap hari)

He gets up at 5 o'clock every Sunday.

(Dia bangun tidur pukul 5 pagi setiap hari Minggu)

They go to English course every Tuesday and Saturday.

(Mereka pergi les bahasa Inggris setiap hari Selasa dan Sabtu).

Toni is a manager.

(Toni adalah seorang manager)

Toba Lake is the largest lake in Indonesia.

(Danau Toba adalah danau terbesar di Indonesia).

3. *Bagaimanakah bentuk kalimat negatif dari simple present tense?*

Pola kalimat (*pattern*) sebagai berikut:

S + don't + V₁
S + doesn't + V₁ (-s atau -es)

Untuk kata yang bukan kata kerja kita tetap menggunakan *to be* dalam pembuatan kalimat negatifnya, dengan rumus:



Contoh:

Ivan doesn't listens a song everyday.

(Ivan tidak mendengarkan lagu setiap hari).

Coffee doesn't comes from Indonesia.

(Kopi tidak berasal dari Indonesia)

They don't go to school today.
(Mereka tidak pergi sekolah hari ini).

He isn't a singer.
(Dia bukan seorang penyanyi).

Indonesia isn't a stupid country.
(Indonesia bukan negara yang bodoh).

4. *Bagaimanakah bentuk kalimat interogatif dari simple present tense?*
Polanya adalah sebagai berikut:

Do/Don't + S + V₁ ?
Does/Doesn't + S + V₁ (-s atau -es)?

Untuk kata yang bukan kata kerja kita tetap menggunakan *to be* dalam pembuatan kalimat interogatifnya, dengan rumus:

Contoh:

Do they go to school today ?
(Apakah mereka pergi sekolah hari ini?)
Is Malaysia a stupid country ?
(Apakah Malaysia negara yang bodoh?)

Selain diawali kata *do*, kita bisa juga membuat kalimat tanya dengan menambahkan kata tanya, seperti *what, who, why, when, where, how, whom*, dsb untuk mendapatkan alasan dari jawaban si penjawab nantinya.

Contoh:

Why they don't go to school today?
(Kenapa mereka tidak pergi sekolah hari ini?)
How do I do this homework?
(Bagaimanakah cara saya mengerjakan PR ini?)

Kadang kita juga menggunakan bentuk *simple present* untuk membahas peristiwa yang akan terjadi (*future events*). Khususnya ketika membahas tentang kejadian secara formal yang terjadi pada kurun waktu tertentu seperti jadwal, rapat, jadwal perjalanan, program, dll.

Misalnya:

Q : "What time does the train leave?"

A : "It leaves at 17.30."

Q : "What time does the meeting begin tomorrow?"

A : "It begins at 8.00 a.m."

Q : "What time do you arrive at the airport tomorrow?"

A : "I arrive at 6.30 p.m."

Simple present tense digunakan untuk membahas/membicarakan situasi yang tetap dan peristiwa yang sering terjadi.

To have	Short form	Other Verbs (to work)
I have	I've	I work
he has	he's	He works
she has	she's	She works
it has	it's	It works
you have	you've	you work
we have	we've	we work
they have	they've	they work

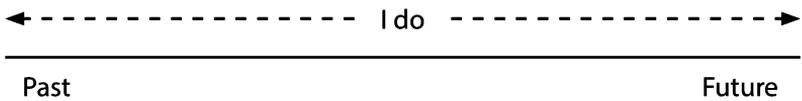
Statements (+)	Statements (-)	Questions (?)	Short answer (+)	Short answer (-)
I work.	I don't work.	Do I work?	Yes, I do.	No, I don't.
He works.	He doesn't work.	Does he work?	Yes, he does.	No, he doesn't.
She works.	She doesn't work.	Does she work?	Yes, she does.	No, she doesn't.
It works.	It doesn't work.	Does it work?	Yes, it does.	No, it doesn't.
You work.	You don't work.	Do you work?	Yes, you do.	No, you don't.
We work.	We don't work.	Do we work?	Yes, we do.	No, we don't.

They work.	They don't work.	Do they work?	Yes, they do.	No, they don't.
------------	------------------	---------------	---------------	-----------------

5. *Regular or permanent situations*

Ketika sesuatu terjadi secara beraturan atau berulang secara tetap, kita biasanya menggunakan *simple present tense*. Ketika menggunakan *simple present, verb* (dengan pengecualian dari *auxiliary verb*) tetap dalam bentuk kamus: **V₁ (-s atau -es) + he/she/it**.

Simple Present Timeline



Misalnya:

Q : "Where do you *live*?"

A : "I *live* in Germany."

Q : "Where *does* he *live*?"

A : "He *lives* in Germany."

Q : "What *do* you *do*?"

A : "I'm a teacher."

Q : "What *does* he *do*?"

A : "He's a teacher."

6. *Frequency*

Simple present tense juga digunakan untuk menunjukkan seberapa seringnya sesuatu terjadi dengan *adverbs of frequency*: *always, usually, often, sometimes, occasionally, seldom, rarely, never, etc*, dan ketika membicarakan hal-hal yang terjadi secara rutin (*daily, weekly, monthly, etc.*)

Misalnya:

"I *always get up* at 6.00."

"I *never drink* coffee before 12.00."

"I *work on my website every day*."

"Every Monday and Thursday I *go to the gym*."

Kita juga menggunakan *simple present* untuk meminta dan memberikan perintah (*to ask for and give instructions*) atau membicarakan serangkain tindakan (*to discuss a series of actions.*)

Misalnya:

Q : "How do I make pancakes?"

A : "Well, first you take 4 eggs and crack them into a bowl, then you weigh out 4 oz. of flour and sieve it into the eggs, etc."

EXERCISE:

1. One of my friends always ... to Bali every year.
 - A. go
 - B. goes
 - C. to go
 - D. going
 - E. gone
2. The train always ... on time.
 - A. arrive
 - B. to arrive
 - C. arrives
 - D. arrived
 - E. arriving
3. They ... many books from the library.
 - A. borrow
 - B. borrows
 - C. borrowing
 - D. to borrow
 - E. borrowed
4. ... you have enough time to attend the party?
 - A. does
 - B. did
 - C. didn't
 - D. do
 - E. doesn't

5. Mr. and Mrs. Paul often ... late.
- A. comes
 - B. coming
 - C. to come
 - D. came
 - E. come
6. ... the meeting take place in your office?
- A. do
 - B. does
 - C. did
 - D. don't
 - E. didn't
7. Do your father and mother ... in a hotel?
- A. stays
 - B. to stay
 - C. stay
 - D. staying
 - E. stayed
8. Does your friend ... about this problem?
- A. understands
 - B. to understand
 - C. understand
 - D. understanding
 - E. understood
9. Mr. and Mrs. Smith ... always happy every time.
- A. am
 - B. is
 - C. are
 - D. was
 - E. were
10. My father doesn't ... coffee every morning
- A. to drink
 - B. drink
 - C. drinks
 - D. drinking
 - E. drank

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. A | 6. B |
| 2. C | 7. C |
| 3. A | 8. C |
| 4. D | 9. C |
| 5. E | 10. B |

c. Present Continuous Tense

Present continuous tense atau **present progressive tense** adalah bentuk kata kerja yang digunakan untuk menyatakan aksi yang sedang berlangsung sekarang (*present*) atau rencana di masa depan (*future*). Karena dapat digunakan pada *present* atau *future*, tense ini sering diiringi *adverb of time* untuk memperjelasnya.

1. *Pola kalimat/rumus present continuous tense*

Present continuous tense dibentuk dengan *auxiliary verb 'be'*, berupa *is/am/are* karena *present tense* (waktu sekarang) dan *present participle* (V_{ing}). Umumnya *present continuous tense* hanya terjadi pada aksi yang berupa *dynamic verb* dan tidak pada *stative verb*. Mengapa begitu? Karena secara umum hanya *dynamic verb* yang memiliki bentuk *continuous*.

Dengan demikian rumus *present continuous tense* untuk kalimat positif, negatif, dan interogatif adalah sebagai berikut:

Kalimat	Rumus <i>Present Continuous Tense</i>	Contoh <i>Present Continuous Tense</i>
Positif (+)	S + be (am/is/are) + present participle	The ships are sailing.
		He is smiling.
Negatif (-)	S + be (am/is/are) + not + present participle	The ships are not sailing.
		He is not smiling.
Interogatif (?)	Be (am/is/are) + S + present participle?	Are the ships sailing?
		Is he smiling?

2. *Contoh kalimat present continuous tense*

Beberapa contoh kalimat *present continuous tense* dengan fungsi-fungsinya dapat dilihat pada tabel berikut:

Fungsi	Contoh Kalimat <i>Present Continuous Tense</i>
<p><i>Present continuous tense</i> untuk membicarakan suatu aksi yang sedang terjadi sekarang.</p>	<p>She is brushing the bathroom floor. (Dia sedang menyikat lantai kamar mandi.)</p>
	<p>I'm driving a car to Bandung now. (Saya sedang mengendarai mobil ke Bandung sekarang.)</p>
	<p>He's learning English in order to be a great guide. (Dia sedang mempelajari bahasa Inggris agar menjadi pemandu wisata yang hebat.)</p>
<p><i>Present continuous tense</i> untuk membicarakan suatu rencana atau perpindahan ke suatu tempat/kondisi.</p>	<p>I'm spending my holiday on Kuta beach next month. (Saya akan menghabiskan liburan di pantai Kuta akhir bulan depan.)</p>
	<p>You can't call me this night. I'm going to my best friend's wedding. (Kamu tidak dapat menghubungi saya malam ini. Saya akan pergi ke pernikahan sahabat saya.)</p>
	<p>The buses are arriving in an hour. (Bus-bus tersebut tiba dalam satu jam.)</p>
<p><i>Present continuous tense</i> untuk mengungkapkan kejengkelan atas aksi yang terjadi berulang kali.</p>	<p>Why is the wild dog always barking at me? (Mengapa anjing liar itu selalu menggonggong pada saya?)</p>
	<p>I'm getting sick of you always asking the same questions. (Saya mulai muak denganmu yang selalu menanyakan pertanyaan-pertanyaan yang sama.)</p>

Contoh:

"Nowadays more and more people are *shopping* on the Internet."

Kegunaan lainnya adalah untuk menggambarkan kebiasaan (*habitual actions*) yang biasanya bersifat negatif.

Contoh:

"He's always *cleaning* his car."

Present continuous tense juga bisa digunakan untuk membicarakan hal yang akan terjadi di masa mendatang/*future*.

CATATAN:

Present continuous biasanya digunakan bersama dengan *verbs of action*, bukan dengan *verbs of state*. Berikut ini adalah *verbs* yang tidak digunakan dalam kalimat-kalimat *present continuous form*:

Conditions : *belong, cost, need, own, seem.*

Feelings : *like, love, hate, want, wish.*

Beliefs : *believe, feel, know, mean, remember, think, understand.*

EXERCISE:

Choose the correct answer for the questions below!

1. Paul is ... his holiday in Bali.
 - A. enjoy
 - B. to enjoy
 - C. enjoys
 - D. enjoyed
 - E. enjoying
2. My father is ... coffee.
 - A. drink
 - B. to drink

- C. drinking
- D. drank
- E. drunk

3. They ... studying English.

- A. is
- B. am
- C. was
- D. are
- E. were

4. ... you reading a magazine?

- A. are
- B. is
- C. am
- D. was
- E. were

5. We are ... a better job.

- A. look for
- B. looking for
- C. looked for
- D. to look for
- E. looks for

6. ... she writing a short story?

- A. was
- B. were
- C. are
- D. is
- E. am

7. Cindy is ... beautifully.

- A. dance
- B. danced
- C. dancing
- D. dances
- E. to dance

8. We ... happy today.

- A. being
- B. to be

- C. is
- D. am
- E. are

9. ... are speaking Japanese.

- A. it
- B. she
- C. he
- D. I
- E. they

10. ... am talking with my mother right now.

- A. it
- B. I
- C. he
- D. she
- E. they

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. E | 6. D |
| 2. C | 7. C |
| 3. D | 8. E |
| 4. A | 9. E |
| 5. B | 10. B |

d. Present Perfect Tense

Present perfect tense adalah suatu bentuk kata kerja yang digunakan untuk menyatakan suatu aksi atau situasi yang telah dimulai di masa lalu dan masih berlanjut sampai sekarang atau telah selesai pada suatu titik waktu tertentu di masa lalu namun efeknya masih berlanjut.

Perfect tense digunakan ketika suatu tindakan atau situasi pada saat ini terkait dengan momen di masa lalu. Hal ini sering digunakan untuk menunjukkan hal-hal yang telah terjadi sampai sekarang tetapi belum selesai atau untuk menekankan sesuatu yang terjadi tetapi tidak benar lagi/tidak ada lagi.

Perfect tense tidak pernah digunakan ketika kita mengatakan sesuatu yang terjadi pada saat tertentu, misalnya *yesterday, last year* dll, tapi dapat digunakan ketika membahas lamanya kejadian tersebut, misalnya *often, for, always, since* dll.

1. *Pola kalimat/rumus present perfect tense*

Present perfect tense dibentuk dengan *auxiliary verb* "have" atau "has", dan *past participle* (V₃). *Have* digunakan untuk *I, you, they, we*, sedangkan *has* untuk *he, she, it*, dan orang ketiga tunggal. Sementara itu, *past participle* dapat berupa *regular* atau *irregular verb*.

Dengan demikian rumus *present perfect tense* untuk kalimat positif, negatif, dan interogatif adalah sebagai berikut:

Kalimat	Rumus	Contoh Present Perfect Tense
Positif (+)	S + aux. verb (have/has) + V ₃ /past participle	I have read the book.
		He has left.
Negatif (-)	S + aux. verb(have/has) + not + V ₃ /past participle	I have not read the book.
		He hasn't left.
Interogatif (?)	aux. verb (have/has) + S + V ₃ /past participle	Have I read the book?
		Has he left?

2. *Contoh kalimat present perfect tense*

Berikut beberapa contoh kalimat present perfect tense dengan fungsi-fungsinya.

Fungsi	Contoh Kalimat Present Perfect Tense
<i>Present perfect tense</i> untuk mengungkapkan kejadian di masa lalu tanpa peduli kapan tepatnya terjadi.	Can you recommend the most delicious seafood restaurant in this town? Yes, I've visited all of them. (Dapatkah kamu merekomendasikan restoran <i>seafood</i> paling lezat di kota ini?) (Ya, saya telah mengunjungi semuanya.)
	I've read this book. (Saya sudah membaca buku ini.)

<p><i>Present perfect tense</i> untuk menunjukkan bahwa suatu aksi terjadi berulang kali di masa lampau (<i>adverb of number</i> dapat digunakan).</p>	<p>She has called you three times. (Dia sudah meneleponmu tiga kali.)</p>
<p><i>Present perfect tense</i> untuk mengungkapkan aktivitas atau situasi yang dimulai pada masa lampau kemudian dilanjutkan sampai sekarang (belum selesai).</p>	<p>I have lived in Cilegon for 3 months. (Saya telah tinggal di Cilegon selama 3 bulan.)</p>
	<p>She has studied in French since April. (Dia telah bersekolah di Prancis sejak bulan April.)</p>
	<p>My brother has worked already/lately/up to now. (Saudaraku sudah bekerja sampai sekarang.)</p>
<p><i>Present perfect tense</i> untuk membicarakan peristiwa yang baru saja terjadi (<i>adverb "just"</i> dapat digunakan).</p>	<p>I've just sent you an email. (Saya baru saja mengirimkan <i>email</i> padamu.)</p>
	<p>The rain's just stopped. (Hujan baru saja berhenti.) [the rain's = the rain has; lihat contraction & apostrophe]</p>

EXERCISE:

Choose the correct answer for the questions below!

1. We have ... three short stories so far.
 - A. write
 - B. writed
 - C. written
 - D. writing
 - E. wrote

2. He ... been sick for a week.
 - A. has
 - B. have
 - C. had
 - D. having
 - E. to have

3. I have ... that film twice.
 - A. saw
 - B. seen
 - C. seeing
 - D. seed
 - E. to see

4. ... has bought a new refrigerator.
 - A. they
 - B. I
 - C. we
 - D. she
 - E. you

5. ... you ever gone to Singapore?
 - A. has
 - B. had
 - C. have
 - D. having
 - E. hadn't

6. I have ... here for a long time.
 - A. be
 - B. not
 - C. has
 - D. being
 - E. been

7. ... have stayed in Jakarta for almost four years.
 - A. they
 - B. he
 - C. my sister
 - D. she
 - E. it

8. ... your friend studied English for three days?
 A. have
 B. had
 C. to have
 D. has
 E. to has
9. My brother has ... his homework very well.
 A. doing
 B. done
 C. did
 D. do
 E. does
10. My mother has ... in the kitchen all day.
 A. cooking
 B. cooks
 C. cooked
 D. to cook
 E. cook

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. C | 6. E |
| 2. A | 7. A |
| 3. B | 8. D |
| 4. D | 9. B |
| 5. C | 10. C |

e. Simple/Present Future Tense

Simple future tense adalah suatu bentuk kata kerja yang digunakan untuk menyatakan bahwa suatu aksi terjadi di masa depan, secara spontan, atau terencana. Tense ini juga dapat digunakan untuk membentuk *conditional sentence* tipe 1.

1. *Pola kalimat/rumus simple future tense*

Simple future tense dibentuk dari modal "will" atau "shall" dan *bare infinitive* (bentuk dasar *verb*) atau dibentuk dari *phrasal modal* "be going to" dan *bare infinitive* (*base form verb*).

Dengan demikian rumus *simple future tense* untuk kalimat positif, negatif, dan interogatif sebagai berikut:

Jenis Kalimat	Rumus	Contoh <i>Simple Future Tense</i>
Positif (+)	S + will + bare infinitive S + be (am/is/are) going to + bare infinitive	You will win.
		They are going to come.
Negatif (-)	S+will+not+bareinfinitive S + be (am/is/are) + not + going to + bare infinitive	You won't win.
		They aren't going to come.
Interogatif (?)	Will + S + bare infinitive Be (am/is/are) + S + going to + bare infinitive?	Will you win?
		Are they going to come?

2. *Simple future tense dan present continuous tense*

Present continuous tense (selain verb "go") dapat juga digunakan untuk menyatakan aksi di masa depan seperti *simple future tense*.

Contoh: I'm presenting the weekly report at today's meeting.

Selain itu, kombinasi *will* dan *be + present participle* juga dapat digunakan untuk menghindari nada tidak sabar (*impatient*) atau mendesak (*insistent*). Kalimat akan terdengar demikian jika hanya ada "*will*" (tanpa *be + present participle*) karena penekanan (*stress*) hanya terjadi pada kata tersebut.

Contoh: When will you present it?

When will you be presenting it?

3. *Contoh kalimat simple future tense*

Beberapa contoh kalimat *simple future tense* dengan fungsi-fungsinya adalah sebagai berikut:

Fungsi	Contoh kalimat <i>Simple Future Tense</i>
<p><i>Simple future tense (will)</i> untuk membuat keputusan secara spontan untuk melakukan sesuatu (tanpa rencana).</p>	<p>Wait a minute. I will change my clothes. (Tunggu sebentar. Saya akan mengganti baju.)</p>
	<p>You look nervous. I'll give you a glass of water. (Kamu tampak cemas. Saya akan memberimu segelas air.)</p>
<p><i>Simple future tense (will)</i> untuk memprediksi masa depan (tanpa rencana).</p>	<p>The doom will not happen in 2014. (Kiamat tidak akan terjadi pada tahun 2014.)</p>
	<p>Which hotels do you think will offer the best service? (Hotel yang mana yang kamu pikir akan menawarkan pelayanan terbaik?)</p>
	<p>He'll be angry. (Dia akan marah.)</p>
	<p>The sandstorm will come. (Badai pasir akan datang.)</p>
	<p>I think he will pass. (Saya pikir dia akan lulus.)</p>
<p><i>Present continuous tense</i> digunakan untuk menyatakan rencana yang sudah dipikirkan dan dibahas dengan orang lain (<i>arrangement</i>).</p>	<p>I'm visiting South Korea tomorrow. (Saya akan mengunjungi Korea Selatan besok.)</p>
	<p>She's going to the physiotherapist next Monday. (Dia akan ke fisioterapis Senin depan.)</p>
<p><i>Simple future tense</i> dengan "<i>going + to</i>" untuk menyatakan rencana di masa depan yang sudah dipikirkan sebelumnya (<i>intention</i>).</p>	<p>I'm going to send this letter tomorrow. (Saya akan mengirimkan surat ini besok.)</p>
	<p>He is going to go to French to continue his study. (Dia akan pergi ke Prancis untuk melanjutkan sekolahnya.)</p>

Simple future tense digunakan untuk membentuk *conditional sentence* tipe 1.

I will come if they invite me.
(Saya akan datang jika mereka mengundang saya.)

EXERCISE:

Choose the correct answer for the questions below!

1. My brother will ... here by car.
 - A. coming
 - B. to come
 - C. came
 - D. come
 - E. comes

2. ... we go to school together?
 - A. shall
 - B. will
 - C. are
 - D. is
 - E. does

3. They ... in Bali tomorrow.
 - A. will
 - B. will be
 - C. shall
 - D. shall be
 - E. are

4. I ... here soon.
 - A. will
 - B. shall
 - C. shall be
 - D. will not
 - E. shall not

5. Mr. Oscar will ... his house.
 - A. sold
 - B. sell
 - C. to sell
 - D. selling
 - E. sells

6. Will he ... English tonight?
 - A. studies
 - B. studied
 - C. study
 - D. to study
 - E. studying

7. I think she will be ... soon.
 - A. fine
 - B. come
 - C. think
 - D. study
 - E. buy

8. She will ... her holiday in Bali next month.
 - A. spent
 - B. spending
 - C. spend
 - D. to spend
 - E. spends

9. Miss Caroline will ... the museum next Sunday.
 - A. visited
 - B. visiting
 - C. to visit
 - D. visit
 - E. visits

10. We'll ... harder next year.
 - A. studying
 - B. to study
 - C. studied
 - D. studies
 - E. study

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. D | 6. C |
| 2. A | 7. A |
| 3. B | 8. C |
| 4. C | 9. D |
| 5. B | 10. E |

f. Present Perfect Continuous Tense

Present perfect continuous tense adalah suatu bentuk kata kerja yang digunakan untuk menyatakan aksi yang telah selesai pada suatu titik di masa lalu atau aksi telah dimulai di masa lalu dan terus berlanjut sampai sekarang. Aksi pada *present perfect continuous tense* biasanya memiliki durasi waktu tertentu dan memiliki relevansi dengan kondisi sekarang.

1. *Pola kalimat/rumus present perfect continuous tense*

Present perfect continuous tense dibentuk dengan *auxiliary verb* "have" atau "has", "been" dan *present participle* (V_{ing}). "Have" digunakan untuk *I, you, they, we*, sedangkan "has" untuk *he, she, it*, dan orang ketiga tunggal.

Secara umum *present perfect continuous tense* hanya terjadi pada aksi yang berupa *dynamic verb*, tidak pada *stative verb* karena umumnya hanya *dynamic verb* yang memiliki bentuk *continuous*. [Baca: *Stative Verb* dengan *Bentuk Progressive*]

Dengan demikian rumus *present perfect continuous tense* untuk kalimat positif, negatif, dan interogatif adalah sebagai berikut:

Jenis Kalimat	Rumus	Contoh <i>Present Perfect Continuous Tense</i>
Positif (+)	S + have/has + been + V_{ing} /present participle	She has been driving.
		The toddlers have been sleeping.
Negatif (-)	S + have/has + not + been + V_{ing} /present participle	She has not been driving.
		The toddlers haven't been sleeping.
Interogatif (?)	have/has + S + been + V_{ing} /present participle?	Has she been driving?
		Have the toddlers been sleeping?

2. *Contoh kalimat present perfect continuous tense*

Beberapa contoh kalimat *present perfect continuous tense* dengan fungsi-fungsinya adalah sebagai berikut:

Fungsi	Contoh Kalimat <i>Present Perfect Continuous Tense</i>
<p><i>Present perfect continuous tense</i> untuk menunjukkan aksi yang telah selesai pada suatu titik di masa lampau diikuti relevansinya dengan kondisi saat ini (<i>present</i>).</p>	<p>The construction labors are thirsty since they have been removing the scaffoldings. (Pekerja konstruksi haus karena mereka telah memindahkan perancah.)</p>
	<p>Mandy feels full as she's been eating a half of the tart. (Mandy kenyang karena dia telah memakan separuh kue tar.)</p>
	<p>I have been working with my computer all day, and now I want some delicious foods. (Saya telah bekerja dengan komputer sepanjang hari, dan sekarang saya ingin beberapa makanan lezat.)</p>
<p><i>Present perfect continuous tense</i> untuk menunjukkan aksi yang baru saja selesai. Biasanya menggunakan <i>adverb just</i>.</p>	<p>It has just been snowing in Japan. (Baru saja turun salju di Jepang.)</p>
<p><i>Present perfect continuous tense</i> untuk menunjukkan aksi yang telah dimulai di masa lampau dan berlanjut sampai sekarang.</p>	<p>I've been driving a car through the rain for an hour. (Saya telah sedang mengendarai mobil menembus hujan selama satu jam.)</p>
	<p>The passangers have been waiting for the next flight since this morning. (Para penumpang telah menunggu penerbangan berikutnya sejak pagi ini.)</p>

EXERCISE:

1. They ... anything for the past hour.
A. haven't been doing
B. hasn't been doing
2. It ... hard.
A. have just been raining
B. has just been raining
3. My boss ... your cooperation proposal for days.
A. has been reading
B. has been being read
4. He and family ... in poverty since their company went bankrupt.
A. has been living
B. have been living
5. How long ... property in the gym?
A. has he been working out
B. have he been working out
6. She ... with the research team since January.
A. has been working
B. have been working
7. ... here for over two hours?
A. does she has been waiting
B. has she been waiting
8. Why ... Mandarin classes for the last three weeks?
A. have not you been attending
B. have you not attended
9. I'm sleepy because I ... all night.
A. have been staying up
B. has been staying up
10. My brother ... about buying a used car from the dealer. Do you think it's a good idea?
A. has been thinking
B. have been thinking

KUNCI JAWABAN:

1. A
2. B
3. A
4. B
5. A
6. A
7. B
8. A
9. A
10. A

g. Past Continuous Tense

Past continuous tense atau **past progressive tense** adalah suatu bentuk kata kerja yang digunakan untuk menyatakan bahwa suatu aksi sedang terjadi pada waktu tertentu di masa lampau. Aksi tersebut telah dimulai tapi belum selesai pada saat itu.

1. Pola kalimat/rumus past continuous tense

Past continuous tense dibentuk dengan *auxiliary verb "be"*, berupa *was/were* karena terjadi di masa lalu (*past tense*), dan *present participle*. *Was* digunakan untuk *singular subject* (*I, she, he, it*, dan kata ganti orang ketiga), dan *were* digunakan untuk *plural subject* (*you, they, we*, orang ketiga jamak).

Past continuous tense umumnya hanya terjadi pada aksi yang berupa *dynamic verb*, tidak pada *stative verb* karena secara umum hanya *dynamic verb* yang memiliki bentuk *continuous* [Baca: *Stative Verb dengan Bentuk Progressive*].

Dengan demikian rumus *past continuous tense* untuk kalimat positif, negatif, dan interogatif adalah sebagai berikut:

Jenis Kalimat	Rumus	Contoh Past Continuous Tense
Positif (+)	S + be (was/were) + V _{ing} /present participle	The team was running.
		The workers were queuing.
Negatif (-)	S + be (was/were) + not + V _{ing} /present participle	The team was not running.
		The workers weren't queuing.

Interogatif (?)	Be (was/were) + S + V _{ing} /present participle?	Was the team running?
		Were the workers queuing?

2. *Penggunaan dan contoh kalimat past continuous tense*

Beberapa penggunaan dan contoh kalimat *past continuous tense* adalah sebagai berikut:

Fungsi	Contoh kalimat <i>Past Continuous Tense</i>
<i>Past continuous tense</i> untuk mengindikasikan suatu aksi yang terjadi selama momen tertentu di masa lampau.	I was shopping at this time yesterday. (Saya sedang belanja pada jam ini kemarin.)
	What was she doing at 5 a.m. this morning? (Apa yang sedang dia lakukan pada pukul 5 pagi ini?)
	They were roasting corn at this time last night. (Mereka sedang membakar jagung pada jam ini kemarin malam.)
	I was doing physically exercises all day yesterday. (Saya sedang melakukan latihan-latihan fisik sepanjang hari kemarin.)
Untuk menunjukkan bahwa ada aksi berdurasi pendek (<i>simple past tense</i>) yang terjadi ketika suatu aksi berdurasi panjang (<i>past continuous tense</i>) sedang berlangsung. <i>Subordinate conjunction</i> "when" atau "while" dapat digunakan	She was sleeping when you called her. (Dia sedang tidur ketika kamu meneleponnya.)
	The door was knocked while I was studying . (Pintu diketuk ketika saya sedang belajar.)

<i>Past continuous tense</i> digunakan untuk mengolok-olok atau mengkritik aksi yang terjadi pada interval acak namun sebenarnya merupakan kebiasaan alami.	The girl was always yelling out loud. (Anak perempuan itu selalu menjerit keras-keras.)
	My neighbor was always chasing stray cats off with his broom. (Tetangga saya selalu mengusir kucing-kucing liar dengan sapunya.)

EXERCISE:

Choose the correct answer for the questions below!

- My children ... football when I arrived at home.
 - were played
 - is playing
 - were playing
 - played
 - was playing
- When his wife woke him up, he ... a nice dream.
 - was having
 - were having
 - is having
 - had
 - have
- ... when her father left the house this morning.
 - she is washing clothes
 - she was washing clothes
 - she washes clothes
 - she wash clothes
 - she will wash clothes
- When I did my homework, my younger brothers ... English.
 - were studying
 - were studied
 - was studying
 - is studying
 - are studying

5. I was ... a car when the accident suddenly happen.
 - A. drove
 - B. driven
 - C. drive
 - D. driving
 - E. to drive

6. When Clara ... visiting Bali, she met a famous pop singer there.
 - A. does
 - B. were
 - C. are
 - D. is
 - E. was

7. Mr. Oscar was ... a cup of tea when i saw him yesterday.
 - A. drank
 - B. drunk
 - C. drinking
 - D. drinks
 - E. drink

8. When our father came back from his office, ...
 - A. we were watching TV
 - B. we are watching TV
 - C. we watch TV
 - D. we will watch TV
 - E. we shall watch TV

9. Cindy was ... an article when her baby boy cried.
 - A. written
 - B. writing
 - C. wrote
 - D. writes
 - E. write

10. When Paul ... a newspaper, he found an interesting story on it.
 - A. is reading
 - B. read
 - C. reads
 - D. will be reading
 - E. was reading

KUNCI JAWABAN:

1. C
2. A
3. B
4. A
5. D
6. E
7. C
8. A
9. B
10. E

h. Past Perfect Continuous Tense

Past perfect continuous tense adalah suatu bentuk kata kerja yang digunakan untuk mengungkapkan suatu aksi (dengan durasi waktu tertentu) telah selesai pada suatu titik waktu tertentu di masa lalu.

1. Pola kalimat/rumus *past perfect continuous tense*

Past perfect continuous tense dibentuk dengan *auxiliary verb* "had", "been" dan *present participle*. Secara umum *past perfect continuous tense* hanya terjadi pada aksi yang berupa *dynamic verb*, tidak pada *stative verb* karena umumnya hanya *dynamic verb* yang memiliki bentuk *continuous*.

Dengan demikian rumus *past perfect continuous tense* untuk kalimat positif, negatif, dan interogatif adalah sebagai berikut:

Jenis Kalimat	Rumus	Contoh <i>Past Perfect Continuous Tense</i>
Positif (+)	S + had + been + V _{ing} /present participle	Lia had been walking.
		The labors had been demonstrating.
Negatif (-)	S + had + not + been + V _{ing} /present participle	Lia had not been walking.
		The labors hadn't been demonstrating.
Interogatif (?)	had + S + been + V _{ing} /present participle?	Had Lia been walking?
		Had the labors been demonstrating?

2. *Contoh kalimat past perfect continuous tense*

Beberapa contoh kalimat *past perfect continuous tense* dengan berbagai fungsinya adalah sebagai berikut:

Fungsi	Contoh Kalimat <i>Past Perfect Continuous Tense</i>
<p><i>Past perfect continuous tense</i> untuk mengekspresikan aksi yang panjang di masa lampau sebelum aksi lainnya terjadi.</p>	<p>When the guests came, we had been waiting for an hour. (Ketika para tamu datang, kami telah menunggu selama satu jam.)</p>
	<p>He had been standing in front of the door for thirty minutes before it was opened. (Dia telah berdiri di depan pintu selama tiga puluh menit sebelum dibukakan.)</p>
<p><i>Past perfect continuous tense</i> untuk memberitahukan berapa lama sesuatu terjadi (<i>period of time</i>) atau sampai waktu tertentu di masa lampau.</p>	<p>She was annoyed since she had been waiting for 2 hours on the bus station. (Dia kesal karena telah menunggu selama 2 jam di halte bus.)</p>
	<p>By the time the teacher came, the students had been reading a half part of the text. (Pada waktu guru datang, para siswa telah membaca separuh bagian dari teks.)</p>
	<p>I had been working with my computer all day, and all I wanted to do was eat some chocolate. (Saya telah bekerja dengan komputer sepanjang hari, dan yang ingin saya lakukan adalah makan cokelat.)</p>

EXERCISE:

Choose the correct answer for the questions below!

1. Oscar ... an article for about three hours.
 - A. had been writing
 - B. had been written
 - C. had be writing

- D. had be written
E. had is writing
2. We ... here since 2009.
A. hadn't been lived
B. had been not living
C. hadn't been living
D. hadn't be living
E. hadn't be lived
3. ... learning english for several hours?
A. had she be
B. had she been
C. had be she
D. had is she
E. had she is
4. We ... spending our holiday in Bali for several days.
A. had be
B. had are
C. had is
D. had been
E. are had
5. They had been ... in this company for about six years.
A. worked
B. works
C. to work
D. work
E. working
6. ... borrowing this book from the library for several days?
A. had been Cindy
B. had Cindy been
C. had Cindy be
D. had be Cindy
E. had is Cindy
7. She ... sleeping for an hour.
A. hadn't be
B. is hadn't
C. hadn't is
D. hadn't been
E. hadn't are

8. Paul ... for you since 9 o'clock.
- had been waiting
 - had been waited
 - had be waiting
 - had be waited
 - had is waiting
9. ... standing here for long time?
- had been you
 - had you be
 - had be you
 - had you are
 - had you been
10. He hadn't been ... the problem for long time.
- discussed
 - discussing
 - to discuss
 - to discussing
 - discusses

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. A | 6. B |
| 2. C | 7. D |
| 3. B | 8. A |
| 4. D | 9. E |
| 5. E | 10. B |

i. Future Continuous Tense

Future continuous tense atau **future progressive tense** adalah bentuk kata kerja yang digunakan untuk menyatakan aksi yang akan sedang terjadi pada waktu tertentu di masa depan. Aksi tersebut telah dimulai tapi belum selesai pada saat itu.

- Pola kalimat/rumus future continuous tense*

Future continuous tense dibentuk dengan *auxiliary verb "will"* dan *"be"*, dan *present participle*. Secara umum *future continuous*

tense hanya terjadi pada aksi yang berupa *dynamic verb*, tidak pada *stative verb* karena umumnya hanya *dynamic verb* yang memiliki bentuk *continuous*.

Dengan demikian rumus *future continuous tense* untuk kalimat positif, negatif, dan interogatif sebagai berikut:

Jenis Kalimat	Rumus	Contoh <i>Future Continuous Tense</i>
Positif (+)	S + will be + V _{ing} /present participle	He will be sleeping.
		You and I will be walking.
Negatif (-)	S + will + not + be + V _{ing} /present participle	He will not be sleeping.
		You and I won't be walking.
Interogatif (?)	Will + S + be + V _{ing} /present participle?	Will he be sleeping?
		Will you and I be walking?

2. *Contoh kalimat future continuous tense*

Beberapa contoh kalimat *future continuous tense* sebagai berikut:

Fungsi	Contoh <i>Kalimat Future Continuous Tense</i>
<i>Future continuous tense</i> untuk mengindikasikan suatu aksi yang akan sedang terjadi pada waktu tertentu di masa depan.	I together with my friend will be walking on Carita Beach tomorrow morning. (Saya bersama teman saya akan berjalan-jalan di Pantai Carita besok pagi.)
	Reny will be working at the office when you arrive. (Reny akan sedang bekerja di kantor ketika kamu tiba.)
	He will be sleeping at 10 p.m. (Dia akan sedang tidur pukul 10 malam.)

EXERCISE:

Choose the correct answer for the questions below!

1. Tom will be ... English for an hour if you invite him to play football at 8 a.m.
 - A. study
 - B. studied
 - C. studies
 - D. studying
 - E. to study
2. He ... be cleaning his room if you come to his house at 9 a.m. next Sunday.
 - A. will
 - B. shall
 - C. do
 - D. does
 - E. did
3. If I come to your house at 8 p.m. tonight, will you ... studying seriously?
 - A. been
 - B. do
 - C. does
 - D. did
 - E. be
4. If you meet them at 8 p.m. tonight, they will be ... their homework.
 - A. done
 - B. doing
 - C. does
 - D. do
 - E. did
5. We will ... staying in Paris at 9 a.m. next Saturday.
 - A. been
 - B. does
 - C. be
 - D. do
 - E. did

6. If he comes to her house next Sunday, ... she be going anywhere?
- A. shall
 - B. do
 - C. does
 - D. did
 - E. will
7. He will not be ... an article for his blog at 8 o'clock tomorrow morning.
- A. writing
 - B. written
 - C. write
 - D. to write
 - E. writes
8. If I call him at 10 p.m. tonight, will he be ... soundly?
- A. slept
 - B. to sleep
 - C. sleeping
 - D. sleeps
 - E. sleep
9. They will not ... doing anything at 5 o'clock tomorrow afternoon.
- A. been
 - B. be
 - C. are
 - D. is
 - E. does
10. I will not be ... my computer at 9 p.m. tonight.
- A. repairing
 - B. repaired
 - C. repairs
 - D. to repair
 - E. to repaired

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. D | 6. E |
| 2. A | 7. A |
| 3. E | 8. C |
| 4. B | 9. B |
| 5. C | 10. A |

j. Future Perfect Tense

Future perfect tense adalah suatu bentuk kata kerja yang digunakan untuk mengungkapkan bahwa suatu aktivitas akan sudah selesai pada satu titik waktu di masa depan.

1. Pola kalimat/rumus *future perfect tense*

Future perfect tense dibentuk dengan *auxiliary verb* "will" dan "have", serta *past participle* (V₃). "Have" digunakan baik untuk *singular* maupun *plural subject*. Sedangkan *past participle* dapat berupa *irregular* maupun *regular verb*.

Dengan demikian rumus *future perfect tense* untuk kalimat positif, negatif, dan interogatif sebagai berikut:

Kalimat	Rumus <i>Future Perfect Tense</i>	Contoh <i>Future Perfect Tense</i>
Positif (+)	S + will + have + V ₃ /past participle	The students will have come.
		Meri will have eaten.
Negatif (-)	S + will + not + have + V ₃ /past participle	The students won't have come.
		Meri won't have eaten.
Interogatif (?)	will + S + have + V ₃ /past participle	Will the students have come?
		Will Meri have eaten?

2. Contoh kalimat *future perfect tense*

Beberapa contoh kalimat *future perfect tense* dengan dua macam fungsinya adalah sebagai berikut:

Fungsi	Contoh Kalimat <i>Future Perfect Tense</i>
<i>Future perfect tense</i> untuk mengungkapkan suatu aktivitas yang akan sudah selesai atau terjadi sebelum aktivitas lain dilakukan di masa depan.	We will gather on the road at 8. We will have gone when you come at 9. (Kami akan berkumpul di jalan pukul 8. Kami akan telah pergi ketika kamu datang pukul 9.)
	Before he comes, the table will have been prepared . (Sebelum dia datang, meja akan telah dipersiapkan.) [<i>passive future perfect tense</i>]

<p><i>Future perfect tense</i> untuk menunjukkan bahwa suatu aksi akan telah selesai pada suatu waktu di masa depan.</p>	<p>At this time next month, I'll have finished my driving course. (Bulan depan, saya akan telah menyelesaikan kursus mengemudi saya.)</p>
	<p>By this time next week, we will have lived in this house for 2 years. (Pada minggu depan, kita akan telah tinggal di rumah ini selama 2 tahun.)</p>
	<p>The mechanic will have repaired my car tomorrow. (Montir akan telah memperbaiki mobil saya besok.)</p>
	<p>On the 15th of May it will have been two months since we met for the first time. (Tanggal 15 Mei akan menjadi dua bulan sejak kita bertemu pertama kali.)</p>

EXERCISE:

Choose the correct answer for the questions below!

- I will have ... writing this short story by the end of this month.
 - completing
 - completes
 - complete
 - completed
 - to complete
- She will ... waited for me by the time I arrive to her house.
 - have
 - having
 - has
 - to have
 - to has

3. They will have ... their work at 5 p.m.
 - A. finish
 - B. finishes
 - C. finishing
 - D. to finish
 - E. finished

4. Paul will have ... in Bandung when you call him.
 - A. being
 - B. been
 - C. be
 - D. had
 - E. has

5. Will we ... studied English for three years by the end of this month?
 - A. has
 - B. to have
 - C. having
 - D. to has
 - E. have

6. Will you have ... a new car when I meet you next time?
 - A. buy
 - B. buying
 - C. bought
 - D. to buy
 - E. buys

7. He will not ... slept soundly if you call him at 9 p.m. tonight.
 - A. have
 - B. has
 - C. to have
 - D. to has
 - E. having

8. I will have ... an engineer by the time you meet me next year.
 - A. became
 - B. becoming
 - C. becomes
 - D. become
 - E. to become

9. They will not have ... to another city when you invite them to your party this week
- moving
 - moved
 - moves
 - to move
 - to moving
10. We will have ... in our new house by the next beginning month.
- lived
 - living
 - lives
 - to live
 - live

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. D | 6. C |
| 2. A | 7. A |
| 3. E | 8. D |
| 4. B | 9. B |
| 5. E | 10. A |

k. Future Perfect Continuous Tense

Future perfect continuous tense adalah suatu bentuk kata kerja yang digunakan untuk mengungkapkan bahwa suatu aksi akan sudah berlangsung selama sekian lama pada titik waktu tertentu di masa depan.

1. *Pola kalimat/rumus future perfect continuous tense*

Future perfect continuous tense dibentuk dengan *auxiliary verb "will", "have been", dan present participle*.

Secara umum *future perfect continuous tense* hanya terjadi pada aksi yang berupa *dynamic verb*, tidak pada *stative verb* karena umumnya hanya *dynamic verb* yang memiliki bentuk *continuous*. [Lihat: *Stative Verb* dengan *Bentuk Progressive*]

Dengan demikian rumus *future perfect continuous tense* untuk kalimat positif, negatif, dan interogatif sebagai berikut:

Jenis Kalimat	Rumus	Contoh <i>Future Perfect Continuous Tense</i>
Positif (+)	S + will + have been + V _{ing} /present participle	They will have been playing.
		The cat will have been sleeping.
Negatif (-)	S + will + not + have been + V _{ing} /present participle	They will not have been playing.
		The cat won't have been sleeping.
Interogatif (?)	will + S + have been + V _{ing} /present participle?	Will they have been playing?
		Will the cat have been sleeping?

2. *Contoh kalimat future perfect continuous tense*

Berikut beberapa contoh kalimat *future perfect continuous tense* dengan fungsinya.

Fungsi	Contoh Kalimat <i>Future Perfect Continuous Tense</i>
<i>Future perfect continuous tense</i> digunakan untuk membicarakan tentang aksi yang panjang sebelum titik waktu tertentu di masa depan.	He will have been studying in Cairo for a year by the end of next month. (Dia akan telah belajar di Kairo selama setahun pada akhir bulan depan.)
	Andra will have been waiting for three months when the corn is ready to harvest. (Andra akan telah menunggu selama tiga bulan ketika jagung siap panen.)

Catatan:

For + duration (*a month, a year, a week*) dapat digunakan untuk menyatakan durasi aksi yang panjang, sedangkan **by the end of ...** (*next month, next week, next year*), **when + clause** (*you arrive*), **before + clause/noun** (*midnight, he comes*) digunakan untuk membicarakan aksi di masa depan yang terjadi ketika aksi *future perfect continuous tense* telah terjadi beberapa lama.

Will you have been writing the report before the branch manager observes? (Apakah kamu akan telah menulis laporan sebelum manager cabang meninjau?)

EXERCISE:

Choose the correct answer for the questions below!

1. We'll have been ... the match between Real Madrid vs FC Barcelona on TV since 01.45 a.m..
A. watched
B. watching
C. watches
D. watch
E. to watch
2. ... she have been sleeping for about 2 hours when I come to her house?
A. had
B. shall
C. does
D. will
E. did
3. My brother will have been ... to his favorite music for about an hour.
A. listened
B. listens
C. listening
D. to listen
E. to be listening

4. I will ... writing an article for an hour by the time my sister goes for shopping.
- A. have been
 - B. has been
 - C. have
 - D. has
 - E. have to
5. The teacher will have been ... for about 2 hours when the bell rings.
- A. taught
 - B. teaches
 - C. to be teaching
 - D. to teach
 - E. teaching
6. They won't have been ... English since 9 o'clock.
- A. studied
 - B. studying
 - C. studies
 - D. study
 - E. to study
7. ... your sister have been going for shopping since 8 o'clock?
- A. will
 - B. shall
 - C. do
 - D. does
 - E. did
8. He will have ... repairing his car for some hours by the time you call him.
- A. be
 - B. to be
 - C. been
 - D. being
 - E. was
9. By this time, she will have been ... her room for 2 hours.
- A. cleaned
 - B. to clean
 - C. cleans
 - D. to be cleaned
 - E. cleaning

10. My sister will have been ... in America for 2 years when I get married.
- lived
 - living
 - lives
 - to live
 - live

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. B | 6. B |
| 2. D | 7. A |
| 3. C | 8. C |
| 4. A | 9. E |
| 5. E | 10. B |

I. Past Future Tense

Past future tense atau "*future in the past*" adalah suatu bentuk kata kerja untuk membicarakan masa depan dari perspektif masa lalu. Lebih spesifik, bentuk ini digunakan untuk menyatakan suatu aksi yang akan dilakukan, baik secara sukarela maupun yang direncanakan, membuat prediksi, dan membuat janji di masa depan pada saat berada di masa lalu. *Past future tense* sering digunakan pada *reported speech*.

1. *Pola kalimat/rumus past future tense*

Past future tense dibentuk dari modal "*would*" dan *bare infinitive* atau dibentuk dari *auxiliary verb "be"* (*was, were*), *present participle "going"*, dan *infinitive*.

Apa itu *infinitive*? *Infinitive* merupakan *particle "to"* + *bare infinitive*.

Dengan demikian rumus *past future tense* untuk kalimat positif, negatif, dan interogatif adalah sebagai berikut:

Jenis Kalimat	Rumus Past Future Tense	Contoh Past Future Tense
Positif (+)	S + would + bare infinitive	He would forgive you.
	S + was/were + going to + bare infinitive	Lia was going to give two beautiful scarfs to her friend.

Negatif (-)	S + would + not + bare infinitive	He wouldn't forgive you.
	S + was/were + not + going to + bare infinitive	Lia wasn't going to give two beautiful scarfs to her friend.
Interrogatif (?)	Would + S + bare infinitive?	Would he forgive you?
	Was/were + S + going to + bare infinitive?	Was Lia going to give two beautiful scarfs to her friend?

2. Contoh kalimat *past future tense*

Beberapa contoh kalimat *past future tense* dengan fungsi-fungsinya adalah sebagai berikut:

Fungsi	Contoh Kalimat <i>Past Future Tense</i>
<i>Past future tense</i> untuk menyatakan suatu aksi yang akan dilakukan secara sukarela (<i>would</i>).	I knew you would prepare all the things for the meeting. (Saya tahu kamu akan mempersiapkan segala sesuatunya untuk pertemuan tersebut.)
<i>Past future tense</i> untuk menyatakan aksi yang direncanakan (<i>was/were going to</i>).	They told that they were going to visit Lombok. (Mereka mengatakan bahwa mereka akan mengunjungi Lombok.)
	I thought she was going to enroll the course. (Saya pikir dia akan mendaftar kursus tersebut.)
<i>Past future tense</i> digunakan untuk membuat janji (<i>would</i>).	My uncle told me that he would come on time. (Paman saya mengatakan pada saya bahwa dia akan datang tepat waktu.)
	She promised she would give me a box of banana cake. (Dia berjanji dia akan memberi saya sekotak bolu pisang.)

<p><i>Past future tense</i> dapat digunakan untuk membuat prediksi (<i>would & was/were going to</i>).</p>	<p>My father had a strong feeling that the weather would be warm. (Ayah saya punya firasat yang kuat bahwa cuaca akan hangat.)</p>
	<p>I thought that the authorities were going to investigate all the allegations of fraud. (Saya pikir pihak berwenang akan menyelidiki semua dugaan penipuan itu.)</p>

3. *Bentuk pasif dari past future tense*

Rumus bentuk pasif dari *past future tense* adalah sebagai berikut:



atau



Contoh kalimat active dan passive past future tense:

No	<i>Active Past Future Tense</i>	<i>Passive Past Future Tense</i>
1	<p>I knew she would finish the task in an hour. (Saya tahu dia akan menyelesaikan tugas tersebut dalam satu jam.)</p>	<p>I knew the task would be finished in an hour. (Saya tahu tugas tersebut akan diselesaikan dalam satu jam.)</p>
2	<p>We thought Rizma was going to buy a new car. (Kami pikir Rizma akan membeli sebuah mobil baru.)</p>	<p>We thought a new car was going to be bought by Rizma. (Kami pikir sebuah mobil baru akan dibeli oleh Rizma.)</p>

EXERCISE:

Choose the correct answer for the questions below!

1. When Bill and Clara ... a new cellular phone, they met Paul in the phone shop.
 - A. would bought
 - B. will buy
 - C. will bought
 - D. shall bought
 - E. would buy
2. My brother ... ask me to stop disturbing him.
 - A. was going to
 - B. is going to
 - C. were going to
 - D. are going to
 - E. weren't going to
3. They ... their new uniforms.
 - A. shall wear
 - B. will wear
 - C. would wear
 - D. wearing
 - E. to wear
4. My sister ... to talk with her manager.
 - A. is going
 - B. are going
 - C. were going
 - D. was going
 - E. going
5. I asked to go with my father when he would ... the museum last week.
 - A. visited
 - B. visit
 - C. visiting
 - D. visits
 - E. to visit

6. She was going to ... telling me that I was right.
 - A. kept
 - B. keeping
 - C. keeps
 - D. be kept
 - E. keep

7. My mother cooked a special food when the special guest ... to our house yesterday.
 - A. will come
 - B. shall come
 - C. would come
 - D. to come
 - E. comes

8. Oscar and Cindy... like my son when they met him.
 - A. was going to
 - B. is going to
 - C. were going to
 - D. are going to
 - E. aren't going to

9. He would ... to solve the problem by himself.
 - A. try
 - B. tries
 - C. tried
 - D. trying
 - E. to try

10. We were going to ... dancing with our friends.
 - A. enjoying
 - B. enjoyed
 - C. enjoys
 - D. enjoy
 - E. be enjoyed

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. E | 6. E |
| 2. A | 7. C |
| 3. C | 8. C |
| 4. D | 9. A |
| 5. B | 10. D |

m. Past Future Continuous Tense

Past future continuous tense adalah suatu bentuk kata kerja untuk menyatakan apa yang akan sedang dilakukan di masa depan ketika berada di masa lalu. Seperti *future continuous tense*, bentuk ini digunakan untuk membuat rencana atau prediksi serta cenderung menyebutkan waktu yang spesifik.

1. Pola kalimat/rumus *past future continuous tense*

Past future continuous tense dibentuk dengan *auxiliary verb* "would" atau "should" dan "be", serta *present participle*. Secara umum *future continuous tense* umumnya hanya terjadi pada aksi yang berupa *dynamic verb*, tidak pada *stative verb* karena umumnya hanya *dynamic verb* yang memiliki bentuk *continuous*.

Dengan demikian rumus *past future continuous tense* untuk kalimat positif, negatif, dan interogatif adalah sebagai berikut:

Jenis Kalimat	Rumus	Contoh <i>Past Future Continuous Tense</i>
Positif (+)	S + would/should be + V _{ing} /present participle	He would be working.
		We would be studying.
Negatif (-)	S + would/should + not + be + V _{ing} /present participle	He wouldn't be working.
		We wouldn't be studying.
Interogatif (?)	Would/should + S + be + V _{ing} /present participle?	Would he be working?
		Would we be studying?

2. Contoh kalimat *past future continuous tense*

Beberapa contoh kalimat *past future continuous tense* dengan fungsinya adalah sebagai berikut:

Fungsi	Contoh Kalimat <i>Past Future Continuous Tense</i>
<p><i>Past future continuous tense</i> untuk membicarakan aksi yang direncanakan akan sedang berlangsung di masa lalu</p>	<p>Wira told me that he would be attending the conference at 9 o'clock this morning. (Wira mengatakan pada saya bahwa dia akan sedang menghadiri konferensi pada pukul 9 pagi ini.)</p>
	<p>Andi planned to do some soil tests in the laboratory at 9 a.m. yesterday. He would be preparing soil samples by 8 a.m. that morning. (Andi berencana untuk melakukan beberapa uji tanah di laboratorium pada pukul 9 pagi kemarin. Dia akan sedang mempersiapkan sampel-sampel tanah pada pukul 8 pagi itu.)</p>
	<p>Would you be having breakfast at 7 o'clock yesterday if you had at least 2 slices of bread? (Apakah kamu akan sedang sarapan pada pukul 7 kemarin jika kamu setidaknya memiliki 2 potong roti?)</p>
<p><i>Past future continuous tense</i> untuk membicarakan aksi yang diprediksi akan sedang berlangsung di masa lalu</p>	<p>She had a feeling that the show wouldn't be taking place smoothly at 7 p.m. last week. (Dia punya firasat pertunjukkan tersebut tidak akan berlangsung lancar pukul 7 malam minggu kemarin.)</p>
	<p>My father thought the wind would be blowing hard by this time yesterday. (Ayah saya pikir angin akan sedang berembus kencang pada saat ini kemarin.)</p>

EXERCISE:

Choose the correct answer for the questions below!

1. He ... about swimming when you came to the swimming pool.
 - A. would learning
 - B. would have learning
 - C. would been learning
 - D. would be learned
 - E. would be learning

2. Oscar ... anywhere when you visited him on Sunday.
 - A. wouldn't be going
 - B. wouldn't be gone
 - C. wouldn't been going
 - D. wouldn't be go
 - E. wouldn't been gone

3. If she called you at 8 o'clock last Monday, ... in your office?
 - A. would be you working
 - B. would you be worked
 - C. would you been work
 - D. would you be working
 - E. would you are working

4. Cindy ... any article when he invited her to watch the movie.
 - A. wouldn't be not writing
 - B. wouldn't be writing
 - C. wouldn't is writing
 - D. would is not writing
 - E. wouldn't be written

5. When the teacher entered the class, they ... the problem very seriously.
 - A. would be discussed
 - B. would are discussing
 - C. would be discussing
 - D. would are discussed
 - E. would been discussing

6. When they did their homework, I ... TV.
 - A. would be not watching
 - B. wouldn't been watched
 - C. wouldn't been watching
 - D. wouldn't be watched
 - E. wouldn't be watching

7. If I phoned him at 10 o'clock last night, ... soundly?
 - A. would he be sleeping
 - B. would be he sleeping
 - C. would he is sleeping
 - D. would is he sleeping
 - E. would he be slept

8. When they arrived at my house, we ... our son's birthday.
 - A. would be celebrated
 - B. would been celebrating
 - C. would are celebrating
 - D. would be celebrating
 - E. are would celebrating

9. My father ... preparing for his vacation.
 - A. is would
 - B. would is
 - C. would be
 - D. would to be
 - E. would been

10. ... spending their holiday in Bali?
 - A. would are they
 - B. are would they
 - C. would they are
 - D. would be they
 - E. would they be

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. E | 6. E |
| 2. A | 7. A |
| 3. D | 8. D |
| 4. B | 9. C |
| 5. C | 10. E |

n. Past Future Perfect Tense

Past future perfect tense adalah suatu bentuk kata kerja untuk membicarakan aktivitas yang akan telah dilakukan di masa lalu. Bentuk ini biasa digunakan pada *main clause* dari *conditional sentence* tipe 3.

1. *Pola kalimat/rumus past future perfect tense*

Past future perfect tense dibentuk dengan *auxiliary verb* "would" atau "should" dan "have", serta *past participle* (V₃). "Have" digunakan baik untuk *singular* maupun *plural subject*.

Sedangkan *past participle* dapat berupa *regular* atau *irregular verb*.

Dengan demikian rumus *past future perfect tense* untuk kalimat positif, negatif, dan interogatif adalah sebagai berikut:

Jenis Kalimat	Rumus	Contoh <i>Past Future Perfect Tense</i>
Positif (+)	S + would/should + have + V ₃ /past participle	She would have worked.
		They would have been.
Negatif (-)	S + would/should + not + have + V ₃ /past participle	She wouldn't have worked.
		They wouldn't have been.
Interogatif (?)	Would/should + S + have + V ₃ /past participle?	Would she have worked?
		Would they have been?

2. *Contoh kalimat past future perfect tense*

Beberapa contoh kalimat *past future perfect tense* dengan fungsinya adalah sebagai berikut:

Fungsi	Contoh Kalimat <i>Past Future Perfect Tense</i>
<p><i>Past future perfect tense</i> untuk menunjukkan bahwa suatu aksi diperkirakan akan telah selesai pada suatu waktu di masa lampau. Pada kasus ini, <u>would have</u> merupakan versi "past" dari <i>future perfect tense</i> <u>will have</u>.</p>	<p>I thought you would have slept by the time I arrived. (Saya pikir kamu akan sudah tidur pada saat saya tiba.)</p> <p>Before taking a leave of absence yesterday, he would completed his work for the client. He would have submitted it two days ago. (Sebelum mengambil cuti kemarin, dia akan telah merampungkan pekerjaannya untuk klien tersebut. Dia akan telah mengirimkannya dua hari lalu.)</p>
<p><i>Past future perfect tense</i> digunakan pada <i>conditional sentence</i> tipe 3 (kalimat pengandaian) untuk membicarakan sesuatu yang tidak terjadi.</p>	<p>If you had saved your jewelry and foreign currency in a safety deposit box, they wouldn't have gone. (Jika kamu telah menyimpan perhiasan dan mata uang asingmu di <i>safety deposit box</i>, mereka tidak akan hilang.)</p>

EXERCISE:

Choose the correct answer for the questions below!

1. If he had wanted to sell that house, I ... it from him.
 - A. would have buy
 - B. would have buying
 - C. would have bought
 - D. will have bought
 - E. would has bought
2. Oscar ... to the party alone, if he had let me go with him.
 - A. would haven't come
 - B. would have came
 - C. would have coming

- D. wouldn't have come
 - E. should have came
3. If you had had much money, ... to be your girlfriend?
- A. would have she wanted
 - B. would has she wanted
 - C. should have she wanted
 - D. would she have want
 - E. would she have wanted
4. If they had come earlier, I ... the house.
- A. would haven't left
 - B. wouldn't have left
 - C. should haven't left
 - D. would have leave
 - E. would have leaving
5. We would have ... in that company if we had passed the interview test before.
- A. working
 - B. work
 - C. worked
 - D. works
 - E. to work
6. She ... a car from her brother, if she had needed it.
- A. would has borrowed
 - B. would have borrowed
 - C. should have borrowed
 - D. should has borrowed
 - E. will have borrowed
7. If my father had given me much money, I ... a gift for my girlfriend.
- A. should have buy
 - B. would have bought
 - C. would has bought
 - D. will have bought
 - E. shall have bought
8. They ... the examination if they had studied harder before.
- A. wouldn't has failed
 - B. won't have failed

- C. wouldn't have failed
 - D. shan't have failed
 - E. shouldn't have failed
9. If Paul had slept earlier, he ... late.
- A. would haven't gotten up
 - B. wouldn't have gotten up
 - C. shouldn't have gotten up
 - D. won't have gotten up
 - E. shan't have gotten up
10. ... helped me if I had asked her?
- A. would Cindy have
 - B. should have Cindy
 - C. would have Cindy
 - D. will Cindy have
 - E. shall Cindy have

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. C | 6. C |
| 2. D | 7. B |
| 3. E | 8. C |
| 4. B | 9. B |
| 5. C | 10. A |

o. Past Future Perfect Continuous Tense

Past Future Perfect Continuous Tense atau *Past Future Perfect Progressive Tense* adalah bentuk waktu yang digunakan untuk menyatakan suatu peristiwa atau perbuatan yang akan telah sedang berlangsung di waktu yang akan datang di masa lampau.

CATATAN:

Pada *past future perfect continuous tense* semua subjek menggunakan kata "have" sebagai *auxiliary verb*.

Rumus *past future perfect continuous tense*:

+	S + would/should + have + been + V _{ing} + object
–	S + would/should + not + have + been + V _{ing} + object
?	Would/should + S + have + been + V _{ing} + object?
?	Question word + would/should + S + have + been + V _{ing} + object?

Contoh kalimat *past future perfect continuous tense*:

+	My mother would have been resigning in this institute for two months by the time I finished the college three months ago. The road was dark by the time we should have been arriving to home last night. Sarah should have been looking happy for the gift last night.
-	He would not have been staying to live in here for two years ago. When it rained, I should not have been going to the cinema at that time. You shouldn't have been sleeping here last night.
?	Would they have been surrendering their country for the world peace last year? Jawaban: No, they wouldn't have been surrendering . They would have been defending their country for the world peace last year.
?	When should John have been climbing a big mountain? Jawaban: John should have been climbing a big mountain with this friends last year.

Keterangan waktu yang digunakan untuk *past future perfect continuous tense* adalah:

for, by next month, by the next year, by the end of this month, by the end of this day, by the end of this year, etc.

EXERCISE:

Choose the correct answer for the questions below!

1. They would have ... his work for a week on Sunday.
 - A. do
 - B. doing
 - C. been done
 - D. been doing
 - E. did

2. Oscar wouldn't have been ... football since 8 o'clock.
 - A. playing
 - B. played
 - C. play
 - D. to play
 - E. plays

3. She ... been watching TV for about two hour by 9 o'clock.
 - A. would has
 - B. would
 - C. will
 - D. should
 - E. would have

4. ... been staying in your grandfather's house since Saturday?
 - A. would have you
 - B. would you have
 - C. would you
 - D. will you
 - E. should you

5. I would have been ... since 9 o'clock.
 - A. sleeps
 - B. to sleep
 - C. sleep
 - D. slept
 - E. sleeping

6. Eddy and Clara wouldn't ... learning English since 10 o'clock.
A. has been
B. have
C. have been
D. has
E. have to
7. Paul ... been visiting Bali since Wednesday.
A. would have
B. would has
C. would
D. should
E. will
8. ... been listening to the music for an hour by 9 o'clock?
A. would they
B. should they
C. would have they
D. would they have
E. would they has
9. He would have been ... in the company for a year by the end of this month.
A. worked
B. working
C. work
D. to work
E. works
10. We wouldn't ... repairing the car since 8 o'clock.
A. have been
B. has been
C. been have
D. have
E. has

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. D | 6. C |
| 2. A | 7. A |
| 3. E | 8. D |
| 4. B | 9. B |
| 5. E | 10. A |

3

MODALS

A. PENGERTIAN, FUNGSI, DAN CONTOH KALIMAT

MODAL AUXILIARY VERB

Modal auxiliary verb adalah kata yang ditempatkan sebelum kata kerja utama (*main verb*) untuk memodifikasi makna dari kata kerja utama tersebut.

Fungsinya untuk mengekspresikan kemauan (*willingness*) atau kemampuan (*ability*), kebutuhan (*necessity*), dan kemungkinan (*possibility*). Kata kerja bantu ini antara lain: *can, could, may, might, will, would, shall, should, must*, dan *ought to* (*phrasal modal verb*).

Berikut ini adalah beberapa fungsi dan contoh kalimat *modal auxiliary verb*:

Modal Verb	Fungsi	Contoh Kalimat Modal Auxiliary Verb
Can	<i>Can</i> digunakan untuk menyatakan kemampuan (<i>ability</i>).	You can buy anything with your money but you can not buy love. (Kamu dapat membeli apa pun dengan uangmu tapi kamu tidak dapat membeli cinta.)
	<i>Modal verb</i> ini dapat digunakan untuk meminta izin (<i>permission</i>).	Can I borrow your car for one night? (Bisakah saya meminjam mobilmu untuk satu malam?)

Could	<i>Could</i> digunakan untuk menyatakan kemampuan (<i>ability</i>) di masa lalu (<i>past</i>).	You could run faster than me two years ago. (Kamu dapat berlari lebih cepat dari saya dua tahun lalu.)
	<i>Modal verb</i> ini dapat digunakan untuk meminta izin (<i>permission</i>) melakukan sesuatu di masa lalu (<i>past</i>) atau masa depan (<i>future</i>).	Could I use your computer to print and scan? (Bolehkah saya menggunakan komputermu untuk <i>print</i> dan <i>scan</i> ?)
May	<i>May</i> digunakan untuk menyatakan kemungkinan (<i>possibility</i>) di masa sekarang (<i>present</i>) dan masa depan (<i>future</i>).	He may work out and consume healthy food every day. (Dia mungkin berlatih dan mengonsumsi makanan sehat setiap hari.)
		You may forget the embarrassing incident tomorrow. (Kamu mungkin melupakan insiden memalukan itu besok.)
	<i>Modal verb</i> ini digunakan untuk meminta izin (<i>permission</i>) yang lebih formal daripada <i>modal verb can</i> .	May I go home now? (Bolehkah saya pulang sekarang?)

Might	<p>Sama seperti may, <i>might</i> digunakan untuk menyatakan kemungkinan (<i>possibility</i>) di masa sekarang (<i>present</i>) dan masa depan (<i>future</i>).</p> <p><i>Might</i> dapat ditambahkan <i>primary auxiliary verb have</i> untuk menyatakan <i>probability</i> di masa lalu (<i>past</i>). <i>Modal verb</i> ini digunakan untuk menyatakan <i>hypothetical situation</i> yang terbukti tidak terjadi, lain halnya dengan <i>may</i> yang belum terbukti.</p>	<p>You might forget the embarrassing accident tomorrow.</p>
	<p><i>Might</i> merupakan bentuk <i>past</i> dari <i>may</i> yang digunakan untuk meminta izin (<i>permission</i>) lebih formal daripada <i>modal verb could</i>. Dibanding <i>may</i>, <i>might</i> lebih tentatif (tidak pasti) kejadiannya.</p>	<p>The doctor might have warned you not to eat red meat. (Dikatakan setelah diketahui fakta bahwa dokter itu belum melarang.)</p>
		<p>The doctor may have warned you not to eat red meat. (Faktanya: belum diketahui)</p>
		<p>If I have cleaned the room, might I play with my friend? (Jika saya sudah membersihkan ruangan, bolehkah saya bermain dengan teman saya?)</p>

Will	<p><i>Will</i> untuk menyatakan kemauan (<i>willingness</i>). <i>Willingness</i> dapat diungkapkan dalam <i>conditional sentence</i> tipe 1 maupun undangan/ajakan (<i>invitation</i>).</p>	<p>I will help you if you help yourself first. (Saya akan membantumu jika kamu membantu dirimu sendiri terlebih dahulu.)</p> <p>Will you marry me? (Maukah kamu menikah dengan saya?)</p>
	<p><i>Modal verb</i> ini digunakan untuk membuat keputusan secara spontan/tanpa rencana (<i>simple future tense</i>).</p>	<p>I'll give you a glass of water. (Saya akan memberimu segelas air.)</p> <p>I think I'll change my appearance. (Saya pikir saya akan mengubah penampilan.)</p>
	<p><i>Will</i> untuk membuat prediksi.</p>	<p>The sandstorm will come tonight. (Badai pasir akan datang nanti malam.)</p>
	<p>Sama seperti <i>will</i>, would dapat digunakan untuk menyatakan kemauan (<i>willingness</i>) yang lebih sopan.</p>	<p>Would you like to see my craft? (Maukah kamu melihat kerajinan tangan saya?)</p>
Would	<p><i>Modal verb</i> ini menyatakan kemungkinan (<i>sense of probability</i>)</p>	<p>He would be free tonight. (Dia akan kosong nanti malam.)</p>
	<p><i>Would</i> dipadukan dengan <i>auxiliary have</i> untuk membentuk <i>conditional sentence</i> tipe 3. <i>Would</i> di sini untuk menyatakan tindakan yang ingin dilakukan di masa lalu.</p>	<p>If you had remembered to invite me, I would have attended your party. (Jika kamu ingat mengundang saya, saya akan menghadiri pestamu.)</p>

Shall	<p><i>Shall</i> (<i>British English</i>) digunakan untuk menyatakan <i>simple future</i> seperti halnya <i>will</i> namun hanya digunakan pada orang pertama (<i>first person</i>) I dan we.</p>	<p>We shall overcome it someday. (Kita akan mengatasinya suatu hari nanti.)</p>
	<p><i>Shall</i> (<i>US English</i>) jarang digunakan selain untuk pertanyaan yang sopan bagi orang pertama.</p>	<p>Shall we pay him a visit? (Haruskah kita menjenguknya?)</p>
	<p><i>Shall</i> juga digunakan untuk menyatakan kewajiban (<i>obligation</i>) pada situasi formal (yang dapat berupa dokumen legal maupun pada saat rapat). Pada situasi ini, baik orang kedua maupun orang ketiga dapat digunakan dengan <i>modal verb</i> ini.</p>	<p>The Human Resource manager shall report the employee performance. (Manajer HR harus melaporkan performa karyawan.)</p>
Should	<p><i>Should</i> digunakan untuk memberi saran (<i>suggestion</i>) atau nasihat (<i>advice</i>).</p>	<p>You should see the doctor. (Kamu harus menemui dokter.)</p>
		<p>We should meet more often. (Kita harus bertemu lebih sering.)</p>
Must	<p><i>Must</i> dipadukan dengan <i>not</i> untuk menyatakan larangan (<i>prohibition</i>).</p>	<p>You mustn't give up. (Kamu tidak boleh menyerah.)</p>
	<p><i>Modal verb</i> ini mengekspresikan kewajiban (<i>obligation</i>) atau kebutuhan (<i>necessity</i>).</p>	<p>We must go to bed now. (Kita harus tidur sekarang.)</p>

Ought to	<i>Ought to</i> digunakan untuk menyatakan apa yang benar atau tepat.	I ought to wear high quality running shoes. (Saya harus menggunakan sepatu lari berkualitas tinggi.)
		We ought to select the best candidate for the job. (Kita harus memilih kandidat terbaik untuk pekerjaan tersebut.)

B. PENGERTIAN, FUNGSI, DAN CONTOH KALIMAT *PHRASAL MODAL VERB*

a. Pengertian, Fungsi, dan Contoh Kalimat *Phrasal Modal Verb*

Phrasal modal verb adalah *modal* yang biasanya dimulai dengan *to be* atau *have* dengan/tanpa diakhiri dengan "to". *Modal* sendiri merupakan kata yang muncul sebelum *main verb* untuk memodifikasi makna dari *main verb* tersebut di mana kata-kata seperti *can*, *could*, *wil*, *would*, *may*, dan *might* disebut *one-word* atau *single modal*. Seperti *one-word modal*, *phrasal modal* juga diikuti kata kerja bentuk dasar (*bare infinitive*).

Berikut ini adalah beberapa fungsi dan contoh kalimat *phrasal modal verb*:

Fungsi	Contoh Kalimat <i>Phrasal Modal Verb</i>
be supposed to, be to	
Menyatakan harapan (<i>expectation</i>).	We're not supposed to bring any gifts to his wedding. (Kita tidak diharapkan membawa hadiah apa pun ke pernikahannya.)
	The participant was to fill out all fields of the form, but he left some fields blank. (Partisipan itu diharapkan mengisi semua kolom formulir, namun dia membiarkan beberapa kolom kosong.)
be able to (=can)	

Menyatakan kemampuan (<i>ability</i>).	The woman is able to make the depressed people smile and brighten their whole day. (Wanita itu bisa membuat orang-orang yang depresi tersenyum dan menyemarakkan sepanjang hari mereka.)
be going to	
Mengungkapkan rencana di masa depan (<i>plan</i>).	I'm going to call my grandfather next week. (Saya akan menelepon kakek minggu depan.)
Have to (=must), have got to	
<i>Phrasal modal</i> ini digunakan untuk menyatakan keharusan (<i>necessity, obligation</i>). <i>Have got to</i> lebih kuat dari <i>have to</i> ~ <i>strong obligation</i> .	I have to meet my thesis supervisor today. (Saya harus bertemu pembimbing skripsi saya hari ini.)
<i>Phrasal verb</i> ini digunakan untuk menyatakan keyakinan yang kuat (<i>strong certainty</i>) bahwa tidak ada kemungkinan logis yang lain.	The little boy has to be at home alone. (Anak kecil itu pasti di rumah sendirian.)
ought to	
<i>Phrasal verb</i> ini digunakan untuk menyatakan kepastian (<i>certainty</i>). Tingkat keyakinannya bisa sangat yakin atau tidak terlalu yakin, di mana ada kemungkinan lain tapi kira-kira inilah yang paling mungkin.	He ought to have done all the work correctly. (Dia pasti telah menyelesaikan semua pekerjaan itu dengan benar.)

Menyatakan saran atau nasihat (<i>recommendation/ advice</i>).	You ought to support your friend. (Kamu harus mendukung temanmu.)
used to	
Menjelaskan kebiasaan di masa lalu (<i>habitual past action</i>).	My mother used to feed her chickens every morning and afternoon. (Ibu saya biasa memberi makan ayam-ayamnya setiap pagi dan sore hari.)
had better	
Menyatakan saran, nasihat.	You had better learn to accept help. (Kamu lebih baik belajar menerima bantuan.)
would rather, would prefer	
M e n g u n g k a p k a n pilihan yang lebih disukai (<i>preference</i>).	I would rather eat potatoes than rice for breakfast. (Saya lebih suka makan kentang daripada nasi untuk sarapan.)
would like to	
Menyatakan keinginan (<i>desire</i>).	Pinky and the Brain would like to conquer the world. (Pinky dan the Brain ingin menguasai dunia.)
Menyatakan tawaran/ undangan (<i>offer/ invitation</i>).	Would you like me to repeat the question?

b. Sekilas *One-Word* dan *Phrasal Modal Verb*

Modal verb merupakan kata yang muncul sebelum *main verb* untuk memodifikasi makna dari *main verb* tersebut. *Modal verb* dapat digolongkan menjadi *single* atau *one-word modal* (hanya terdiri dari satu kata) dan *phrasal modal verb* (umumnya dimulai dengan *to be* atau *have* dengan/ tanpa diakhiri dengan *preposition to*).

Contoh *one-word modal verb*: *will, would, may, might, should, can, could, must*.

Contoh *phrasal modal verb*: *be supposed to, be to, be able to, be going to, have to, ought to, would like to*.

c. **Kombinasi *One-Word* dengan *Phrasal Modal Verb***

One-word modal verb dapat dikombinasikan dengan *phrasal modal verb* seperti yang ditunjukkan di bawah ini:

modal verb + phrasal modal verb

Contoh:

You will have to do over your task.

(Kamu akan harus mengerjakan kembali tugasmu.)

Antara *phrasal modal* pun dapat dikombinasikan:

phrasal modal + phrasal modal

Contoh:

She is going to have to make a choice.

(Dia akan harus membuat sebuah keputusan.)

Namun tidak ada

modal verb + modal verb

Contoh:

You ~~can~~~~must~~ work harder.

Juga tidak ada

phrasal modal verb + modal verb

Contoh:

You ~~are able to~~~~must~~ work harder.

C. PENGERTIAN DAN CONTOH KALIMAT *PERFECT MODAL*

Perfect modal adalah *modal verb* yang diikuti *perfect infinitive* (*have + past participle*) untuk membicarakan masa lampau.

modal verb + have + past participle

Modal verb yang dapat digunakan antara lain: *should, would, might, may, must, dan can't*.

Berikut ini adalah contoh kalimat *perfect modal* beserta penjelasan singkatnya.

Penjelasan <i>Perfect Modal</i>	Contoh Kalimat <i>Perfect Modal</i>
should have + past participle	
Digunakan ketika ingin membicarakan kejadian di masa lalu yang tidak terjadi tetapi seharusnya terjadi.	You should have recieved your refund by now. (Kamu seharusnya sudah menerima pengembalian danamu saat ini.)
could have + past participle	
Untuk membicarakan hal yang dapat dilakukan di masa lalu namun tidak dilakukan atau tidak berhasil dilakukan.	I could have bought that car, but I preferred to save money and wait for the manual version. (Saya sudah bisa membeli mobil itu, tapi saya memilih untuk menyimpan uang dan menunggu versi manualnya.)
would have + past participle	
Untuk memberikan pernyataan tentang hal yang tidak terjadi.	He would have arrived earlier if he had taken a taxi. (Dia akan tiba lebih awal jika saja dia naik taksi.)
might/may/could have + past participle	
Untuk membicarakan kemungkinan di masa lampau.	The traveler looks far from happy. He may have waited for his flight for hours. (Pelancong itu kelihatan jauh dari bahagia. Dia mungkin telah menunggu penerbangannya selama berjam-jam.)
must have + past participle	
Digunakan ketika merasa yakin akan suatu hal di masa lampau.	Someone must have used my email! (Seseorang pasti telah menggunakan <i>email</i> saya!)

can't have + past participle	
<p>Digunakan kita merasa bahwa sesuatu terjadi di masa lampau.</p>	<p>ketika yakin tidak</p> <p>I can't have signed the bad contract. I always read a contract carefully before signing it. (Saya tidak pernah menandatangani kontrak buruk itu. Saya selalu membaca sebuah kontrak dengan hati-hati sebelum menandatangani.)</p>

EXERCISE:

1. You ... throw litter from your vehicle because it can pose a risk to the environment.
 - A. won't
 - B. mustn't

2. ... you please check my paper for grammar errors?
 - A. may
 - B. can

3. If I ask a question about your past, ... you answer it?
 - A. would
 - B. will

4. You ... pay your credit card bill immediately.
 - A. would
 - B. should

5. She ... do more than two tasks at one time yesterday.
 - A. could
 - B. can

6. Had the applicant sent his resume before the deadline, he ... worked here.
 - A. might
 - B. might have

7. Vira has very smooth skin. She ... apply olive oil to her face before going to bed.
 - A. may
 - B. should

8. ... you mind checking out my website?
 A. would
 B. could
9. ... I resend my resume?
 A. shall
 B. would

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. B | 6. B |
| 2. B | 7. A |
| 3. B | 8. A |
| 4. B | 9. A |
| 5. A | |

D. PENGGUNAAN USED TO DAN BE USED TO

Ketika Anda membaca atau mendengarkan teks dalam bahasa Inggris, Anda pasti menemukan kata “used to” atau “be used to”. Apakah Anda tahu makna dan penggunaan kata-kata tersebut? Pada bagian ini akan dijelaskan bagaimana menggunakan kata tersebut dan apakah maknanya.

a. Be used to

Be used to digunakan untuk mengungkapkan sesuatu yang biasanya terjadi. *Be used to* biasanya menggunakan V_{ing} . *Be used to* juga memiliki makna yang sama dengan *be accustomed to*, yakni terbiasa/biasa.

Contoh:

- Randi is used to living alone.
(Randi terbiasa tinggal sendiri.)
- Ryan is used to smoking every time.
(Ryan terbiasa merokok setiap waktu.)
- Don't worry, Randi is used to driving for long hours. He has worked as a taxi driver for years.
(Jangan khawatir, Randi terbiasa berkendara dalam waktu yang lama. Dia pernah bekerja sebagai pengemudi taksi selama bertahun-tahun.)
- Ina is used to getting up early
(Ina terbiasa bangun awal/ pagi.)

b. Used To

Used to digunakan untuk mengungkapkan sebuah aktivitas atau kejadian di masa depan atau kebenaran di masa lalu yang pada saat ini sudah tidak pernah dilakukan.

Contoh:

- She used to love me but not anymore.
(Dia dulu mencintai saya, tapi sekarang tidak lagi.)
- I used to live in Bandung.
(Saya dulu pernah tinggal di Bandung.)
- They used to wanna hear us.
(Mereka dulunya mau mendengarkan kami)

Used to juga dapat digunakan pada kalimat negatif maupun interogatif.

Contoh:

- No, I never used to read comic book.
(Tidak, saya tidak pernah membaca buku komik.)
- Did you use to read comic book every day?
(Apakah dulu kamu membaca buku komik setiap hari?)
- No, I didn't use to read comic book.
(Tidak, saya tidak pernah membaca buku komik.)

EXERCISE:

Choose the correct word!

1. He used to ... fat but now he's thin.
A. be
B. being
2. He isn't used to ... in these bad conditions.
A. work
B. working
3. How did you get used to ... in the middle of this mess?
A. work
B. working
4. Did you ... write poems when you were young?
A. use to
B. used to

5. I need some time to get used to ... in this town.
 - A. live
 - B. living

6. Sting used to... a teacher before he became a famous singer.
 - A. be
 - B. being

7. I'm not used to ... linen by hand.
 - A. wash
 - B. washing

8. She'll get used to ... in the extremely cold winter of Siberia.
 - A. live
 - B. living

9. My mother didn't ... drink much coffee. But now she has become addicted to it.
 - A. use to
 - B. used to

10. There used to ... a lot of trees in this court yard. They have all been cut down.
 - A. be
 - B. being

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. A | 6. A |
| 2. B | 7. B |
| 3. B | 8. B |
| 4. A | 9. A |
| 5. B | 10. A |

**E. PENGERTIAN, FUNGSI, DAN PENGGUNAAN
*PREFERENCE***

a. Pengertian dan Fungsi *Preferences*

Preferences (pilihan/preferensi) dapat digunakan ketika seseorang akan memberikan suatu saran, menawarkan sesuatu, atau meminta pendapat orang lain tentang apa yang harus (lebih baik) dilakukan. Terkadang orang

meminta pendapat kepada Anda dan Anda dapat memberikan atau mengutarakan pilihan Anda dengan menggunakan *preference*. Sementara di sisi lain terkadang seseorang menawarkan sesuatu kepada Anda dan Anda harus mengutarakan pilihan Anda dengan sopan jika Anda tidak ingin melakukan sesuatu yang sudah ditawarkan, atau mungkin lebih memilih untuk melakukan sesuatu yang lain.

b. Contoh Kalimat Preferences

A: *Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?*

B: ***I would rather go shopping.***

A: Maukah kamu pergi ke bioskop malam ini?

B: Saya lebih suka pergi belanja.

A: *Would you like to have some Japanese food?*

B: ***I would prefer eating Chinese. What do you think?***

A: Maukah kamu makan makanan Jepang?

B: Saya lebih suka makan makanan Tiongkok. Bagaimana menurutmu?

A: *What are we going to do today? The weather is good.*

B: ***I think we should go to the beach.***

A: Apa yang akan kita lakukan hari ini? Cuacanya bagus.

B: Saya rasa kita seharusnya pergi ke pantai.

c. Rumus, Macam-Macam, dan Contoh Preferences

Preferences	Rumus	Contoh Kalimat
Prefer	Prefer + to infinitive	They prefer to stay at home. (Mereka lebih memilih tinggal di rumah.)
	Prefer + noun + to + noun	My mother prefers apple to lemon juice. (Ibu saya lebih suka jus apel daripada jus lemon.)
	Prefer + V _{ing} + to + V _{ing}	She prefers swimming to dancing. (Dia lebih suka berenang daripada berdansa.)

Would rather	Would rather + bare infinitive (kata kerja tanpa "to")	I would rather study now. (Saya lebih baik belajar sekarang.)
	Would rather + bare infinitive + than + bare infinitive	She would rather stay home than go shopping. (Dia lebih memilih tinggal di rumah saja daripada berbelanja.)
	Would rather + bare infinitive + noun + than + bare infinitive + noun	She would rather speak Japanese than speak English. (Dia lebih suka berbicara bahasa Jepang daripada bahasa Inggris.)
Would prefer to	Would prefer + to infinitive + rather than + bare infinitive	They would prefer to sing rather than dance. (Mereka lebih memilih bernyanyi daripada menari.)
	Would prefer + to infinitive + noun + rather than + bare infinitive + noun	You would prefer to play ball rather than take a sleep. (Kamu lebih memilih bermain bola daripada tidur)
Like	Like + noun/(V _{ing}) + better than + noun/(V _{ing})	I like singing a song better than playing a guitar. (Saya lebih suka menyanyikan sebuah lagu daripada bermain gitar.) I like coffee better than tea. (Saya lebih suka kopi daripada teh.)

Had better	Had better + bare infinitive	You had better study hard. (Kamu lebih baik belajar yang giat.)
	Had better + not + bare infinitive (bentuk negatif)	I had better not tell her the truth. (Saya lebih baik tidak mengatakan yang sebenarnya kepada dia.)
It's time	It's time + to infinitive	It's time to get up. (Ini saatnya untuk bangun.)
	It's time + subjek + (bentuk lampau)	It's time you went away. (Ini saatnya kamu pergi.)
Instead of <i>Instead of</i> kita gunakan sebagai pengganti: to, than, better than, rather than	Instead of + gerund/noun	I prefer staying home instead of going out. (Saya lebih memilih tinggal di rumah daripada pergi keluar.) They would rather eat their dinner instead of work . (Mereka lebih memilih menyantap makan malam mereka daripada bekerja.) I would prefer to invite Anne instead of Andy . (Saya lebih memilih mengundang Anne daripada Andy.) She likes me instead of him . (Dia menyukai saya alih-alih dia.)

d. Penggunaan *Preferences*

Kita sering menggunakan kata seperti: "*prefer, would prefer, would rather*" untuk menanyakan tentang pilihan (*preferences*).

Contoh:

I prefer living with my uncle.

Would you prefer to watch a movie or go to a church?

Would you rather go fishing with me?

Contoh kalimat di atas memiliki arti yang sedikit berbeda, ini merupakan alasan mengapa pelajar bahasa Inggris sering mengalami kesulitan. Perhatikan baik-baik perbedaan penggunaan *preferences* di bawah ini:

1. *Perbedaan pada arti:*

Kita cenderung menggunakan kata "*prefer*" untuk membicarakan tentang kesukaan, ketidaksukaan, dan apa yang kita inginkan.

Contoh:

He **prefers** reading a magazine.

(Dia lebih suka membaca majalah.)

I **prefer** going to the beach than going to a swimming pool.

(Saya lebih suka pergi ke pantai daripada pergi ke kolam renang.)

Sedangkan untuk penggunaan kata "*would prefer*" dan "*would rather*", digunakan untuk membicarakan sesuatu yang lebih spesifik.

Contoh:

I **would prefer** to see him personally.

(Saya lebih suka menemuinya secara pribadi.)

I **would rather** go home now.

(Saya lebih memilih untuk pulang sekarang.)

2. *Perbedaan pada bentuk kata kerjanya:*

I **prefer** living in a town.

(Diikuti **gerund**, menggunakan akhiran "**-ing**")

I **would prefer** to be told the truth.

(Diikuti oleh **infinitive**, menggunakan "**to + V₁**")

Would you **rather** stay at an apartment?
(Diikuti oleh bentuk dasar dari kata kerja V_1 tanpa "to")

3. *Perbedaan penggunaan preposisi (preposition) untuk menentukan pilihan:*

"Prefer" dan **"would prefer"** diikuti preposisi **"to"**.

Contoh:

I **prefer** living in a town **to** living in the village.

I **would rather** being alone **to** being with the wrong person.

"Would rather" diikuti preposisi **"than"**,

Contoh:

I **would rather** talk to him in person **than** call him on the phone.

e. Ringkasan

Preference adalah ungkapan perasaan yang menyatakan kesukaan terhadap sesuatu atau seseorang daripada yang lainnya.

1. *Prefer*

S + prefer + to infinitive
S + prefer + noun + to + noun
S + prefer + gerund + to + gerund

Contoh:

- They prefer to go now.
- My mother prefers lemon to orange.
- She prefers watching TV to listening to the radio.

2. *Would Rather*

S + would rather + V_1 (tanpa to-infinitive)
S + would rather + infinitive + than + infinitive
S + would rather + infinitive + noun + than + infinitive + noun
Subjek + would rather + someone + V_2

Contoh:

- I would rather study now.
- She would rather stay home than go shopping.
- We'd rather play card than play ball.
- I'd rather you went now.

3. *Would Prefer to*

S + would prefer to + infinitive + rather than + infinitive
S + would prefer to + infinitive + noun + rather than + infinitives + noun

Contoh:

- They would prefer to sing rather than dance.
- You'd prefer to play ball rather than take a sleep.

4. *Like*

S + like + nouns/gerund
S + like + gerund + better than + gerund
S + like + noun + better than + noun

Contoh:

- I like singing a song.
- She likes singing a song better than playing a guitar.
- They like coffee better than tea.

5. *Had Better*

S + had better + infinitive
S + had better + not + infinitive

Contoh:

- You had better study hard.
- You had better not work on Sundays.

6. *It's time*

It's time + to infinitive
It's time + subjek + bentuk lampau

Contoh:

- It's time to get up.
- It's time you went away.

7. *Instead of*

"Instead of" kita gunakan sebagai pengganti dari: **to, than, better than, rather than.**

Instead of + gerund/noun

Contoh:

- I prefer staying home instead of going out.
- They would rather eat their lunch instead of work.
- I would prefer to invite them instead of him.
- He likes me instead of him.

EXERCISE:

Choose A, B, C, or D as the best answer!

1. She ... bread ... rice for breakfast every morning.
 - A. prefers – than
 - B. prefers – to
 - C. prefer – to
 - D. prefer – rather than
2. Andrew ...
 - A. prefer listening to the radio to watching television
 - B. prefers playing tennis to play badminton on Sundays
 - C. prefers reading books to watching television on Sundays
 - D. like swimming to go jogging on Sundays
3. We sometimes ... go to the theatre ... stay at home at the weekends.
 - A. prefer to – rather than to
 - B. prefer – than to
 - C. prefer to – rather to
 - D. prefer to – to

4. He prefers sleeping ... television.
 - A. to watch
 - B. watch
 - C. watching
 - D. to watching

5. My father ... read magazines ... read novels.
 - A. would prefer to – rather than
 - B. would prefer – rather
 - C. would prefer – rather to
 - D. prefer – to

6. My little sister prefers to watch television ...
 - A. rather to read magazines
 - B. rather than listening to the radio
 - C. rather than read scientific books
 - D. to read comics

7. He loves mangoes but I ...
 - A. like oranges to apple
 - B. like bananas better than mangoes
 - C. like bananas than apples
 - D. like oranges rather to eat apples

8. Ratih ... than go to the cinema.
 - A. would watch television at home
 - B. would prefer to watch television at home
 - C. would go to the cinema with me
 - D. would rather go to the music concert with me

9. He would prefer to drive rather than ...
 - A. walk
 - B. to walk
 - C. walking
 - D. walks

10. He prefers swimming to ...
 - A. walk
 - B. sleep
 - C. jogging
 - D. run

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. B | 6. C |
| 2. C | 7. B |
| 3. D | 8. B |
| 4. D | 9. A |
| 5. A | 10. C |

F. PENGERTIAN, CONTOH, DAN FUNGSI *IMPERATIVE*

a. Pengertian *Imperative*

Imperative adalah kata kerja (*verb*) yang digunakan untuk memberikan perintah (*command*), peringatan (*warning*), nasihat (*advice*), instruksi/petunjuk (*instruction*), maupun permintaan (*request*). Verb ini merupakan satu dari tiga *verb mood* (termasuk: *subjunctive* dan *indicative*).

b. Aturan Penggunaan

1. Kata kerja yang digunakan merupakan *bare infinitive* (tanpa "to").
Contoh: Go!, Be Careful!, Sit down!
2. Verb ini tidak membutuhkan penambahan subjek karena subjek "you" telah tersirat (*elliptical construction*).
Contoh: Shut the window!
3. Kata kerja dapat dibuat lebih sopan dengan menambahkan kata "do" di depan verb.
Contoh: Do open the door.
4. Bentuk negatif didapatkan dengan menambahkan "don't" atau "do not" di depan verb.
Contoh: Do not step on the grass. Don't be careless.
5. Jika pembicara ikut serta dalam tindakan yang diajukan di dalam kalimat, tambahkan "let's" atau "let us" maupun bentuk negatifnya, "let's not" di depan verb.
Contoh: Let's go to the wedding ceremony. Let's not complain anymore.

c. Fungsi dan Contoh *Imperative*

Beberapa contoh *imperative* dengan fungsi-fungsinya adalah sebagai berikut:

Fungsi	Contoh <i>Imperative</i>
<p><i>Imperative</i> digunakan untuk memberikan perintah langsung (<i>direct order/command</i>). Perintah biasanya diberikan oleh orang yang memiliki kewenangan (<i>authority</i>) kepada anak-anak maupun binatang. Jika terdapat <i>imperative</i> di dalam kalimat, intonasi menurun pada akhir kalimat.</p>	<p>Wake up now! (Bangun sekarang!)</p>
	<p>Get out! (Keluar!)</p>
<p><i>Imperative</i> digunakan untuk memberikan peringatan (<i>warning/prohibition</i>).Biasanya untuk memperingatkan seseorang akan bahaya. Intonasi meninggi di kata terakhir.</p>	<p>Watch out! (Awas!)</p>
	<p>Don't touch me! (Jangan sentuh saya!)</p>
<p><i>Imperative</i> digunakan untuk memberikan <i>advice</i> (nasihat).Kalimat diucapkan dengan intonasi normal.</p>	<p>Don't be panic. (Jangan panik.)</p>
	<p>Do not eat too much. (Jangan makan terlalu banyak.)</p>
<p><i>Imperative</i> digunakan untuk memberikan instruksi/petunjuk (<i>instruction</i>).</p>	<p>Go straight ahead then turn left. (Jalan lurus ke depan lalu belok kiri.)</p>
	<p>Take the pill after a meal. (Minum pil setelah makan.)</p>

<p><i>Imperative</i> digunakan untuk mengajukan permintaan/permohonan (<i>request</i>). Untuk mengajukan permintaan, dapat digunakan kata "<i>please</i>" untuk membuat kata kerja ini menjadi lebih sopan.</p>	<p>Please don't go. (Tolong jangan pergi.)</p>
	<p>Please reconsider. (Tolong pertimbangkan kembali.)</p>
	<p>Let me alone, please. (Biarkan saya sendiri.)</p>
	<p>Polite request:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Would you like to give me some food, please? • Could you please stay here? • Will you invite him, please?

EXERCISE:

I. Fill in the gaps with the correct verb from the line below!

lock turn on watch go be bring drinks open turn off

Hello Anna, I have to go now, here are the keys for the house, do not ... the door to any body please, you can ... TV until late if you wish but remember to ... all the lights and ... the alarm before you ... to bed. Make sure my son Todd is asleep before you go to bed, and ... the doors, we will ... back by two in the morning. Ahh, and I forgot, Todd's milk is inside the refrigerator in a small bottle, he always ... it before falling asleep, ... a good girl and don't ... any people in the house. I will see you at two.

II. Match the first column to the second one!

A. Don't accept	1. the door to Mike.
B. Brush your teeth	2. to bring the Cds.
C. Turn off the lights	3. candies from strangers.
D. Don't step	4. before you go to bed.
E. Bring your dictionaries	5. adult programmes.
F. Don't open	6. when you go to bed to save energy.
G. Don't watch	7. for language arts class.
H. Don't forget	8. on the lawn.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- I. 1. open 6. lock
2. watch 7. be
3. turn off 8. drink
4. turn on 9. be
5. go 10. bring
- II. A - 3 E - 7
B - 4 F - 1
C - 6 G - 5
D - 8 H - 2

G. KNOW DAN KNOW HOW

Know diikuti kata benda (*noun*) menggambarkan pengetahuan (*knowledge*).

S	know	noun
I	know	the answer

Hindari penggunaan *infinitive* setelah *know*.

Know how diikuti *infinitive* menggambarkan kemampuan (*ability*).

S	know	How	infinitive	
I	Know	How	to answer	the question

a. *Know How + Infinitive*

Umumnya kita tidak menggunakan **know + to-infinitive**. Kita menggunakan **know how + to-infinitive**.

Contoh:

Does he **know how to play** classical guitar music?

Bukan: ~~Does he know to play~~

b. *Know + Object + Infinitive*

Dalam bahasa Inggris yang sangat formal, kita menggunakan **know + object + to-infinitive**.

Contoh:

I have worked with John Davidson for five years and **know him to be** reliable and hard-working. Weather experts have never **known it to snow** as heavily as it has this spring.

c. Know Tanpa Object

Untuk merujuk pada pengetahuan umum, kita menggunakan **know** tanpa sebuah **object**:

Contoh:

A: They're opening a new terminal at Amsterdam airport.

B: Yes, I **know**. (*I know that they are opening a new terminal.*)

Kita menggunakan **know + object** untuk merujuk pada apa yang kita ketahui dari pengalaman pribadi:

Contoh:

A: They're opening a new terminal at Amsterdam airport.

B: Yes, I **know** it. (*I know the one you mean. I have been there and seen the airport.*)

Kadang kita juga menggunakan *know about* or *know of* saat kita mengatakan apa yang kita ketahui dari pengetahuan umum (*know of* bersifat lebih formal):

Contoh:

What do you **know about** the origins of the American Civil War?

Bukan: ~~What do you know the origins~~

d. You know

Kita sangat sering menggunakan *you know* sebagai penanda percakapan. Kita menggunakannya untuk memeriksa apakah orang yang sedang kita ajak bicara memiliki pengetahuan yang sama dan memahami apa yang kita bicarakan.

Contoh:

It's impossible to find time to go to the gym, **you know**, every day, isn't it?

4

CAUSATIVE

A. PENGERTIAN CAUSATIVE VERB

Causative verb adalah kata kerja yang digunakan untuk menunjukkan bahwa subjek tidak bertanggung jawab langsung terhadap aksi yang terjadi melainkan seseorang atau sesuatu yang lain yang melakukan aksi tersebut.

B. FUNGSI DAN RUMUS CAUSATIVE VERB

Kalimat *causative verb* terbagi menjadi 2 macam, yaitu *active* dan *passive causative*. Pada kalimat *active causative verb*, *agent* (yang mengerjakan aksi) diketahui. Sebaliknya, pada kalimat *passive causative verb*, *agent* biasanya tidak disebutkan.

Let, make, have, dan **get** merupakan *causative verb* yang umum digunakan.

Fungsi dan rumus *let, make, have,* dan *get* adalah sebagai berikut:

Verb	Fungsi	Rumus Kausatif Aktif dan Pasif
Let	membiarkan seseorang melakukan sesuatu	Active: S + let + agent + action verb (bare infinitive) +
Make	memaksa atau sangat menyakinkan seseorang untuk melakukan sesuatu	Active: S + (make-made) + agent + action verb (bare infinitive) +

Have	menginginkan seseorang mengerjakan sesuatu untuk subjek	Active: S + (have-had) + agent + action verb (bare infinitive) + object
		Passive: S + (have-had) + object + action verb (V ₃)
Get	mirip dengan <i>have</i> namun dengan struktur kalimat yang berbeda	Active: S + (get-got) + agent + action verb (to infinitive) + ...
		Passive: S + (got) + object + action verb (V ₃)

C. CONTOH KALIMAT CAUSATIVE VERB

Beberapa contoh kata kerja kausatif pada struktur aktif dan pasif adalah sebagai berikut:

Rumus	Verb	Contoh Kalimat <i>Causative Verb</i>
Kata Kerja Kausatif Aktif	have-had	Lala had her friend take her result test.
		The student had the teacher speak slowly.
	get-got	She got her parents to buy her a tennis racket.
		The boy got his cat to chase a mouse.
	make-made	The woman made her daughter eat up the tomatoes.
		The manager makes her staff work hard.
	let	My father lets me choose my own future carrier.
		The shepherd lets his sheep graze in the meadow.

Kata Kerja Kausatif Pasif	have-had	I had my house renovated last week.
		He had his book returned as soon as possible.
	get-got	Teddy got the money saved in the bank.
		Yulia got her bedroom cleaned .

EXERCISE:

I. Choose the correct answer for the questions below!

- Instead of buying a new bicycle, why don't you have your old one ...?
 - to fix
 - fixing
 - fixed
 - fixes
- Can you help me ... my living room next weekend?
 - to paint
 - painting
 - paint
 - paints
- My mom always makes me ... my room on Saturday mornings.
 - to clean up
 - cleaning up
 - cleaned up
 - clean up
- My little girl wants us to let her ... overnight at her friend's place.
 - to stay
 - staying
 - stayed
 - stay
- We had our landlord ... the broken window.
 - to fix
 - fixing

- C. fixed
D. fix
6. We got the computer guy ... the new software for us.
A. to install
B. installing
C. installed
D. install
7. My friend lets me ... his car sometimes.
A. to borrow
B. borrowing
C. borrowed
D. borrow
8. I can help you ... into your new apartment if you want.
A. to move
B. moving
C. moved
D. move
9. Your car engine is making some strange sounds. Why don't you have a mechanic ... at it?
A. to look
B. looking
C. looked
D. look
10. Her parents don't let her ... out late on school nights.
A. to stay
B. stayed
C. stay
D. staying

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. C | 6. A |
| 2. D | 7. D |
| 3. D | 8. A |
| 4. D | 9. D |
| 5. D | 10. C |

II. Complete the sentences and make clear that the people don't/didn't do it themselves! (The first sentence is given as an example.)

1. Yesterday, (I/cut/my hair). *I had my hair cut.*
2. Every Friday, (Joe/wash/his car)
3. Tomorrow, (she/repair/her shower)
4. Each Saturday, (we/deliver/a pizza) ... to our home.
5. Last year, (Bob/clean/his house) ... by a charwoman.
6. As Phil had a broken arm, (he/type/his texts) ... by his secretary.
7. (I/pick up/the goods) ... tomorrow in the afternoon.
8. (we/redecorate/our walls) ... last summer.
9. Whenever Clara is staying at this hotel, (she/carry/her bags) ... into her room.
10. (we/organise/our last party) ... by professionals.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

1. Yesterday, I had my hair cut.
2. Every Friday, Joe has his car washed.
3. Tomorrow, she is going to have her shower repaired.
4. Each Saturday, we have a pizza delivered to our home.
5. Last year, Bob had his house cleaned by a charwoman.
6. As Phil had a broken arm, he had his texts typed by his secretary.
7. I will have the goods picked up tomorrow in the afternoon.
8. We had our walls redecorated last summer.
9. Whenever Clara is staying at this hotel, she has her bags carried into her room.
10. We had our last party organised by professionals.

5

CONDITIONAL SENTENCE

A. PENGERTIAN KALIMAT PENGANDAIAAN (*CONDITIONAL SENTENCE*)

Kalimat pengandaian (*conditional sentence*) adalah suatu bentuk kalimat majemuk yang dapat kita gunakan ketika kita ingin mengatakan bahwa sesuatu merupakan akibat atau konsekuensi yang bergantung pada situasi lain. Di dalamnya terdapat klausa pengandaian (*if clause*) dan klausa akibat (*result clause*). Pada bentuk *conditional sentences* kita menggunakan kata "if" (jika).

B. BENTUK-BENTUK DAN CONTOH *CONDITIONAL SENTENCE*

- a. Benar pada waktu sekarang dan masa akan datang (*true in the present or future*)
 - b. Tidak benar atau berlawanan dengan kenyataan pada waktu sekarang dan masa akan datang (*untrue in the present or future*)
 - c. Tidak benar atau berlawanan dengan kenyataan pada masa lalu (*untrue in the past*).
- a. **Benar pada Waktu Sekarang dan Masa Akan Datang (*True in the Present or Future*)**

Bentuk *conditional sentence* ini digunakan untuk mengekspresikan pengandaian dengan harapan yang dikatakan oleh si pembicara mungkin terjadi untuk masa sekarang ataupun akan datang.

Bentuk dari Klausa Pengandaian "If Clause"	Bentuk dari Klausa Akibat "Result Clause"	Contoh Kalimat
Simple present tense	Simple present tense Simple future tense	<i>If I have enough money, I buy a new car.</i> <i>If I have enough money tomorrow, I will buy a new car.</i>

Perhatikan contoh kalimat berikut ini:

1. If clause (simple present tense) – result clause (simple present tense)
If I don't eat breakfast, I always **get** hungry during class.
(Jika saya tidak sarapan, saya selalu merasa lapar selama pelajaran di kelas.)

Pada contoh kalimat tersebut, **result clause** menggunakan *simple present tense*, fungsinya untuk mengekspresikan aktivitas yang sudah menjadi kebiasaan atau situasi. Makna pada kalimat tersebut: "si pembicara merasa yakin bahwa dia terbiasa merasa lapar jika dia tidak sarapan sebelum berangkat ke sekolah."

2. If clause (simple present tense) – result clause (simple future tense)
If I don't eat breakfast tomorrow, I **will get** hungry during class.
(Jika saya tidak sarapan besok, saya akan merasa lapar selama pelajaran di kelas.)

Pada contoh kalimat tersebut, **result clause** menggunakan *simple future tense*, fungsinya untuk mengekspresikan bahwa kalimat tersebut menyangkut aktivitas tertentu atau situasi di masa yang akan datang. Makna pada kalimat tersebut: "si pembicara mengetahui bahwa dia akan merasa lapar jika besok dia tidak sarapan sebelum berangkat ke sekolah."

CATATAN:

Baik *simple present tense* maupun *simple future* digunakan sebagai klausa akibat (*result clause*) adalah untuk mengekspresikan suatu ketetapan atau suatu fakta yang dapat diprediksi.

Contoh lain:

If I'm not busy, I come to your party.

If the weather is nice tomorrow, we **will go** on a picnic.

b. Tidak Benar atau Berlawanan dengan Kenyataan pada Waktu Sekarang dan Masa Akan Datang (*Untrue in the Present or Future*)

Bentuk *conditional sentence* ini digunakan apabila kita ingin mengkhayalkan suatu keadaan yang bertentangan dengan kenyataan yang ada saat ini dan masa yang akan datang. Dalam hal ini sikap pembicara agak pesimis karena kecil kemungkinan peristiwa itu terjadi.

Bentuk dari Klausa Pengandaian "If Clause"	Bentuk dari Klausa Akibat "Result Clause"	Contoh Kalimat
Simple past tense	Would + V ₁	<p><i>If I had</i> enough money, <i>I would buy</i> a new car.</p> <p>(<i>in truth, I do not have enough money, so I will not buy a new car.</i>)</p> <p>(Kenyataannya, saya tidak punya cukup uang, jadi saya tidak akan membeli mobil baru.)</p>

Perhatikan contoh kalimat berikut ini:

If clause (simple past tense) – result clause (would + V₁)

1. **If I taught** this class, I **would not give** tests.

(Jika saya mengajar kelas ini, saya tidak akan memberikan tes.)

Makna pada kalimat di atas: "kenyataannya, si pembicara tidak mengajar kelas tersebut."

2. **If Sam were** here right now, he **would help** us.

(Jika Sam ada di sini sekarang, dia akan menolong kita.)

Makna pada kalimat di atas: kenyataannya, Sam tidak ada di sini sekarang.

3. **If I were** you, I **would accept** this invitation.

(Jika saya menjadi kamu, saya akan menerima undangan ini.)

Makna pada kalimat di atas: kenyataannya, saya bukan kamu.

CATATAN:

Apabila klausa pengandaian dinyatakan dengan *to be*, maka yang digunakan adalah "*were*" untuk semua jenis subjek.

c. Tidak Benar atau Berlawanan dengan Kenyataan pada Masa Lalu (*Untrue in the Past*).

Bentuk *conditional sentence* ini digunakan apabila kita ingin membayangkan suatu kemungkinan lain dari suatu perbuatan atau peristiwa yang telah terjadi di masa lampau. Atau dapat dikatakan bahwa bentuk ini dapat digunakan untuk menyatakan suatu keadaan atau peristiwa yang berlawanan dengan kenyataan yang sebenarnya di masa lampau. Sikap pembicara dalam hal ini adalah sangat menyesal terhadap perbuatan yang telah terjadi.

Bentuk dari Klausa Pengandaian "If Clause"	Bentuk dari Klausa Akibat "Result Clause"	Contoh Kalimat
Past perfect tense	Would have + V ₃	<p>If I had had enough money, I would have bought a new car yesterday.</p> <p>(in truth, I did not have enough money, so I did not buy a new car yesterday.)</p> <p>(Kenyataannya, saya tidak punya cukup uang, jadi saya tidak membeli mobil baru kemarin.)</p>

Perhatikan contoh kalimat berikut ini:

If clause (past perfect tense) – result clause (would have + V₃)

1. **If they had studied**, they **would have passed** the exam.
(Jika mereka sudah belajar, mereka akan sudah lulus ujian.)
Makna pada kalimat di atas: kenyataannya, mereka tidak belajar sebelumnya, dan mereka gagal atau tidak lulus dalam ujian.
2. **If I had called Sarah**, she **would have come** here.
(Artinya: Jika saya sudah menelepon Sarah, dia akan sudah datang ke sini.)
Makna pada kalimat di atas: kenyataannya, saya tidak menelepon Sarah sebelumnya, dan Sarah tidak datang ke sini.

d. Mixed Conditional Sentence

Mixed conditional sentence adalah gabungan/campuran dari *conditional* tipe 2 dan 3.

Mixed Conditional Sentence			
Type	If Clause	Main Clause	Arti
Mixed Type	Simple past If I <i>were</i> a bird,	would have + past participle I <i>would have flown</i> to your place last night.	Tidak benar di masa sekarang dan masa depan. Fakta: Saya bukan seekor burung, jadi saya tidak terbang ke rumahmu.
	Past perfect If you <i>had worked</i> hard,	would + simple form you <i>would succeed</i> .	Tidak benar di masa lalu. Fakta: Kamu tidak bekerja keras, jadi sekarang kamu tidak sukses.

Kapan kita menggunakan mixed conditional sentence? *Mixed conditional sentence* digunakan untuk membicarakan tentang peristiwa atau situasi yang tidak terjadi di waktu lampau tetapi kita bisa membayangkan kemungkinan hasilnya di waktu sekarang atau sebaliknya

Contoh:

- If you *lived* near the factory, you *would have heard* the sound of the explosion. Kenyataannya, kamu tidak tinggal dekat pabrik. Oleh karena itu kamu tidak mendengar suara ledakan itu.
- If he *had not been* late this morning, he *would be permitted* to join the test. Kenyataannya dia sudah terlambat. Oleh karena itu dia tidak diizinkan untuk mengikuti tes.

EXERCISE:

Complete the following conditional sentences. Use type 1, 2, 3, or mixed conditional!

1. If I were you, I (consult) with the advisor before making a decision.
 - A. will consult
 - B. would consult
 - C. would have consulted

- D. would have been consulted
 - E. consulted
2. If we (come) earlier, we would not have missed that great speaker.
- A. came
 - B. come
 - C. have come
 - D. are coming
 - E. had come
3. You would not be in such a problem if you (listen) to your parents' advice.
- A. will listen
 - B. had listened
 - C. have listened
 - D. are listening
 - E. listen
4. I'm pretty sure that if he (know) the consequences, he wouldn't have done such a silly act.
- A. had known
 - B. knew
 - C. know
 - D. would have known
 - E. would know
5. If you know her better, you (find) that she is a nice and lovable person.
- A. found
 - B. would find
 - C. had found
 - D. find
 - E. will find
6. He (not be) happy at all if he knows what you have done to his cat.
- A. would not be
 - B. is not
 - C. will not be
 - D. were not
 - E. had not been

7. If I were the same age as her, I (probably fall) in love with her.
- A. will probably fall
 - B. is probably falling
 - C. probably falls
 - D. would probably fall
 - E. would probably have fallen
8. Unless you do something about it, this problem (still exist).
- A. will still exist
 - B. still exists
 - C. would still exist
 - D. still existed
 - E. would still have existed
9. If you (scan) the flash disk before opening it, the virus wouldn't have infected your computer.
- A. scanned
 - B. scan
 - C. would scan
 - D. have scanned
 - E. had scanned
10. She wouldn't have been mad at you if you (explain) what had actually happened.
- A. explained
 - B. explain
 - C. had explained
 - D. were explaining
 - E. have explained

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. B | 6. C |
| 2. C | 7. D |
| 3. B | 8. A |
| 4. A | 9. D |
| 5. E | 10. C |

6

SUBJUNCTIVE

A. PENGERTIAN *SUBJUNCTIVE*

Subjunctive adalah kata kerja yang digunakan untuk membayangkan akibat dari sesuatu yang tidak ada atau tidak terjadi, yang dapat berupa harapan (*wish*), kebutuhan (*requirements*), dan saran (*suggestion*). Atau dengan kata lain, makna kalimat *subjunctive* selalu berlawanan dengan kenyataan atau fakta.

Kata-kata yang digunakan dalam *subjunctive* adalah "**wish**" (menginginkan/mengharapkan), "**as if/as though**" (seolah-olah), "**would rather**" (lebih suka), "**if only**" (seandainya/jika saja).

B. FUNGSI *SUBJUNCTIVE*

- As if/as though* digunakan untuk menyatakan keadaan yang kenyataan atau faktanya tidak benar.
- Wish, would rather, dan if only* digunakan untuk menyatakan suatu harapan atau keinginan.

C. RUMUS PENGGUNAAN *SUBJUNCTIVE*

a. *Future Subjunctive*

Future Subjunctive digunakan sebagai kalimat pengandaian yang mengacu pada masa yang akan datang, jadi faktanya juga dalam bentuk *simple future tense*.

Wish	Subject 1 + wish + Subject 2 + could/would + V ₁
------	---

Contoh:

I **wish** you would **come** to the party tonight.

(Artinya: Saya berharap kamu akan datang ke pesta nanti malam.)

(Faktanya: Dia tidak akan datang ke pesta nanti malam)

CATATAN:

Walaupun jarang digunakan, tetapi *future subjunctive* terkadang masih sering kita jumpai, jadi tidak ada salahnya kita mengenalinya juga. Sebagai gantinya kita juga bisa menggunakan *present subjunctive*.

b. Present Subjunctive

Present Subjunctive digunakan sebagai kalimat pengandaian yang mengacu pada masa sekarang, jadi faktanya juga dalam bentuk *simple present tense*.

Wish	Subject 1 + wish + Subject 2 + V ₂ /were
As if/as though	Subject 1 + V ₁ + as if/as though + Subject 2 + V ₂ /were
Would rather	Subject 1 + would rather + Subject 2 + V ₂ /were
If only	If only + Subject + V ₂

CATATAN:

Pada bentuk *present subjunctive*, kata kerja yang digunakan adalah bentuk kedua (V₂), dan jika harus menggunakan *to be*, harus menggunakan "were" untuk semua jenis subjek.

Contoh:

I **wish** you **visited** me.

(Artinya: Saya berharap kamu mengunjungi saya.)

(Faktanya: Kamu tidak mengunjungi saya.)

The girl dresses **as if it were** summer now.
 (Artinya: Gadis itu berpakaian seolah-olah sekarang musim panas.)
 (Faktanya: Sekarang bukan musim panas.)

Shelly **would rather** he **told** the truth.
 (Artinya: Shelly lebih suka dia mengatakan yang sebenarnya.)
 (Faktanya: Dia tidak mengatakan yang sebenarnya.)

If only she **knew**.
 (Artinya: Seandainya dia tahu.)
 (Faktanya: Dia tidak tahu.)

c. Past Subjunctive

Past Subjunctive digunakan sebagai kalimat pengandaian yang mengacu pada masa lampau, jadi faktanya juga dalam bentuk *simple past tense*.

Wish	Subject 1 + wished + Subject 2 + had + V₃/been
As if/as though	Subject 1 + V₂ + as if + had + V₃/been
Would rather	Subject 1 + would rather + Subject 2 + had + V₃/been
If only	If only + subject + had + V₃/been

Contoh:

She **wished** (that) she **had had** more time last night.
 (Artinya: Dia berharap bahwa dia punya waktu lebih kemarin malam.)
 (Faktanya: Dia tidak punya waktu lebih kemarin malam.)

Jeff **looked as though** he **had seen** a ghost.
 (Artinya: Jeff terlihat seolah-olah dia telah melihat hantu.)
 (Faktanya: Jeff tidak melihat hantu.)

I **would rather** he **had been** here.
 (Artinya: Saya lebih suka dia sudah berada di sini.)
 (Faktanya: Dia tidak berada di sini.)

If only Rachel **had not been** at home last night.
 (Artinya: Seandainya Rachel tidak berada di rumah semalam.)
 (Faktanya: Rachel berada di rumah semalam.)

d. Penggunaan dan Fungsi *Subjunctive* Pada Klausa Nomina (*Noun Clause*)

Perhatikan tabel di bawah ini untuk mengetahui penggunaan subjunctive pada klausa nomina.

Contoh	Keterangan
<p><i>Our teacher demands that we be on time.</i> (Asalnya: "we should be on time".)</p> <p><i>I insisted that he pay me the money.</i> (Asalnya: "he should pay me the money".)</p> <p><i>I recommended that she not go to the concert.</i> (Asalnya: "she should not go to the concert".)</p> <p><i>It is important that they be told the truth.</i> (Asalnya: "they should be told the truth".)</p>	<p>Pada contoh kalimat pertama di samping, fungsi be adalah subjunctive verb.</p> <p><i>Subjunctive</i> digunakan pada <i>noun clause</i> yang diikuti oleh kata kerja (<i>verbs</i>), kata sifat (<i>adjectives</i>), dan ekspresi (<i>expressions</i>) tertentu. Pada contoh kalimat di samping, <i>subjunctive verb</i> digunakan hanya dalam bentuk sederhananya. Yakni, tidak mengandung unsur atau bentuk <i>present, past</i>, atau <i>future</i>. Tidak juga tunggal (<i>singular</i>) atau jamak (<i>plural</i>), jadi tidak ada penambahan <i>-s/-es</i> pada kata kerjanya.</p> <p>Pada kalimat negatif: not + <i>simple form</i> (bentuk sederhana/ dari V_1), seperti contoh ketiga.</p> <p>Pada kalimat pasif: bentuk sederhana dari <i>be</i> + V_3, seperti contoh keempat.</p>
<p><i>Subjunctive</i> lebih sering digunakan pada <i>American English</i> daripada <i>British English</i>. Pada <i>British English</i>, (should, could, would) + V_1 lebih biasa digunakan daripada <i>subjunctive</i>. Perhatikan contoh berikut:</p> <p><i>I suggested that she see a doctor.</i> <i>I suggested that she should see a doctor.</i></p> <p>Penggunaan kata "should" digunakan setelah kata <i>suggest</i> dan <i>recommend</i>.</p>	

Kata kerja yang lazim diikuti oleh *subjunctive* pada *noun clause*:

demand (that), suggest (that), insist (that), recommend (that), request (that), advise (that), ask (that), propose (that).

Kata sifat dan ekspresi yang lazim diikuti oleh *subjunctive* pada *noun clause*:

It is important (that), It is necessary (that), It is essential (that), It is vital (that), It is imperative (that).

Perhatikan tabel fungsi dan contoh *subjunctive* pada klausa nomina di bawah ini.

Fungsi	Contoh Kalimat
<p>Kata kerja yang lazim diikuti oleh <i>subjunctive</i> pada klausa nomina untuk mengekspresikan kebutuhan (<i>requirements</i>) dan saran (<i>suggestion</i>), adalah:</p> <p><i>demand (that), suggest (that), insist (that), recommend (that), request (that), advise (that), ask (that), propose (that).</i></p>	<p><i>They requested that we not go after midnight.</i></p> <p><i>Mr. Brian insists that we be careful in our writing.</i></p> <p><i>The doctor recommended that she stay in bed for a few days.</i></p> <p><i>The students suggested we have class outside.</i></p> <p><i>She asked that we be sure to lock the door behind us.</i></p>
<p>Kata sifat dan ekspresi yang lazim diikuti oleh <i>subjunctive</i> pada klausa nomina untuk mengekspresikan kebutuhan (<i>requirements</i>) adalah:</p> <p><i>It is important (that), It is necessary (that), It is essential (that), It is vital (that), It is imperative (that).</i></p>	<p><i>It is necessary that everyone come here on time.</i></p> <p><i>It is essential that pollution be controlled and eventually be eliminated.</i></p> <p><i>It is vital that no one know about the government's secret operation.</i></p> <p><i>It is necessary that everyone come here on time.</i></p>

RINGKASAN:

1. *Present Subjunctive*

Positive Subjunctive

- S + wish + S + V₂ + O
- S + wish + S + were + adj./noun/adv
- S + wish + S + modal 2 + V₁ + O

Fact

- S + don't/doesn't + V₁ + O
- S + is/am/are + not + adj./noun/adv
- S + modal 1 + not + V₁ + O

Negative Subjunctive

- S + wish + S + didn't + V₁ + O
- S + wish + S + were + not + adj./noun/adv
- S + wish + S + modal 2 + not + V₁ + O

Fact

- S + V₁ + O
- S + is/am/are + adj./noun/adv
- S + modal 1 + V₁ + O

2. *Past Subjunctive*

Positive Subjunctive

- S + wish + S + had + V₃ + O
- S + wish + S + had + been + adj./noun/adv
- S + wish + modal 2 + have + V₃ + O

Fact

- S + didn't + V₁ + O
- S + was/were + not + adj./noun/adv
- S + modal 2 + not + V₁

Negative Subjunctive

- S + wish + S + had + not + V₃ + O
- S + wish + S + hadn't + been + adj./noun/adv
- S + wish + modal 2 + not + have + V₃ + O

Fact

- S + V₂ + O
- S + was/were + adj./noun/adv
- S + modal 2 + V₁

Contoh:

1. I wish I had money.
Fact: I don't have money.
2. He wishes he were rich.
Fact : He isn't rich.
3. You wish you could fly.
Fact : you can't fly.
4. I wish I had had some money yesterday.
Fact: I didn't have any money yesterday.
5. He wishes he had been there last night.
Fact : He wasn't there.
6. You wish you could have bought a car last year.
Fact : you couldn't buy a car last year.

EXERCISE:

1. It is imperative that everybody ... quiet in the library.
A. is
B. be
2. We wish that we ... another choice.
A. had
B. have
3. I wish he ... my best friend.
A. was
B. were
4. He insisted that I ... a gift from him.
A. received
B. receive
5. If I ... a doctor, I would never diagnose heart failure by symptoms alone.
A. was
B. were

6. Raissa acted as if she ... Lady Macbeth.
A. was
B. were
7. It is important that a newcomer student ... the instructions carefully.
A. read
B. reads
8. My husband requested that tea ... used instead of coffee.
A. were
B. be
9. She cried as though she ... a million dollars.
A. lose
B. lost
10. She would have helped you if you ... asked her.
A. have
B. had

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. B | 6. B |
| 2. A | 7. A |
| 3. B | 8. B |
| 4. B | 9. B |
| 5. B | 10. B |

7

PASSIVE

A. PENGERTIAN KALIMAT PASIF

Kalimat pasif (*passive voice*) adalah suatu bentuk gramatikal (*grammatical construction*) di mana subjek kalimat tidak melakukan aksi, melainkan menerima aksi atau ditindaklanjuti (*receiver of action*) oleh agent lain (*doer of action*) yang bisa disebutkan ataupun tidak. Sebaliknya, pada konstruksi kalimat aktif, subjek berhubungan langsung dengan verb dan bertindak sebagai pelaku aksi. Kalimat aktif dapat ditransformasi menjadi pasif, namun hanya kata kerja transitif (diikuti objek langsung) yang dapat diberlakukan demikian.

Rumus passive voice adalah sebagai berikut:

S + auxiliary verb + past participle

CATATAN:

- *Auxiliary verb* dapat berupa *primary auxiliary verb "be"* (*is, are, am, was, were, be, been, being*), kombinasi antara dua *primary* (*is/are being, was/were being, has/have been*) atau antara *primary* dan *modal auxiliary verb* (*will be, will have been*).
- *Past participle* yang digunakan berupa kata kerja transitif.

Contoh:

She can't drive a car. (kalimat aktif, transitif)

He always come on time. (kalimat aktif, intransitif)

- Perubahan bentuk dari bentuk dasar ke *past tense* dan *past participle* secara beraturan atau tidak beraturan.

Contoh:

play (bentuk dasar) → played (past participle)

sing (bentuk dasar) → sung (past participle)

Contoh Kalimat *Passive Voice* pada *Auxiliary Verb "be"*:

Komponen			Contoh Kalimat Pasif
Subject	Be	PP	
I	am	paid	I am paid in dollars. (Saya dibayar dalam dolar.)
The red velvet recipe	is	used	The red velvet recipe is used by many people. (Resep <i>red velvet</i> digunakan oleh banyak orang.)
All of my shoes	are	washed	All of my shoes are washed every month. (Semua sepatu saya dicuci setiap bulan.)
Large amounts of meat and milk	Are	consumed	Large amounts of meat and milk are consumed by many people in the countries. (Sejumlah besar daging dan susu dikonsumsi oleh banyak orang di negara-negara tersebut.)
The book	was	edited	The book was edited by Beatrice Sparks. (Buku itu disunting oleh Beatrice Sparks.)
The books	were	edited	The books were edited by Beatrice Sparks. (Buku-buku itu disunting oleh Beatrice Sparks.)

B. PENGECUALIAN PADA KATA KERJA TRANSITIF

Tidak semua kata kerja transitif, kata kerja yang memiliki objek langsung, dapat dipasifkan. Beberapa kata kerja tersebut yang antara lain: *have*, *become*, *lack*, *look like*, *mean*, dll akan terdengar tidak wajar maknanya ketika dipasifkan.

Beberapa contoh kalimat dari kata kerja tersebut adalah sebagai berikut:

- I have a great new idea. → tidak dapat dipasifkan menjadi: A great new idea is had by me.
- The snack contains aspartame. → tidak dapat dipasifkan menjadi: Aspartame is contained by the snack.

Kalimat pasif penting untuk dipelajari saat kita ingin menempatkan fokus pada objek sebuah tindakan, dan bukannya pada orang yang melakukan tindakan tersebut. Pelajar bahasa Inggris harus mempelajari bagaimana menggunakan kalimat pasif untuk menjelaskan proses dan situasi bisnis.

Beberapa contohnya seperti yang ada di bawah ini:

- Somebody made my car in Detroit. → My car was made in Detroit.
- Somebody painted this beautiful picture. → This picture was painted by George Smith.
- A number of people in company ZYZ have designed this recorder. → This recorder was designed by the ZYZ Company.

C. GRAMMAR KALIMAT PASIF

Passive voice digunakan saat fokus kalimat diletakkan pada orang atau benda yang terpengaruh oleh sebuah kejadian.

- Rumus pasif: **Passive Subject + To Be + Past Participle**
The house was built in 1989.
- Bentuk ini sering digunakan dalam bisnis saat objek sebuah tindakan lebih penting dibanding mereka yang melaksanakan tindakan tersebut.

Contoh:

We have produced over 20 different models in the past two years.

Diubah menjadi: *Over 20 different models have been produced in the past two years.*

- Jika *agentnya* dirasa penting (orang, perusahaan, atau pelaku tindakannya), gunakan kata "by".

Contoh:

Tim Wilson wrote "The Flight to Brunswick" in 1987.

Diganti menjadi: *"The Flight to Brunswick" was written in 1987 by Tim Wilson.*

- Hanya kata kerja yang memiliki sebuah objek yang dapat digunakan dalam *passive voice*.

D. STRUKTUR KALIMAT PASIF

Kalimat Aktif	Kalimat Pasif	
They make Fords in Cologne.	Fords are made in Cologne.	Simple Present
Susan is cooking dinner.	Dinner is being cooked by Susan	Present Continuous
James Joyce wrote "Dubliners".	"Dubliners" was written by James Joyce.	Past Simple
They were painting the house when I arrived.	The house was being painted when I arrived.	Past Continuous
They have produced over 20 models in the past two years.	Over 20 models have been produced in the past two years.	Present Perfect
They are going to build a new factory in Portland.	A new factory is going to be built in Portland.	Future Intention with Going to
I will finish it tomorrow.	It will be finished tomorrow.	Future Simple

EXERCISE:

I. Rewrite the given sentences in passive voice!

Example:

Frank builds a house.

Answer:

A house is built. *or*

A house is built by Frank.

1. She bought four apples.

....

2. We won the match.

....

3. The man stole the blue car.
....
4. The police arrested the thieves.
....
5. Jack swam the 200 metres.
....
6. The dog bit the old lady.
....
7. Tom and Max ate five hamburgers.
....
8. Oliver taught the children.
....
9. Victoria rode the brown horse.
....
10. Grandmother told good stories.
....

KUNCI JAWABAN:

1. Four apples were bought.
2. The match was won.
3. The blue car was stolen.
4. The thieves were arrested.
5. The 200 metres were swum.
6. The old lady was bitten.
7. Five hamburgers were eaten.
8. The children were taught.
9. The brown horse was ridden.
10. Good stories were told.

II. Form Questions in Passive using the given words/phrases!

Example:

By – many – tourists – been – visited – the museum – has?

Answer: Has the museum been visited by many tourists?

1. in – Hong Kong – are – made – cars
2. to – hospital – she – been – taken – has
3. be – can – roasted – in five minutes – the potatoes
4. be – the students – for – the exam – prepared – will
5. will – when – tea – be – served
6. today – lunch – is – being provided
7. laptops – were – given – to – them – last week
8. broadcasted – be – the – videos – may
9. has – for repairs – been – closed – the road
10. by – the teacher – he – was – asked – yesterday

KUNCI JAWABAN:

1. Are cars made in Hong Kong?
2. Has she been taken to hospital?
3. Can the potatoes be roasted in five minutes?
4. Will the students be prepared for the exam?
5. When will tea be served?
6. Is lunch being provided today?
7. Were laptops given to them last week?
8. May the videos be broadcasted?
9. Has the road been closed for repairs?
10. Was he asked by the teacher yesterday?

E. PENULISAN BY AGENT

Dalam penulisan kalimat pasif, kita biasanya menggunakan “by” untuk menunjukkan *agent* atau pelaku—orang atau benda yang melakukan pekerjaan atau yang menyebabkan sesuatu terjadi. Penulisan “by agent” pada kalimat pasif ditujukan untuk menambah informasi dalam kalimat tersebut.

Contoh:

This house was built by my grandfather.

This great novel was written by JJ. Tolkien

Tetapi tidak semua kalimat pasif harus mencantumkan “by agent”. Kita boleh tidak menyertakan “by agent” dalam pembuatan kalimat pasif jika orang atau benda yang melakukan pekerjaan tidak diketahui atau tidak penting.

Contoh:

A lot of money was stolen in the robbery. (Tidak diketahui pelakunya)

The road is cleaned everyday. (Tidak terlalu penting pelakunya)

F. KALIMAT PASIF PADA INFINITIF

Bentuk pasif dari *infinitive phrase* dapat berperan sebagai subjek, objek, maupun *modifier* pada suatu kalimat. Rumus dan contoh bentuk pasif pada infinitif adalah sebagai berikut:

(to) be + past participle

Contoh:

- To be accompanied with him is a bad idea. (subjek)
- Everyone needs to be loved. (objek)
- He is the man to be trusted for all the things. (*modifier*)

G. KALIMAT PASIF PADA GERUND

Bentuk pasif pada *gerund* dapat berfungsi sebagai subjek, objek, maupun objek preposisi dalam suatu kalimat. Berikut rumus dan contoh bentuk pasif pada gerund:

being + past participle

Contoh:

- Being accompanied with him is a bad idea. (subjek)
- My brother enjoyed being taken to the beach. (objek)
- My brother's happy of being taken to the beach. (objek preposisi)

EXERCISE:

Chose the right phrases to complete the second sentence so that it means exactly the same as the original one!

1. They say smoking is dangerous.
Smoking is said ... dangerous.
A. that it is
B. that is

- C. to be
D. to have been
2. They think he has stolen the ring.
He is thought ... the ring.
A. to steal
B. to be stealing
C. that he has stolen
D. have stolen
3. People believe she is leaving tomorrow.
She is believed ... leaving tomorrow.
A. to leave
B. to have left
C. that she will leave
D. to be leaving
4. We know that Napoleon was a great leader.
Napoleon is known ... a great leader.
A. to was
B. to be
C. to have been
D. to has been
5. People thought he had committed the crime.
He ... to have committed the crime.
A. is thought
B. was thought
C. thinks
D. is thought
6. They believed he was going to retire.
He ... to retire.
A. was believed
B. was expected
C. is believe
D. is expected
7. We all know that cancer is caused by smoking.
Cancer is known ... by smoking.
A. to be caused
B. that it is caused

- C. that it caused
D. that is caused
8. They say Ann and Peter are getting married next week.
Ann and Peter are said ... married next week.
A. to get
B. to be getting
C. that are getting
D. that they are getting
9. People think she is pregnant.
She is thought ... pregnant
A. to have been
B. to be
C. that is
D. that she is
10. People say she has miscarried twice.
She is said twice ...
A. to miscarry
B. to miscarrie
C. to have miscarried
D. that she has miscarrie

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. C | 6. A |
| 2. D | 7. A |
| 3. D | 8. B |
| 4. C | 9. B |
| 5. B | 10. C |

H. BEBERAPA BENTUK KALIMAT PASIF

a. Kalimat Pasif Imperatif

Let + object + be + V₃

- Contoh:** - Help the poor. (aktif)
- Let the poor be helped. (pasif)

b. Kalimat Pasif Infinitif: *It is/was time*

It is/was time for + object + to be + V₃

- Contoh:** - It is time to send the letter. (aktif)
- It is time for the letter to be sent. (pasif)

c. Kalimat Imperatif Pasif Negatif

S + be + V₃ + not + to infinitive

V₃ yang sering digunakan adalah: *advised, asked, begged, commanded, requested.*

- Contoh:** - Don't wait for me. (aktif)
- You are advised not to wait for me. (pasif)

d. Kalimat Pasif dengan Kata Kerja Preposisi

Subjek + be + adjective + when + subject + be + V₃

Kata kerja yang digunakan adalah: *taste, smell, fee.*

- Contoh:** - This food tastes delicious. (aktif)
- This food is delicious when it is tasted. (pasif)

e. Kalimat Pasif dengan Kata Kerja Tertentu yang Diikuti oleh "that-clause"

Kata kerja yang digunakan adalah: *accept, admit, agree, assume, believe, decide, expect, find out, intend, plan, point out, presume, prove, regret, report, say, think, understand.*

- Contoh:** - We regretted that the principal had to resign from office. (aktif)
- It was regretted that the principal had to resign from office. (pasif)

f. Kalimat Pasif dengan Kata Benda atau Kata Sifat sebagai Pelengkap.

- Contoh:** - I consider her very pretty. (aktif)
- She is considered very pretty. (pasif)

g. Kalimat Pasif dengan Dua Objek

- Contoh:** - He gave me a book. (aktif)
- A book was given to me by him. (pasif 1)
- I was given a book by him. (pasif 2)

h. Kalimat Pasif dengan *Gerund Verbs*

- Contoh:** - The teacher enjoyed teaching the students. (aktif)
- The students enjoyed being taught by the teacher. (pasif)

i. Kalimat Pasif dengan *Agent* yang Diletakkan di Akhir Kalimat

Dalam kalimat pasif, jika pelaku menerangkan ekspresi yang panjang, sebaiknya subjek tersebut ditempatkan di akhir kalimat setelah *by*.

- Contoh:** - We were all surprised by her sudden announcement to get married
- I was confused by his plan to stop the ongoing project and begin a new one.

j. Kalimat Pasif dengan Kata Kerja Unik

Kata kerja yang digunakan adalah: *require, deserve, need*.

- Contoh:** - This wall needs to be painted (sama dengan)
- This wall needs painting.

k. *Belief dan Knowledge – Anticipatory It*

Ingat bahwa *anticipatory it clause* menggambarkan *belief or knowledge*. *Anticipatory* berarti sebelum (*before*). Beberapa *it clause* yang terletak sebelum *main clause* dapat dilihat dalam daftar di bawah ini:

- It is believed
- It is hypothesized
- It is known
- It is said
- It is though
- It is true
- It is written

Hindari penggunaan *-ing form*, kata benda atau infinitif kecuali subjek dan kata kerja setelah *anticipatory it clause*.

Anticipatory It	that	S	V	
It is believe	that	all mamals	experience	dreams

Contoh:

Salah : It is hypothesized that the subject in the control group not to score as well.

Benar : It is hypotesized that the subject in control group will not score as well

Salah : It is generally known that she leaving at the end of the year.

Benar : It is generally know that she is leaving at the end of the year.

Salah : It is said that a buried treasure near here.

Benar : It is said that a buried treasure was hidden near here

8

HAVE + PARTICIPLE

A. DURASI: HAVE + PARTICIPLE

Ingat bahwa *have + participle* menggambarkan aktivitas yang terjadi antara periode tertentu. *Have + participle* biasanya diikuti dengan keterangan durasi seperti *since* dan *for*.

S	have	participle	(durasi)
The English language	has	changed	since Shakespeare's time

Hindari penggunaan *participle*, kecuali *have + participle*.
Hindari penggunaan *a verb or a past for*, kecuali *participle*.

Contoh:

Salah : We have live in Seatle for five years.

Benar : We have lived in Seatle for five years.

Salah : Have you wrote your mother a letter?

Benar : Have you written your mother a letter?

Salah : Ray given us a lot of help since we arrived.

Benar : Ray has given us a lot of help since we arrived.

B. DURASI: HAVE + BEEN + PARTICIPLE

Ingat bahwa *have + been + participle* menggambarkan suatu aktivitas yang terjadi sekarang dan berlangsung pada suatu periode tertentu.

Ingat bahwa bentuk kalimat ini adalah pasif, sehingga pelakunya tidak diketahui atau dianggap tidak penting.

	have	been	participle	
She	has	been	accepted	to State University

Contoh:

Salah : The party has planned for two weeks.

Benar : The party has been planned for two weeks.

(It is the party, not the people who planned it, that is important)

Salah : Your typewriter been fixed and you can pick it up any time

Benar : Your typewriter has been fixed and you can pick it up any time.

(It is your typewriter, not the person who fixed it, that is important)

Salah : Wayne has elected to the student government.

Benar : Wayne has been elected to the student government.

(It is Wayne, not the people who elected him, who is important)

C. PREDIKSI: *WILL HAVE + PARTICIPLE*

Ingat bahwa *will have* yang diikuti sebuah *participle* dan *future adverb* menggambarkan prediksi untuk aktivitas di masa yang akan datang.

<i>Adverb of future</i>	S	will	have	participle	
By the year 2010,	Researchers	will	have	discovered	A cure for cancer

Hindari penggunaan *will* kecuali *will have*

Contoh:

Salah : You will finished your homework by the time the movie starts.

Benar : You will have been finished your homework by the time the movie starts.

Salah : Jan will left by five o'clock

Benar : Jan will have left by five o'clock

Salah : Before school is out, I have returned all of my library books.

Benar : Before school is out, I will have returned all of my library books.

D. KEINGINAN YANG TIDAK TERCAPAI DI MASA LALU: **HAD HOPED**

Ingat bahwa *had hoped* menggambarkan harapan di waktu lampau yang tidak terjadi.

S	had hoped	that	S	would	kata kerja	
We	had hoped	that	She	Would	change	her mind

Hindari penggunaan kata kerja kecuali *would* + kata kerja

Contoh:

Salah : He had hoped that he graduate this semester, but he couldn't finish his thesis in time.

Benar : He had hoped that he would graduate this semester, but he couldn't finish his thesis in time.

Salah : We had hoped him staying longer.

Benar : We had hoped that he would stay longer.

Salah : They had hoped that she not find out about it.

Benar : They had hoped that she would not find out about it

E. KATA KERJA HAVE DALAM SEMUA TENSES.

a. Nominal Forms

Infinitive : to have

Participle : had

Gerund : having

b. Indicative

Present	Perfect
I + have	I + have had
you + have	you + have had
he + has	he + has had
we + have	we + have had
you + have	you + have had
they + have	they + have had

Past I + had you + had he + had we + had you + had they + had	Pluperfect I + had had you + had had he + had had we + had had you + had had they + had had
Future I + will have you + will have he + will have we + will have you + will have they + will have	Future perfect I + will have had you + will have had he + will have had we + will have had you + will have had they + will have had

c. Subjunctive

Present I + have you + have he + have we + have you + have they + have	Present I + have had you + have had he + have had we + have had you + have had they + have had
Imperfect I + had you + had he + had we + had you + had they + had	Pluperfect I + had had you + had had he + had had we + had had you + had had they + had had

d. Conditional

Present I + would have you + would have he + would have we + would have you + would have they + would have	Perfect I + would have had you + would have had he + would have had we + would have had you + would have had they + would have had
---	---

e. Imperative

you have
we Let's have
you have
Progressive (Continuous Forms)

f. Indicative

Present I + am having you + are having he + is having we + are having you + are having they + are having	Perfect I + have been having you + have been having he + has been having we + have been having you + have been having they + have been having
Past I + was having you + were having he + was having we + were having you + were having they + were having	Pluperfect I + had been having you + had been having he + had been having we + had been having you + had been having they + had been having
Future I + will be having you + will be having he + will be having we + will be having you + will be having they + will be having	Future perfect I + will have been having you + will have been having he + will have been having we + will have been having you + will have been having they + will have been having

g. Conditional

Present I + would be having you + would be having he + would be having we + would be having you + would be having they + would be having	Perfect I + would have been having you + would have been having he + would have been having we + would have been having you + would have been having they + would have been having
---	---

F. PARTICIPLE CLAUSES

Participle clauses adalah bentuk dari *adverbial clause* yang bisa kita pakai untuk mengatakan suatu informasi dengan cara yang lebih praktis. Kita bisa memakai *participle clauses* bila *participle* dan kata kerja dalam *main clause* mempunyai subjek yang sama.

Contoh:

Waiting for John, I made some tea.

Waiting for John, the kettle boiled.

(Ini akan menunjukkan bahwa ketel sedang menunggu John)

a. Pembentukan *Participle Clauses*

Participle clauses dapat dibentuk bersama dengan *present participle* (verb-ing) atau *past participle* (V_3). *Participle clauses* yang dibentuk dengan *past participles* mempunyai arti pasif.

Contoh:

Shouting loudly, Peter walked home. [Peter was shouting]

Shouted at loudly, Peter walked home. [Someone was shouting at Peter]

Jika kita ingin menekankan bahwa salah suatu tindakan terjadi sebelum tindakan lain maka kita bisa menggunakan *perfect participle* (*having + past participle*).

Contoh:

Having won the match, Susan jumped for joy.

Having been told the bad news, Susan sat down and cried.

b. Arti dan Penggunaan *Participle Clauses*

Participle clauses memberikan informasi tentang kondisi, alasan, hasil, atau waktu.

Contoh:

1. Kondisi (menggunakan *if-condition*):

Looked after carefully, this coat will keep you warm through many winters.

Bandingkan: If you look after it carefully, this coat will keep you warm through many winters.

2. Alasan (menggunakan kata seperti "so" atau "therefore"):

Wanting to speak to him about the contract, I decided to arrange a meeting.

Bandingkan: I wanted to speak to him about the contract so I decided to arrange a meeting.

3. *Hasil (menggunakan kata seperti "because" atau "as a result"):*

I had no time to read my book, having spent so long doing my homework.

Bandingkan: I had no time to read my book because I had spent so long doing my homework.

4. *Waktu (menggunakan kata seperti "when", "while" atau "as soon as"):*

Sitting at the cafe with my friends, I suddenly realised that I had left the oven on at home.

Compare: While I was sitting at the cafe with my friends, I suddenly realised that I had left the oven on at home.

EXERCISE:

Rewrite the sentences replacing the italic part with a past participle!

1. I have a cat that is called Tari.
I have a cat called Tari.
2. The dinner was more expensive than they had expected
....
3. He was accused of murder and arrested.
....
4. She was shocked by the bad news and burst into tears.
....
5. The event is organised by our team and will surely be a great success.
....
6. The film is based on real events and tells the story of a reporter.
....
7. She was born in Hollywood and knows all the famous movie stars.
....

8. The car was taken to the garage. It was repaired within an hour.
....
9. She was admired by everyone and began to grow arrogant.
....
10. He was dumped by his girlfriend and felt really lousy.
....

KUNCI JAWABAN:

1. I have a cat called Tari.
2. The dinner was more expensive than expected.
3. Accused of murder, he was arrested.
4. Shocked by the bad news, she burst into tears.
5. Organised by our team, the event will surely be a great success.
6. Based on real events, the film tells the story of a reporter.
7. Born in Hollywood, she knows all the famous movie stars.
8. Taken to the garage, the car was repaired within an hour.
9. Admired by everyone, she began to grow arrogant.
10. Dumped by his girlfriend, he felt really lousy.

9

AUXILIARY VERB

A. PENGERTIAN AUXILIARY VERB

Auxiliary verb adalah kata kerja bantu yang muncul sebelum kata kerja utama (*main verb*) di dalam suatu kalimat untuk memodifikasi makna dari kata kerja utama tersebut. Tidak seperti kata kerja utama, auxiliary verb tidak memiliki arti sendiri.

Kata kerja bantu ini terdiri dari kata kerja bantu primer (*primary auxiliary verb*): *be, do, have* dan kata kerja bantu modal (*modal auxiliary verb*): *can, could, may, might, will, would, shall, should, must, ought to*.

B. KOMBINASI KATA KERJA BANTU

Sebuah kata kerja utama dapat dilengkapi sampai tiga kata kerja bantu yang terdiri dari satu kata kerja bantu modal dan satu atau dua kata kerja bantu primer.

Contoh kombinasi antar *auxiliary verb*:

1. The children should have slept. (modal: should, primer: have; present perfect tense)
2. The book has been read. (primer: has, been; present perfect tense pasif)
3. I have been driving for an hour. (primer: have, been; present perfect continuous tense)
4. I will have been sleeping. (modal: will, primer: have, been; future perfect continuous tense)

Kata kerja bantu primer terdiri dari *be, do, dan have*. Ketiga kata kerja ini dapat pula berfungsi sebagai kata kerja utama. Penggunaan dan contoh kalimat kata kerja bantu primer *be, do, dan have* dapat dilihat pada tabel sebagai berikut:

Kata Kerja Bantu	Penggunaan	Contoh Kalimat Kata Kerja Bantu
<p style="text-align: center;">Be (<i>am, is, are, was, were, be, being, been</i>)</p>	<p>Kata kerja bantu "be" digunakan untuk membentuk <i>present</i> atau <i>past continuous tense</i>. Kemudian dapat pula ditambahkan modal <u>will</u> untuk membentuk <i>future continuous</i>.</p>	<p>She is brushing the bathroom floor. (Dia sedang menyikat lantai kamar mandi = <i>present continuous</i>.)</p>
	<p>Kata kerja bantu "be" digunakan untuk membentuk <i>present</i> atau <i>past continuous tense</i>. Kemudian dapat pula ditambahkan modal <u>will</u> untuk membentuk <i>future continuous</i>.</p>	<p>They were roasting corns at this time last night. (Mereka sedang membakar jagung pada jam ini tadi malam = <i>past continuous</i>.)</p>
	<p>Kata kerja bantu "be" digunakan untuk membentuk <i>present</i> atau <i>past continuous tense</i>. Kemudian dapat pula ditambahkan modal <u>will</u> untuk membentuk <i>future continuous</i>.</p>	<p>The party <u>will</u> be starting at this time tomorrow. (Pesta akan dimulai pada jam ini besok = <i>future continuous</i>.)</p>
	<p>"Be" bersama kata kerja bantu <u>have</u> membentuk <i>present</i> atau <i>past perfect continuous tense</i>. Dapat pula ditambahkan modal <u>will</u> untuk membentuk <i>future perfect continuous</i>.</p>	<p>He <u>has</u> been driving for an hour. (Dia telah menyetir selama satu jam = <i>present perfect continuous</i>.)</p>
	<p>"Be" untuk membentuk kalimat pasif.</p>	<p>You <u>will</u> <u>have</u> been sleeping long. (Kamu akan telah tidur lama = <i>future perfect continuous</i>.)</p>
	<p>"Be" untuk membentuk kalimat pasif.</p>	<p>Your cake is being eaten by him. (Kuemu sedang dimakannya.)</p> <p>The room was cleaned by my assistant last night. (Ruangannya itu dibersihkan oleh asisten saya tadi malam.)</p>

Do (do, does, did)	Katakerjabantu " do " untuk memberikan penekanan pada kalimat <i>indicative</i> (normal) maupun <i>imperative</i> , dan <i>adverb of frequency</i> .	I do finish my homework. (Saya sungguh menyelesaikan PR saya.)
		Do open the door. (Buka pintu.)
		Tina seldom does wash her shoes. (Tina jarang mencuci sepatunya.)
	"Do" untuk mengajukan pertanyaan (<i>question tag</i> , <i>yes-no</i> , dan <i>wh-question</i>). Dapat pula digunakan untuk mengajukan pertanyaan klarifikasi (<i>clarifying question</i>) yang berhubungan dengan pernyataan negatif sebelumnya.	You love your job, don't you? (Kamu suka pekerjaanmu, kan?)
		Did you see him yesterday? (Apakah kamu melihatnya kemarin?)
		What does she want from you? (Apa yang dia inginkan darimu?)
	"Diana didn't have much money." "Then who did lend it me?" ("Diana tidak punya banyak uang." "Lalu siapa yang meminjamkannya padaku?")	

Do (do, does, did)	<p>"Do" digunakan bersama <i>not</i> untuk membentuk kalimat negatif</p>	<p>I do not like coffee. (Saya tidak suka kopi.)</p>
		<p>She didn't come last night. (Dia tidak datang semalam.)</p>
	<p>"Do" untuk membuat jawaban pendek.</p>	<p>Yes, I do.</p>
		<p>Yes, she does.</p>
<p>"Do" dipadukan dengan <i>conjunction so</i> dan <i>neither</i> untuk mengekspresikan persamaan (<i>similarity</i>) dan perbedaan (<i>differences</i>).</p>	<p>My brother loves swimming and <u>so do</u> I. (Saudara saya suka berenang dan saya juga.)</p>	
	<p>I don't want to spend my money unwisely; <u>neither</u> does my friend. (Saya tidak ingin menghabiskan uang dengan tidak bijaksana; teman saya juga.)</p>	
Have (have, has, had)	<p>Kata kerja bantu "have" untuk membentuk <i>perfect tenses</i>.</p>	<p>Dira has studied in French since April. (Dira telah belajar di Prancis sejak April = <i>present perfect</i>.)</p>
		<p>I had already had breakfast by the time he picked me up. (Saya sudah sarapan sewaktu dia menjemput saya = <i>past perfect</i>.)</p>
	<p>"Have" dikombinasikan dengan <i>modal</i> untuk mengekspresikan kemungkinan (<i>possibility</i>) di masa lalu.</p>	<p>He <u>might</u> have realized his mistakes. (Dia mungkin telah menyadari kesalahannya.)</p>
<p>My father <u>may</u> have read this book. (Ayah saya mungkin telah membaca buku ini.)</p>		

EXERCISE:

I. Choose the correct answer for the questions below!

1. She told me that she ... kidding.
A. is
B. was
C. am
2. What ... she doing last night?
A. was
B. is
C. were
3. What ... they doing in your house?
A. was
B. is
C. are
4. I ... a murder anymore.
A. am not
B. am
C. was
5. Can you wait for her for a minute? She ... checked by the officer.
A. is being
B. were being
C. was being
6. They ... sleeping when I opened the door.
A. are
B. were
C. was
7. Where ... my car? Do you see it?
A. is
B. was
C. does

8. When I spoke, I saw that my father ... sleeping.
A. is
B. am
C. was
9. ... you feeling good?
a. Is
b. Was
c. Are
10. ... those people happy now?
A. were
B. was
C. are

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. B | 6. B |
| 2. A | 7. A |
| 3. C | 8. C |
| 4. A | 9. C |
| 5. A | 10. C |

II. Choose the correct answer for the questions below!

1. Your glass is empty. ... I get you some more fresh water?
A. shall
B. will
C. can
D. should
E. shall have
2. We ... like to visit that new store some day.
A. shall
B. will
C. can
D. would
E. shall have

3. You are sick, but you don't come hospital to see a doctor.
You ... visit him soon.
- A. would
 - B. could
 - C. should
 - D. will
 - E. can
4. "I really don't know why Tony didn't come to the meeting."
"There ... something wrong with him."
- A. might be
 - B. could be
 - C. will be
 - D. should have been
 - E. must have been
5. "Rini is old enough. She ... know better than the others about it."
- A. will
 - B. could
 - C. must
 - D. may be
 - E. can
6. My motorcycle runs out of oil. I ... buy it because I will ride it to the meeting.
- A. should
 - B. may
 - C. can
 - D. must
 - E. might
7. Yanto looks so pale and weak. He must be sick.
The underlined sentence means
- A. He has to be sick.
 - B. Maybe he is sick.
 - C. It's possible that he is sick.
 - D. He is rather sick.
 - E. I conclude that he is sick.

8. "I could have somebody else to carry the heavy bags."
It means
- A. I carried the heavy bags.
 - B. Somebody else carried the heavy bags for me.
 - C. I asked someone carry the heavy bags.
 - D. I would carry the heavy bags myself.
 - E. I didn't want to carry the heavy bags.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. A | 5. C |
| 2. D | 6. D |
| 3. C | 7. E |
| 4. E | 8. B |

10

PRONOUNS

A. PENGERTIAN *PRONOUNS*

Pronouns adalah kata ganti yang digunakan untuk menggantikan orang, hewan, dan benda.

B. BENTUK DAN CONTOH KATA GANTI

a. Kata Ganti Orang, Kata Ganti Kepunyaan, Kata Ganti Refleksif (*Personal, Possesive, dan Reflexive Pronouns*)

Untuk membedakan ketiganya perhatikan tabel di bawah ini:

Kata Ganti Orang		Kata Ganti Kepunyaan		Kata Ganti Refleksif
Subjek	Objek	Kata Sifat Kepunyaan	Kata Ganti Kepunyaan	
I	Me	My ...	Mine	Myself
You	You	Your ...	Yours	Yourself
They	Them	Their ...	Theirs	Themselves
We	Us	Our ...	Ours	Ourselves
He	Him	His ...	His	Himself
She	Her	Her ...	Hers	Herself
It	It	Its ...	Its	Itself

Contoh:

I go with **him** to **her** house. (Saya pergi dengan dia ke rumahnya)

He visits **our** home. (Dia mengunjungi rumah kita)

Its tail is very long. (Ekornya sangat panjang)

b. Kata Ganti Penunjuk (*Demonstrative Pronouns*)

1. *This = ini*

Digunakan untuk benda dekat tunggal.

Contoh:

- **This** is my pen. (Ini pulpen saya.)
- What is **this**? (Apa ini?)

2. *These = ini*

Digunakan untuk benda dekat jamak.

Contoh:

- **These** are our cars. (Ini adalah mobil-mobil kita)
- What are **these**? (Apa ini?)

3. *That = itu*

Digunakan untuk benda jauh tunggal.

Contoh:

- **That** is your pen. (Artinya: Itu pulpen kamu.)
- What is **that**? (Artinya: Apa itu?)

4. *Those = itu*

Digunakan untuk benda jauh jamak.

Contoh:

- **Those** are our car. (Artinya: Itu adalah mobil-mobil kita.)
- What are **those**? (Artinya: Apa itu?)

c. Kata Ganti Benda Tak Tentu (*Indefinite Pronouns*)

1. *Each = setiap, tiap-tiap, masing-masing*

Contoh:

I have two watches, **each** costs Rp10.000.000,.
(Saya punya dua jam tangan, masing-masing seharga Rp10.000.000.)

2. *One atau ones = yang lainnya, yang satu.*

Contoh:

This car is new, but that **one** is old.
(Mobil ini baru, tapi yang satu itu sudah tua/lama.)

3. *Someone; somebody; somewhere; anyone; anybody; anything; something; anywhere*

Dalam hal ini **some** digunakan dalam kalimat positif dan **any** digunakan dalam kalimat negatif.

Contoh:

- I left it **somewhere**.
- I didn't go **anywhere**.

4. *Each other dan one another*

Each other = satu sama lain, untuk 2 orang.

One another = satu sama lain, untuk lebih dari 2 orang.

Contoh:

- They help **each other**.
- Love one **another**.

5. *Another, others, the others, dan the others*

Another = yang lain, untuk benda tunggal tak tentu.

Others = yang lain, untuk benda jamak tak tentu.

The other = yang lain, untuk benda tunggal tertentu.

The others = yang lain, untuk benda jamak tertentu.

Contoh:

- I don't like this pen. I want **another**.
- These cars are very expensive. I want **others**.

d. Kata Ganti Penanya (*Interogative Pronouns*)

1. *Who* = siapa (menanyakan orang sebagai subjek)

Contoh:

Who teaches you English?

2. *Whom* = siapa (menanyakan orang sebagai objek)

Contoh:

Whom does she love?

3. *Whose* = kepunyaan siapa

Contoh:

Whose car is this?

4. *What* = apa (menanyakan nama, benda, pekerjaan, atau jabatan)

Contoh:

What is your name?

5. *Which* = yang mana

Contoh:

Which do you prefer, the tea or the coffee?

6. *Where* = di mana/ke mana

Contoh:

Where do you go?

7. *When* = kapan

Contoh:

When can you visit?

8. *Why* = mengapa/kenapa

Contoh:

Why do you love me?

9. *How* = bagaimana, dengan apa

Contoh:

How does he teach you every day?

e. Kata Ganti Penghubung (*Relative Pronouns*)

Kata ganti penghubung adalah kata ganti yang digunakan untuk memperkenalkan *adjective clause* yang menerangkan kata benda. Bentuk kata ganti penghubung adalah: ***who, which, whom, whose, dan that.***

Contoh penggunaan kata ganti penghubung dapat dilihat pada tabel di bawah ini.

Kata Ganti Penghubung	Fungsi	Digunakan untuk	Arti	Contoh Kalimat
Who	sebagai subjek	menerangkan <i>noun</i> – orang	yang	The man who speaks English every day is my grand father. (Pria yang berbicara bahasa Inggris setiap hari itu adalah kakek saya.)

The man is my grandfather.

He speaks English every day.

→ The man **who** speaks English every day is my grand father.

Who disebut sebagai kata ganti subjek/*subject pronoun*, (seperti penggunaan: *I, he, she, etc*). Dan pada contoh kalimat di atas:

Who merupakan subjek dari kata kerja = *speaks* serta memperkenalkan *adjective Clause* yang menerangkan subjek = *the man*.

Kata Ganti Penghubung	Fungsi	Digunakan untuk	Arti	Contoh Kalimat
Whom	sebagai objek	menerangkan <i>noun</i> - orang	yang	<i>The woman whom you kissed last night is my sister.</i> (Perempuan yang kamu cium tadi malam adalah adik saya.)

The woman is my sister.

You kissed **her** last night.

→ The woman **whom** you kissed last night is my sister.

Whom disebut sebagai kata ganti objek/*object pronoun* (seperti penggunaan: *me, his, her, etc*). Dan pada contoh kalimat di atas:

Whom merupakan objek dari kata kerja = *kissed* serta memperkenalkan *adjective clause* yang menerangkan subjek = *the woman*.

Kata Ganti Penghubung	Fungsi	Digunakan untuk	Arti	Contoh Kalimat
Which	subjek/ objek	menerangkan <i>noun</i> - benda/ hewan	yang	<i>The movie which we saw last night was very good.</i> (Film yang kita tonton tadi malam sangat bagus.)
<p>The movie was very good. We saw it last night. → The movie which we saw last night was very good.</p> <p>(<i>which</i> digunakan karena mewakili <i>the movie = it</i> = kata benda)</p> <p>Pada contoh kalimat di atas: Which merupakan objek dari kata kerja = <i>saw</i> serta memperkenalkan <i>adjective clause</i> yang menerangkan subjek = <i>the movie</i>.</p>				
Kata Ganti Penghubung	Fungsi	Digunakan untuk	Arti	Contoh Kalimat
Whose	kepunyaan	menerangkan <i>noun</i> - orang	yang - nya	<i>I know the man whose bicycle was stolen.</i> (Saya mengenal pria yang sepedanya dicuri.)

I know the man.

His bicycle was stolen.

→ I know the man **whose** bicycle was stolen.

Whose digunakan untuk menunjukkan kepunyaan. *Whose* juga memiliki arti yang sama seperti layaknya penggunaan *my, our, their, etc.*

His bicycle = whose bicycle

Kata Ganti Penghubung	Fungsi	Digunakan untuk	Arti	Contoh Kalimat
That	subjek/ objek	menerangkan <i>noun</i> – orang, benda, dan hewan	yang	<i>The car that I bought 3 years ago has been stolen by my own brother.</i>
				<i>I thanked the woman that helped me.</i>

The car has been stolen by my own brother.

I bought **it** 3 years ago.

→ The car **that** I bought 3 years ago has been stolen by my own brother.

Pada contoh kalimat di atas:

That merupakan objek dari kata kerja = *bought* serta memperkenalkan *adjective clause* yang menerangkan subjek = *the car*.

I thanked woman.

She helped me.

→ I thanked the woman **that** helped me.

Pada contoh kalimat di atas:

That merupakan subjek dari kata kerja = *helped* serta memperkenalkan *adjective clause* yang menerangkan subjek = *the woman*.

CATATAN:

Dalam percakapan sehari-hari:

Sebagai kata ganti subjek, **who** lebih umum digunakan daripada **that**.

Sebagai kata ganti subjek, **that** lebih umum digunakan daripada **which**.

Dalam percakapan yang sangat formal, kata depan (*preposition*) digunakan sebelum *adjective clause*.

Contoh:

She is the woman.

I told you **about her**.

→ She is the woman **about whom** I told you.

Biasanya dalam percakapan sehari-hari, kata depan digunakan setelah subjek dan kata kerja dari *adjective clause*.

Contoh:

The music was good.

We listened to it last night.

→ The music **which** we listened **to** last night was good.

→ The music **that** we listened **to** last night was good.

Jika kata depan berada di awal *adjective clause*, hanya **whom** atau **which** yang boleh digunakan. Kata depan tidak pernah langsung diikuti dengan **that** atau **who**.

e. Kata Ganti Orang yang Berfungsi Sebagai Subjek, Objek, dan Kepunyaan (*Subjective, Objective, dan Possessive Pronouns*)

Kata ganti orang dapat berfungsi sebagai subjek, objek, maupun yang menerangkan kepunyaan (*parameter case*).

Penjelasan peran dan beberapa contoh kalimat dengan kata ganti orang adalah sebagai berikut.

Peran	Detail	Contoh Kalimat Kata Ganti Orang
<p>Kata ganti orang sebagai subjek (<i>I, you, they, we, she, he, it</i>)</p>	<p>Berarti kata ganti ini berfungsi sebagai subjek</p>	<p>He is a politician. (Dia adalah politisi.)</p>
		<p>It is the most delicious cake that I have ever eaten. (Ini kue lezat yang saya pernah makan.)</p>
<p>Kata ganti orang sebagai objek (<i>me, you, us, them, her, him, it</i>)</p>	<p>Berarti kata ganti ini berfungsi sebagai: objek kata kerja, objek dari <i>compound verb</i>, objek preposisi, atau objek dari frase infinitif</p>	<p>Objek kata kerja: He lent me two interesting books. (Dia meminjamkan saya dua buah buku yang menarik.)</p>
		<p>Objek dari <i>compound verb</i>: None understands why the man really loves her. (Tidak satu pun mengerti kenapa pria itu mencintai dia.)</p>
		<p>Objek preposisi: If only he shared his problem with me. (Seandainya saja dia membagi masalahnya kepada saya.)</p>
		<p>Objek dari frase infinitif: Everybody is enthusiastic to help her. (Setiap orang antusias membantunya.)</p>

Kata ganti orang kepunyaan <i>(mine, yours, ours, theirs, hers, his, its)</i>	Berarti kata ganti ini berfungsi untuk menunjukkan siapa yang memiliki sesuatu dengan menempati posisi sebagai subjek kalimat atau pelengkap subjek.	Subjek kalimat: Yours was sent yesterday. (Milikmu dikirim kemarin), Mine is the biggest one. (Punyaku yang terbesar.)
		Pelengkap subjek: The red and black car is his . (Mobil merah-hitam itu milik dia.), That is ours . (Itu punya kita.)

C. POSISI KATA GANTI ORANG SEBAGAI ORANG PERTAMA, KEDUA, DAN KETIGA

Kata ganti orang dapat menempati posisi sebagai orang pertama, kedua, atau ketiga (*parameter person*).

Penjelasan dan beberapa contoh kalimat kata ganti orang sebagai orang pertama, kedua, dan ketiga adalah sebagai berikut:

Fungsi	Keterangan	Contoh Kalimat Kata Ganti Orang
Sebagai orang pertama (<i>first person</i>): <i>I, me, we, us</i>	Ketika sedang berbicara sebagai orang pertama (diri sendiri), kita dapat menggunakan kata ganti daripada menggunakan namanya.	I would be very happy if you lent me a little money. (Saya akan sangat senang jika kamu meminjamkan saya sedikit uang.)
		We're looking for a philanthropist to support us . (Kami sedang mencari seorang dermawan untuk mendukung kami.)

Sebagai orang kedua (<i>2nd person</i>): you	Ketika sedang berbicara dengan orang lain (bertindak sebagai orang kedua), kita dapat menggunakan kata ganti untuk orang kedua daripada menyebut namanya.	You shouldn't put yours anywhere. (Kamu tidak seharusnya meletakkan milikmu di mana-mana.)
		I will help you to get yours . (Saya akan membantumu mendapatkan milikmu.)
Sebagai orang ketiga (<i>3rd person</i>): <i>she, he, it, her, him, it, they, them</i>	Ketika sedang membicarakan orang lain (orang lain bertindak sebagai orang ketiga), kita dapat menyebut namanya pada permulaan pembicaraan, selanjutnya diganti dengan kata ganti orang ketiga.	Ferdi is a generous man. He always sets aside his for the poor and visits the orphanage. Everybody likes him . (Ferdi adalah orang yang pemurah. Dia selalu menyisihkan miliknya untuk orang miskin dan mengunjungi panti asuhan. Semua orang menyukainya.)

D. KATA GANTI ORANG & APPOSITIVE

Kata ganti orang dapat digunakan pada *appositive*. Jika *appositive* menerangkan subjek, kata ganti yang digunakan adalah *subjective personal pronouns* (*I, you, they, we, she, he, it*). Sebaliknya jika *appositive* menerangkan objek, maka kata ganti yang digunakan adalah *objective personal pronouns* (*me, you, us, them, her, him, it*).

Contoh:

- The team, Chris and I, got the appreciation for our recent research about nuclear.
(The team = subjek; Chris and I = *appositive*; I = *subjective pp*)
- Diana invited her best friends, Vina and me, to her wedding party.
(her best friends = objek; Vina and me = *appositive*; me = *objective pp*)

E. KATA GANTI TIMBAL-BALIK (*RECIPROCAL PRONOUN*)

Kata ganti timbal-balik adalah kata ganti yang digunakan pada kondisi ketika dua atau lebih subjek melakukan aksi yang sama terhadap satu sama lain. Kata ganti ini terdiri dari: *each other* untuk dua orang/benda, dan *one another* untuk lebih dari dua orang/benda dalam satu sistem.

Beberapa contoh kalimat dengan kata ganti timbal-balik baik menggunakan *each other* maupun *one another* dapat dilihat pada tabel sebagai berikut:

Kata Ganti	Contoh Kalimat
each other	They congratulated each other . (Mereka menyelamati satu sama lain.)
	Atiek and I sent a gift to each other . (Atiek dan saya saling mengirimkan hadiah.)
	Lien and Chammad love each other . (Lien dan Chammad mencintai satu sama lain.)
	Both groups maintained opinions to each other . (Kedua kelompok mempertahankan pendapat masing-masing.)
one another	The debate groups gave feedbacks to one another . (Kelompok-kelompok debat memberikan umpan balik ke satu sama lain.)
	Aci, Tika, and Icha shared one another snacks. (Aci, Tika, dan Icha membagi makanan masing-masing.)
	Five mountaineers helped one another during the storm. (Lima pendaki gunung menolong satu sama lain selama badai itu.)
	The trainees are greeting each other . (Para peserta saling menyapa satu sama lain.)

Reciprocal pronoun juga memiliki bentuk *possessive*. Kata yang digunakan yaitu: *each other's* dan *one another's*.

Contoh:

- The junkies used *each other's* syringes.
- The students rated *one another's* creation.

F. KATA GANTI OBJEK SETELAH PREPOSISI

Ingat bahwa kata ganti orang yang digunakan sebagai preposisi objek adalah kata ganti objek.

	Preposisi	Kata Ganti Objek
I would be glad to make a message	for	her

Berikut ini adalah preposisi (kata depan) yang lazim digunakan bersama dengan preposisi objek:

among of
between to
for with
from

Hindari penggunaan kata ganti subjek, kecuali kata ganti objek setelah preposisi

Contoh:

Salah : Among we men, it was he who always acted as the interpreter.

Benar : Among us men, it was he who always acted as the interpreter.

Salah : The cake is from Jan, and the flower are from Larry and we.

Benar : The cake is from Jan, and the flower are from Larry and us.

Salah : The experiment proved to my lab partner and I that prejudices about the results of an investigation are often unfounded.

Benar : The experiment proved to my lab partner and me that prejudices about the results of an investigation are often unfounded.

G. KATA GANTI KEPUNYAAN (*POSSESSIVE PRONOUN*) SEBELUM BENTUK -ING

Kata ganti kepunyaan yang digunakan sebelum bentuk -ing:

my our
your your
her their
his its

S	VPh	Kata Ganti Kepunyaan	Bentuk -ing	
We	can count on	her	helping	us
He	regretted	Their	misunderstanding	him

Hindari penggunaan kata ganti subjek atau objek di antara kata kerja dan bentuk *-ing*.

Contoh:

Salah : The doctor insisted on she taking a leave of absence.

Benar : The doctor insisted on her taking a leave of absence.

Salah : He is surprised by you having to pay for the accident.

Benar : He is surprised by your having to pay for the accident.

Salah : My father approves of me studying in the United States.

Benar : My father approves of my studying in the United States.

EXERCISE I:

Use the correct personal pronouns. Watch the words in brackets!

Example:

often reads books. (Lisa)

Answer:

She often reads books.

1. ... is dreaming. (George)
2. ... is green. (the blackboard)
3. ... are on the wall. (the posters)
4. ... is running. (the dog)
5. ... are watching TV. (my mother and I)
6. ... are in the garden. (the flowers)
7. ... is riding his bike. (Tom)
8. ... is from Bristol. (Victoria)
9. ... has got a brother. (Diana)
10. Have ... got a computer, Mandy?

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|---------|---------|
| 1. He | 6. They |
| 2. It | 7. He |
| 3. They | 8. She |
| 4. It | 9. She |
| 5. We | 10. You |

EXERCISE II: PERSONAL PRONOUN

- ... just left ten minutes ago.
A. him
B. he
C. his
- My brother told me not to touch ... computer when he wasn't at home.
A. he
B. his
C. him
- Reny and ... are going to visit a new born baby this weekend.
A. me
B. I
C. Mine
- ... is the cheapest watch ever sold at the store.
A. yours
B. you
C. your
- This pink laptop case is ...
A. hers
B. she
C. her
- You shouldn't be angry with ... since you're the one who was curious.
A. them
B. their
C. they

7. The interviewer asked ... why I am interested in the position.
 - A. I
 - B. me
 - C. mine

8. I'm interested to buy your bike. Could you please show ... to me?
 - A. it
 - B. its

9. They have their own wood gas camp stove. Why are they using ...?
 - A. ours
 - B. us
 - C. we

10. The manager gave ... no choice.
 - A. him
 - B. his
 - C. he

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. B | 6. A |
| 2. B | 7. B |
| 3. B | 8. A |
| 4. A | 9. A |
| 5. A | 10. A |

EXERCISE I:

Choose the correct reflexive pronouns from the given words below!

myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves

1. Robert made this T-shirt
2. Lisa did the homework
3. We helped ... to some cola at the party.
4. Emma, did you take the photo by ...?
5. I wrote this poem
6. He cut ... with the knife while he was doing the dishes.
7. The lion can defend

8. My mother often talks to
9. Tim and Gerry, if you want more milk, help
10. Alice and Doris collected the stickers

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|-------------|----------------|
| 1. himself | 6. himself |
| 2. herself | 7. itself |
| 3. ourself | 8. herself |
| 4. yourself | 9. yourselves |
| 5. myself | 10. themselves |

EXERCISE IV: RELATIVE PRONOUN

Put in the relative *who, which, whose, or that* where necessary. Type an X if the relative pronoun can be left out!

Example:

Peter is the boy rides the blue bike.

Answer:

Peter is the boy ***who*** rides the blue bike.

1. This is the boy ... had an accident.
2. Yesterday I saw a car ... was really old.
3. Mandy is the girl ... I met on Friday.
4. I haven't seen Frank, ... brother is five, for a long time now.
5. The robber stole the car ... the lady parked in front of the supermarket.
6. This is the man ... house is on fire.
7. Can I talk to the girl ... is sitting on the bench?
8. The book ... you gave me is great.
9. She likes hamburgers ... are hot.
10. Bill Clinton, ... was President of the USA, has only one daughter.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 1. who | 6. whose |
| 2. which | 7. who |
| 3. X | 8. X |
| 4. whose | 9. which |
| 5. X | 10. who |

11

NOUNS

A. PENGERTIAN, FUNGSI, DAN MACAM NOUN

Noun adalah suatu kata yang digunakan untuk menamai orang, benda, hewan, tempat, dan konsep abstrak. Kata benda dalam bahasa Inggris ini merupakan satu dari delapan *part of speech*.

Selain berbentuk sederhana (hanya terdiri dari satu kata) kata benda juga bisa berbentuk frasa yang disebut *noun phrase* (*my bag, the thick book*). Frasa kata benda merupakan frasa kombinasi antara kata benda (sebagai inti) dengan *modifier*. Kata benda juga mungkin berkolaborasi dengan *part of speech* lain untuk membentuk kata dengan makna baru yang disebut *compound noun* (*waterfall, roadshow*).

Di dalam suatu kalimat, kata benda dapat berfungsi sebagai:

- subjek kalimat, contoh: Tommy has run the company since 1993.
- pelengkap subjek/objek, contoh: She is a dentist.
- objek lagsung/tidak langsung, contoh: You hit the nail on the head.
- objek preposisi, contoh: She was walking on the street when she was attacked.

Macam beserta contoh noun antara lain sebagai berikut:

a. Kata benda dapat dihitung dan tidak dapat dihitung (*countable dan uncountable noun*)

Countable merupakan kata benda yang dapat dihitung (tomato = tomatoes, man = men). Sebaliknya, *uncountable* merupakan kata benda yang tidak dapat dihitung (cheese, sugar).

b. Kata benda umum dan kata benda spesifik (*proper dan common noun*)

Proper noun merupakan penggolongan kata benda secara spesifik di mana huruf awalnya ditulis dengan huruf kapital (Jakarta, Gramedia). Sedangkan *common noun* adalah penggolongan kata benda secara umum (*city, shop*).

- c. **Kata benda abstrak dan konkret (*abstract* dan *concrete noun*)**
Abstract noun merupakan kata benda yang tidak dapat diamati dengan panca indra (love, romance). Kebalikannya, *concrete noun* dapat diamati dengan panca indra (book, floor).
- d. **Kata benda kolektif (*collective noun*)**
 Digunakan untuk menyatakan suatu nama kelompok atau kumpulan (class, deer).

B. PENGGANTI KATA BENDA (*NOUN SUBSTITUTE*)

Noun substitute adalah suatu konstruksi yang berfungsi seperti kata benda.

Beberapa contoh kalimatnya adalah sebagai berikut:

- a. ***Noun Clause: dependent clause*** yang berfungsi sebagai kata benda
Contoh: The kitten followed wherever the woman went.
- b. ***Gerund***: bare infinitive + ing
Contoh: I hate waiting.
- c. ***Infinitive***: to + bare infinitive
Contoh: His dream is to win the competition.

C. KATA BENDA DAPAT DIHITUNG (*COUNTABLE NOUN*)

Countable Noun adalah kata benda yang dapat dihitung. Kata benda ini terbagi menjadi dua macam, yaitu: kata benda dapat dihitung tunggal (*singular countable*) dan kata benda dapat dihitung jamak (*plural countable*). Pada bentuk jamak, perubahan bentuk kata bendanya mengikuti aturan pola beraturan (*regular*) atau pola tidak beraturan (*irregular*).

a. Kata Benda Dapat Dihitung Beraturan (*Regular Countable Noun*)

Pola aturan *regular* perubahan kata benda dapat dihitung dari tunggal ke jamak adalah sebagai berikut:

Kondisi	Aturan <i>Regular</i>	Contoh <i>Countable Noun</i>	
		Tunggal	Jamak
kata benda yang berakhiran -o , dan huruf sebelumnya vokal	ditambahkan akhiran -es	tomato	tomatoes
		potato	potatoes

kata benda yang berakhiran: -s, -x, -ch, -sh, -ss	ditambahkan akhiran -es	gas	gases
		box	boxes
		punch	punches
		dash	dashes
		loss	losses
kata benda yang berakhiran -y dan huruf sebelumnya konsonan	Akhiran -y dihilangkan lalu ditambahkan akhiran -ies	country	countries
kata benda dengan satu sukukata yang berakhiran -f atau -fe	akhiran -f atau -fe dihilangkan lalu ditambahkan akhiran -ves	wife	wives
kata benda lainnya	ditambahkan akhiran -s	book	books

b. Beberapa Contoh Kata Benda Dapat Dihitung Tidak Beraturan (*Irregular Countable Noun*)

Berikut beberapa contoh bentuk tunggal dan jamak dari *irregular countable noun*:

Contoh <i>Irregular Countable Noun</i>			
Tunggal	Jamak	Tunggal	Jamak
alga	algae	man	men
alumnus	alumni	mouse	mice
appendix	appendices	medium	media
basis	bases	ox	oxen
child	children	person	people
crisis	crises	phenomenon	phenomena
criterion	criteria	police	police

datum	data	radius	radii
deer	deer	sheep	sheep
fish	fish	tooth	teeth
foot	feet	vita	vitae
goose	geese	woman	women

c. Determiner pada Countable Noun

Contoh determiner pada kata benda dapat dihitung tunggal dan jamak adalah sebagai berikut:

Determiner	Tunggal	Jamak
Articles	a/an, the	The
Quantifier		many, few, a few, several, a couple of, a large/great number, some, any, a lot of/lots of
	none	
Demonstratives	this, that	these, those

d. Contoh Kalimat Kata Benda Dapat Dihitung Tunggal dan Jamak (Singular and Plural Countable Noun)

Dengan mengacu pada tabel determiner di atas, contoh kalimat dengan kata benda dapat dihitung tunggal dan jamak adalah sebagai berikut:

Contoh Kalimat Countable Noun		Keterangan
Tunggal	Jamak	
Can you lend me a magazine?	Can you lend me magazines ?	<i>Bentuk tunggal countable noun</i> harus menggunakan indefinite article (a/an), sedangkan <i>bentuk jamaknya</i> tidak.
She wrote the book when she was twenty.	She wrote the books when she was twenty.	Baik <i>tunggal</i> , maupun <i>jamak</i> , dapat menggunakan <i>definite article</i> (the).

There was a visitor in the museum.	There were many visitors in the museum.	Hanya <i>bentuk jamak countable noun</i> yang menggunakan takaran.
That apple is from Malang.	Those apples are from Malang.	<i>Bentuk tunggal countable noun</i> menggunakan demonstratives " this " atau " that " sedangkan <i>bentuk jamak countable noun</i> menggunakan " these " atau " those " diikuti dengan bentuk <i>jamak</i> kata bendanya.

D. KATA BENDA UMUM DAN KATA BENDA SPESIFIK (COMMON AND PROPER NOUN)

a. Kata Benda Umum (*Common Noun*)

Common noun adalah penggolongan kata benda untuk orang, tempat, benda dan hal secara umum. Kata benda ini tidak menggunakan huruf kapital di awal katanya, kecuali jika kata tersebut mengawali kalimat atau menjadi judul sebuah tulisan.

Contoh: house, sandals, apartment, children, town.

b. Kata Benda Spesifik (*Proper Noun*)

Proper noun adalah penggolongan kata benda untuk orang, tempat, dan benda secara spesifik. Kata benda ini antara lain digunakan untuk nama institusi, organisasi, hari, bulan, bangsa, agama, dan tempat. Kata benda spesifik selalu menggunakan huruf kapital di awal katanya.

Contoh: Sea World, Mohammad Hatta, Bandung, Gramedia, Dagadu.

c. Penggunaan *Definite Article (the)* pada Kata Benda Spesifik (*Proper Noun*)

Definite article (the) digunakan pada beberapa macam kata benda spesifik.

Berikut beberapa aturan penggunaannya:

Proper Noun	Contoh Penggunaan "the"
Sebelum nama-nama geografis seperti gunung, gurun, sungai, dsb	the Himalaya, the Gobi, the Yangtze
Sebelum nama-nama jamak berupa: keluarga, kelompok danau, pegunungan, dan kepulauan	the Hudsons, the Great Lakes, the Alpen Mountains, the One Thousand Islands
Sebelum nama peristiwa penting, jabatan, lembaga, fasilitas umum, dan surat kabar	the Round Table Conference, the Prime Minister, the Legislative Assembly, the Istiqlal Mosque, the Jakarta Post
Sebelum kata benda yang diikuti preposition yang diawali dengan "of"	the City of Alameda, the State of Massachusetts

d. Contoh Kalimat *Proper vs Common Noun*

Proper dan common noun kerap digunakan secara bersamaan di dalam suatu kalimat. Walaupun mungkin menggunakan kata yang sama, tentu saja cara penggunaannya berbeda.

Beberapa contoh kalimat proper dan **common noun** adalah sebagai berikut:

1. Our first vice-president, Mohammad Hatta, craved the Bally **sandals**.
2. The University of Indonesia is a **university** located in Depok and Salemba.
3. I have a classmate who live in an **apartment** in Bandung.

E. KATA BENDA ABSTRAK DAN KATA BENDA KONKRET (ABSTRACT AND CONCRETE NOUN)

a. Kata Benda Abstrak (Abstract Noun)

Abstract noun adalah kata benda yang menyatakan ide, konsep, perasaan, keadaan, atau kualitas. Kata benda ini dapat dipahami dan dibayangkan namun tidak dapat disentuh atau dilihat dengan indra. Banyak kata benda abstrak yang terbentuk dari *derivation*.

Contoh:

happiness, freedom, imagination, realist, feminism, hate, love, sympathy, idea, romance, independence, sadness, honesty, kindness, honesty

b. Kata Benda Konkret (*Concrete Noun*)

Concrete noun adalah kata benda berupa material atau sesuatu yang berwujud nyata. Karena berwujud, kata benda konkret dapat disentuh dan diamati (dikenali oleh indra). Dengan demikian, kata benda konkret berkebalikan dengan kata benda abstrak.

Contoh:

sugar, bread, boy, ball, bag, car, cheese, building, wall, gold, water, flour, furniture, fish, stone, woman, table, bed, cat, book, desk, boat, etc.

c. Contoh Kalimat *Abstract* dan *Concrete Noun*

Berikut contoh kalimat **concrete** dan abstract noun:

1. Love is something that can not be bought with **money, gold or cars**.
(Cinta adalah sesuatu yang tidak bisa dibeli dengan uang, emas, atau mobil.)
2. After I visited the **hospital**, I got some ideas for my creative writing essay.
(Setelah saya mengunjungi rumah sakit, saya mendapat beberapa ide untuk tulisan kreatif saya.)

F. KATA BENDA KOLEKTIF (*COLLECTIVE NOUN*)

Collective noun adalah kata benda yang digunakan untuk menyatakan suatu nama kelompok atau kumpulan (terdiri dari lebih dari satu anggota). Kata benda ini dapat berupa orang, hewan, benda, atau abstrak.

Contoh kata benda kolektif dari berbagai kelompok:

Kelompok	Contoh <i>Collective Noun</i>
kelompok orang	audience, army, class, committee, couple, crew, gang, family, jury, navy, police, senate, society, staff, team
kelompok hewan	colony, deer, fish, flock, herd
kelompok benda, abstrak	bunch, bundle, clump, company, department, equipment, faculty, furniture, pair, stack

a. Subjek, Kata Kerja, Kata Ganti, dan *Determiner* pada Kata Benda Kolektif

Collective noun dapat berbentuk tunggal atau jamak tergantung dari konteks. Jika anggota kelompok atau kumpulan melakukan hal yang sama pada waktu yang sama (serentak), maka kata benda ini dianggap sebagai suatu kesatuan sehingga subjeknya (yang berupa kata benda kolektif), kata kerja, kata ganti (*pronoun*), serta *determiner* yang menyertainya berbentuk tunggal.

Namun bila anggota dari kelompok atau kumpulan bertindak secara individu (masing-masing), maka subjek berupa kata benda kolektif tersebut, beserta kata kerja, kata ganti, atau *determiner* yang menyertainya berbentuk jamak.

Contoh kalimat *Collective Noun*:

<i>Number</i>	Contoh Kalimat <i>Collective Noun</i>	Keterangan
Tunggal	<p>This class is reading seriously its book to prepare its exam.</p> <p>(Kelas ini sedang membaca buku dengan serius untuk mempersiapkan ujian.)</p>	<p>(<i>determiner</i> = this, verb = is reading, pronoun = its)</p> <p>Subjek "<i>class</i>" pada konteks kalimat ini berarti seluruh anggota kelas membaca buku yang sama dengan serius guna mempersiapkan ujian yang sama.</p>
Jamak	<p>These class are reading seriously their books to prepare their exam.</p> <p>(Anggota kelas ini sedang membaca buku mereka dengan serius untuk mempersiapkan ujian.)</p>	<p>(<i>determiner</i> = these, verb = are reading, pronoun = their)</p> <p>Subjek "<i>class</i>" pada konteks kalimat ini berarti anggota kelas membaca buku yang berbeda dengan serius guna mempersiapkan ujian yang berbeda pada waktu berbeda pula.</p>

EXERCISE 1:

Finish the sentences with the singular or plural form of the nouns!

1. The cat is sitting on my
A. bed
B. beds
2. There are five ... on my desk.
A. pencil
B. pencils
3. I have two
A. sister
B. sisters
4. They are riding their
A. bike
B. bikes
5. We have a
A. dog
B. dogs
6. How many ... do you have in your bag?
A. book
B. books
7. My mother has a new
A. computer
B. computers
8. There are three windows in the
A. room
B. rooms
9. Susan has four
A. poster
B. posters

10. There is one ... on the floor.
A. pencil
B. pencils

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. A | 6. B |
| 2. B | 7. A |
| 3. B | 8. A |
| 4. B | 9. B |
| 5. A | 10. A |

EXERCISE I:

Fill in the blanks with suitable abstract nouns. The adjectives, verbs or nouns given in the brackets should offer clues!

1. He is a man of (strong)
2. The people in this part of the country live in (poor).
3. ... to animals is a punishable offence. (cruel)
4. He is on a ... to Mecca. (pilgrim)
5. I have great ... to welcome you. (please).
6. ... is the best period of one's life. (child)
7. ... should always be avoided. (waste).
8. As a parent my children's ... is of utmost importance to me. (safe).
9. As the sun went below the horizon ... enveloped the planet. (dark).
10. There is no end to his ... (wicked)

KUNCI JAWABAN:

1. He is a man of **strength**.
2. The people in this part of the country live in **poverty**.
3. **Cruelty** to animals is a punishable offence.
4. He is on a **pilgrimage** to Mecca.
5. I have great **pleasure** to welcome you.
6. **Childhood** is the best period of your life.
7. **Wastage** should always be avoided.
8. As a parent my children's **safety** is of utmost importance to me.
9. As the sun went below the horizon **darkness** enveloped the planet.
10. There is no end to his **wickedness**.

G. FRASA KATA BENDA (*NOUN PHRASE*)

Frasa kata benda adalah frasa antara kata benda, kata ganti, atau *number* (yang berfungsi sebagai *head*) dan satu atau lebih *modifier*. Frasa kata benda ini digunakan ketika *single noun* tidak cukup spesifik untuk menunjuk suatu kata benda.

Contoh:

Anda ingin mengatakan pada teman Anda bahwa seorang wanita yang ada di kerumunan orang-orang adalah saudara Anda, maka anda dapat mengatakannya dengan kalimat:

The fair-skinned woman with a red T-shirt and black skirt is my sister.

a. *Basic Noun Phrase*

Komponen *basic noun phrase* terdiri atas:

1. *determiner*, yaitu: *pre (multiplier, fraction, distributive, intensifier, exclamative)*, *central (article, possessive, demonstrative)*, dan/atau *post determiner (number, quantifier)*.
2. *head*, yaitu: *noun* atau *numeral/number*.

Contoh:

- **my bag**
Keterangan: *my* = *possessive*,
bag = *head*
- **the next page**
Keterangan: *the* = *article*,
next = *number*,
page = *head*

b. *Complex Noun Phrase*

Komponen *complex noun phrase* terdiri atas:

1. *Pre-modifiers*, merupakan *modifiers* yang ditempatkan sebelum *head*, yaitu: *determiner, adjective (phrase), participle* dan kata benda lain.
2. *Head*, yaitu: kata benda, kata ganti (*pronoun*), atau *number*, dan/atau
3. *Post-modifiers*, merupakan *modifier* yang ditempatkan setelah *head*, yaitu: *prepositional phrase, participle, infinitive, relative clause* dan *complementation*.

Contoh:

- A love letter put on my bag
Keterangan: *a* = *determiner*,
love = kata benda lain,

letter = head,
 put = past participle,
 on my bag = prepositional phrase

- The rich in the world who cares with the poor.
 Keterangan: the = determiner,
 rich = adjective,
 in the world = prepositional phrase,
 who cares with the poor = relative clause

H. DETERMINER

Determiner adalah kata atau kelompok kata yang ditempatkan di depan kata benda untuk membatasi makna kata benda tersebut. Di *traditional grammar*, *determiner* sering disebut *limiting adjective*, walaupun berbeda maknanya dengan *adjective* biasa. Jika sama-sama berada di dalam frasa kata benda, *limiting adjective* akan berada di depan *adjective* biasa. *Determiner* terdiri atas *article*, *quantifier*, *possessive*, dan *demonstrative determiner*.

a. Determiner Umum dan Determiner Spesifik (*General and Specific Determiner*)

Berada di depan suatu kata benda, *determiner* menentukan apakah frasa kata benda yang dibentuknya bersifat umum atau spesifik. Frasa kata benda umum dapat dibentuk dari *determiner* umum, sedangkan frasa kata benda spesifik dibentuk dari *determiner* spesifik.

Penjelasan <i>Determiner</i>	Contoh Kalimat <i>Determiner</i>
<i>Determiner Umum (General Determiner)</i>	
<i>indefinite article</i> (a atau an): membicarakan suatu hal secara umum di mana pendengar/ pembaca tidak tahu pasti hal/ benda mana yang dimaksudkan	He is looking for a job in Bali. (Dia sedang mencari pekerjaan di Bali.)
<i>quantifier</i> (many, few, little, some, any): menyatakan jumlah	Please give me a little water . (Tolong beri saya sedikit air.)
<i>distributive</i> (all, every, both)	All your books are on the table. (Semua bukumu ada di atas meja.)

<i>difference word (other, another):</i> membicarakan tambahan orang, benda, atau hal	May I have another shoes ? (Bolehkah saya mendapatkan sepatu yang lain?)
Determiner Spesifik (Specific Determiner)	
<i>definite article (the):</i> membicarakan kata benda yang diyakini pembaca/pendengar paham benda/hal mana yang dimaksudkan	Did he enjoy the show ? (Apa dia menikmati pertunjukan tersebut?)
<i>demonstrative adjective (this, that, these, those):</i> menerangkan kata benda dalam hal jarak dan/ atau jumlah	Those apples are so red. (Apel-apel itu sangat merah.)
<i>possessive adjective (my, your, his, her, its, our, dan their):</i> menunjukkan kepemilikan	Your jacket is in the laundry basket. (Jaketmu ada di dalam keranjang cucian.)

b. Penggunaan General Determiner

General Determiner dapat dipadukan dengan *countable noun* atau *uncountable noun* baik dalam bentuk tunggal maupun jamak dengan rumus sebagai berikut:

Rumus	<i>General Determiner</i>	Contoh <i>Noun Phrase</i>
general determiner + kata benda dapat dihitung tunggal (singular countable noun)	a & an (<i>indefinite articles</i>)	a book, an apple
	another (<i>difference word</i>)	another man
	Any, no (<i>quantifier</i>)	any report, no journey
	each, every, neither (<i>distributive</i>)	each pair, every student, neither spoon (nor fork)

determiner + kata benda dapat dihitung jamak (plural countable noun)	all, both (<i>distributive</i>)	all books, several magazines
	some, any, no, many, few, several (<i>quantifier</i>)	some people, any new books, no jobs, many clothes, few activities
	other (<i>difference words</i>)	other tasks
	Enough, more, most	enough dollars, more tips, most batteries
determiner + kata benda tidak dapat dihitung (uncountable noun)	all (<i>distributive</i>)	all furniture
	some, any, no, little, less, much (<i>quantifier</i>)	some paper, any time, no money, little information, less sugar, much coffee
	more, most, enough	more advice, most cheese, enough money

c. Penempatan *Determiners: Pre, Central, and Post Determiner*

Kata benda bisa diikuti lebih dari satu determiner atau tidak sama sekali. Berdasarkan posisinya terhadap kata benda, *determiner* dibedakan menjadi tiga kelas, yakni: *predeterminer*, *central determiner*, dan *post determiner*. Kelas tersebut mengikuti urutan tertentu yang disebut penempatan *determiners*.

	Predeterminer		Central Determiner		Post Determiner		Noun
+/-	multiplier fraction distributive exclamative	+/-	article possessive demonstrative	+/-	number quantifier	+	

1. *Predeterminer*

Predeterminer adalah *determiner* yang ditempatkan mendahului *determiner* lainnya. *Determiner* ini umumnya menyatakan proporsi dari suatu kata benda yang mengikutinya.

Macam-macam *predeterminer*:

<i>Predeterminer</i>	Rumus (<i>predeterminer</i> +/- <i>determiner</i> lain + <i>noun</i>)	Contoh <i>Noun Phrase</i>
multipliers	multiplier + article/ possessive + plural countable noun/mass noun	double the books, three times the bottles, twice the money, four times my salary
fraction	fraction + article/ possessive + noun	one-third the width, two-thirds my salary, two-fifths the width
distributives	all/both + article/ possessive + plural countable noun/ uncountable noun	all the women, all the time, both her houses
	half + article/ possessive + noun	half the price, half that task, half these books, half the information, half my furniture
exclamative	what + article + noun	what a big surprise, what a beautiful view
	such + a / zero article + noun	such a stupid person

2. *Central Determiner*

Central Determiner adalah determiner yang ditempatkan di antara pre dan post determiner. *Central determiner* terdiri atas *article*, *possessive*, dan *demonstrative* dengan penjelasan dan contoh sebagai berikut:

Central Determiner	Rumus	Contoh Noun Phrase
article	the + noun	all the people, half the width, four times the width
	a/an + singular countable noun	what a big surprise, such an honour
possessive	possessive + noun	two-third his salary, all her salary, three times my salary
demonstrative	this/that + uncountable/singular countable noun	all that luggage, one-third my age
	these/those + plural countable noun	all these books, all those deer

3. Post Determiner

Post Determiner adalah *determiner* yang diletakkan setelah *predeterminer* dengan/tanpa *central determiner* setelahnya. Macam-macam *post determiner*:

Post Determiner	Rumus	Contoh Noun Phrase
number	cardinal number/ ordinal number/ general ordinal + noun	the three men, the ten dollars
		the first class, the fourth floor
		the next chapter, the last moment, my previous experience, his subsequent trip
quantifier	quantifier + noun	the few women

I. MODIFIER

Modifier adalah kata, frase, atau klausa yang berfungsi sebagai *adjective* atau *adverb* yang menerangkan kata atau kelompok kata lain.

a. Sebagai *Adjective* dan *Adverb*

Ketika berfungsi sebagai *adjective* (dapat berupa *simple adjective*, *adjective phrase*, *adjective clause*, *participle*, atau *infinitive*), *modifier* menerangkan kata benda.

Ketika berfungsi sebagai *adverb* (dapat berupa *simple adverb*, *adverb phrase*, *adverb clause*, *prepositional phrase*, *infinitive*), kata ini menerangkan *verb*, *adjective*, atau *adverb* lain.

Contoh *modifier* sebagai *adjective* dan *adverb*:

Konstruksi	Contoh Kalimat <i>Modifier</i>	Keterangan
Participial phrase	She found a letter put on my bag . (Dia menemukan sepucuk surat yang diletakkan di tas saya.)	<i>Participial phrase</i> (put on my bag) berfungsi sebagai <i>adjective</i> yang menerangkan <i>letter</i> (<i>noun</i>). Keseluruhan "a letter put on my bag" adalah <i>noun phrase</i> .
Adverb Phrase	She swims so beautifully . (Dia berenang dengan sangat cantik.)	<i>Adverb phrase</i> menerangkan <i>swims</i> (<i>verb</i>). Adapun <i>adverb phrase</i> dapat berupa <i>adverb + qualifier</i> , <i>prepositional phrase</i> , atau <i>infinitive phrase</i> .
Adjective Clause	The book that he has read is very interesting. (Buku yang telah dia baca sangat menarik.)	<i>Adjective clause</i> menerangkan <i>the book</i> (<i>noun</i>).

Adverb Clause	When you went to the grocery , he came. (Ketika kamu pergi ke toko bahan makanan, dia datang.)	<i>Adverb clause</i> menjawab pertanyaan: "When did he come?"
----------------------	--	---

b. Masalah Penempatan *Modifier*

Masalah-masalah penempatan *modifier* antara lain:

Penjelasan	Contoh Kalimat <i>Modifier</i>
<i>Dangling Modifier</i>	
<i>Dangling modifier</i> ditempatkan pada suatu kalimat namun tidak menerangkan suatu bagian yang muncul setelahnya.	After eating on the street , her stomach usually hurts. (Setelah makan di jalanan, perutnya biasanya sakit.) [Siapa yang makan di jalanan? Perutnya?]
<i>Misplaced Modifier</i>	
<i>Misplaced</i> menempati posisi yang salah di dalam suatu kalimat.	I stored the fresh milk to my friend in the bottle . (Saya menyimpan susu segar untuk "teman saya di dalam botol".)
<i>Squinting Modifier</i>	
<i>Squinting</i> diletakkan di antara dua kata, <i>phrase</i> , atau <i>clause</i> , di mana dia dapat menerangkan salah satu dari keduanya sehingga kalimat menjadi ambigu.	He told yesterday he changed the oil in his car. (Dia mengatakan kemarin dia mengganti oli mobilnya.) [mengatakannya yang kemarin atau mengganti oli yang kemarin?]

J. SUBJEK DAN PREDIKAT

Setiap kalimat yang dapat berdiri sendiri (*complete sentence*) memiliki subjek dan predikat. Subjek adalah tentang apa atau siapa yang dibicarakan dalam suatu kalimat atau klausa, sedangkan predikat menerangkan sesuatu tentang subjek. Adapun subjek dapat berupa orang, hewan, benda, maupun konsep abstrak.

a. Subjek Lengkap dan Predikat Lengkap (*Complete Subject and Complete Predicate*)

Setiap subjek lengkap pada dasarnya dibangun oleh satu atau lebih kata benda atau kata ganti dengan/tanpa tambahan *modifier(s)* yang dapat berupa *article (the, an, an)*, *adjective*, dan *prepositional phrase*. Adapun *gerund* dan *infinitive* dapat pula menempati posisi subjek.

Predikat lengkap terdiri dari verb atau *compound verb (auxiliary + verb)* dengan/tanpa tambahan *modifier(s)* dan *complement* (tambahan kata lain untuk melengkapi makna kalimat). *Modifier* yang digunakan dapat berupa *adverb* dan *prepositional phrase*. Sedangkan *complement* dapat berupa objek langsung jika kata kerja yang digunakan merupakan kata kerja transitif, atau berupa *subject complement* jika kata kerja yang digunakan merupakan *linking verb*.

Beberapa contohnya adalah sebagai berikut.

Keterangan:

- *Subjek lengkap*
- Predikat lengkap

Contoh:

- *His new car's tax has already been paid by his assistant.*
- *Lia and I were eating our lunch on the kitchen table.*
- *The very big boarding school in this country was built in 1980.*

b. Subjek Sederhana dan Predikat Sederhana (*Simple Subject and Simple Predicate*)

Subjek sederhana berupa kata benda atau kata ganti tunggal, dengan mengesampingkan *modifier(s)*-nya.

Pedikat sederhana berupa *verb* atau *compound verb* tunggal.

Contoh Kalimat	Subjek Sederhana	Predikat Sederhana	Keterangan
<i>His new car's tax <u>has already been paid by his assistant.</u> (Pajak mobil baru dia telah dibayar oleh asistennya.)</i>	tax	has been paid	his new car = (pre) modifier by his assistant = prepositional phrase

<p><i>The very big boarding school in this country <u>was built</u> in 1980.</i> (Sekolah asrama yang sangat besar di negara ini dibangun tahun 1980.)</p>	school	was built	<p>the very big boarding = (pre) modifier; in this country = (post) modifier; in 1980 = prepositional phrase</p>
<p><i><u>Open the door!</u></i> (Buka pintu!)</p>	"you"	open	<p>Pada kalimat <i>imperative</i>, subjek tidak ditulis karena dianggap sudah cukup dimengerti; door = direct object</p>
<p><i><u>His Uncle Cal will not arrive on time.</u></i> (Paman Cal akan tidak tiba tepat waktu.)</p>	Uncle Cal	will arrive	<p>his = possessive; not = adverb; on time = prepositional phrase</p>
<p><i><u>There was a haunted house.</u></i> (Di sana ada rumah berhantu.)</p>	house	was	<p>there = adverb; haunted = participle; a = article</p>
<p><i><u>Running may be hard for overweight people.</u></i> (Lari mungkin sulit untuk orang yang kelebihan berat badan.)</p>	Running	may be	<p>running = gerund; hard = adjective; for overweight people = prepositional phrase</p>

<u>To travel is a bad idea.</u> (Bepergian merupakan ide yang buruk.)	to travel	is	to travel = infinitive; is = linking verb; a bad idea = subject complement
--	-----------	----	---

c. Compound Subject dan Compound Predicate

Compound subject terdiri dari dua atau lebih kata benda atau kata ganti, tanpa memperhitungkan *modifier(s)*-nya.

Contoh Kalimat	Compound Subject	Compound Predicate	Keterangan
<u>Lia and Ana were eating our lunch and were discussing abortion on the kitchen table.</u> (Lia dan saya sedang makan siang dan membahas aborsi di meja dapur.)	Lia, Ana	were eating, were discussing	our lunch, abortion = direct object; on the kitchen table = prep. phrase
<u>The beautiful woman and her cute daughter arrived late but left early.</u> (Wanita cantik dan anaknya yang manis tiba terlambat tapi pergi cepat.)	woman, daughter	arrived, left	late, early = adverb

K. PELENGKAP (COMPLEMENT)

Complement adalah kata atau kelompok kata yang melengkapi makna dari subjek, kata kerja, atau objek. Dengan demikian, ada tiga macam pelengkap, yaitu: pelengkap subjek, pelengkap kata kerja, dan pelengkap objek.

a. Pelengkap Subjek (*Subject Complement*)

Pelengkap subjek adalah kata benda, kata ganti, kata sifat (*adjective*), atau konstruksi lain (berperan sebagai kata benda atau kata sifat) yang mengikuti *verbs of being* atau *linking verb* serta berfungsi menerangkan atau merujuk subjek kalimat.

Pelengkap subjek terbagi menjadi tiga yaitu: *predicate adjective* (subjek yang dihubungkan dengan kata sifat), *predicate noun* (subjek yang dihubungkan dengan kata benda), dan *predicate pronoun* (subjek yang dihubungkan dengan kata ganti).

Contoh Pelengkap Subjek (pelengkap subjek = **bold**, linking verb = *italic*):

Contoh Kalimat dengan Pelengkap Subjek	Keterangan
Mr. Mamat <i>was</i> a great headmaster . (Mr. Mamat adalah kepala sekolah yang hebat.)	headmaster (<i>predicate noun</i>) = menerangkan subjek (Mr. Mamat); a, great = <i>modifier</i> yang menerangkan <i>headmaster</i> ; a great headmaster = <i>noun phrase</i>
That lady <i>is</i> very beautiful . (Wanita itu sangat cantik.)	beautiful (<i>predicate adjective</i>) = menerangkan subjek (lady); very = <i>modifier</i> yang menerangkan <i>beautiful</i> ; that lady = <i>noun phrase</i>
These <i>are</i> yours . (Ini milikmu.)	yours (<i>predicate pronoun</i>) = menerangkan subjek (this); these = demonstrative pronoun
The noodle <i>tasted</i> delicious . (Mie itu terasa lezat.)	delicious (<i>predicate adjective</i>) = menerangkan subjek (noodle); the noodle = <i>noun phrase</i>
My favorite activities <i>are</i> shopping and traveling . (Aktivitas favoritku adalah belanja dan bepergian.)	shopping, traveling (<i>gerund</i>) = menerangkan subjek (activity); my favorite activity = <i>noun phrase</i>
His dream <i>is</i> to win a cooking contest . (Impiannya adalah memenangkan kontes masak.)	to win a cooking contest (<i>infinitive</i>) = menerangkan subjek (dream); his dream = <i>noun phrase</i>

b. Pelengkap Kata Kerja (*Verb Complement*)

Pelengkap kata kerja adalah objek langsung atau objek tidak langsung dari suatu kata kerja aksi (*action verb*). Objek-objek tersebut dapat berupa kata benda, kata ganti, atau konstruksi lain yang berfungsi sebagai kata benda, seperti: *gerund*, *infinitive*, dan *noun clause*.

Contoh Pelengkap kata kerja (objek langsung= **bold**; objek tidak langsung = *italic*):

Contoh Kalimat dengan Pelengkap Kata Kerja	Objek Langsung	Objek Tidak Langsung
My boss paid <i>me</i> two thousand dollars . (Bosku membayarku dua ribu dolar.)	noun phrase	pronoun
I love swimming . (Aku suka berenang.)	gerund	–
She wanted to go . (Dia ingin pergi.)	infinitive	–
He discovered that creating a website is quite easy . (Dia mendapati bahwa membuat sebuah <i>website</i> cukup mudah.)	noun clause	

c. Objek Langsung (*Direct Object*)

Objek langsung adalah kata benda, kata ganti, atau pengganti kata benda (*noun substitute*) pada suatu kalimat yang menerima aksi atau merupakan sasaran dari kata kerja. Objek langsung menjawab pertanyaan "*whom*" atau "*what*" setelah kata kerja aksi. Adapun kata kerja yang digunakan adalah kata kerja transitif, yaitu kata kerja yang harus diikuti oleh objek langsung untuk menjadikan makna kalimatnya lengkap atau masuk akal.

Contoh kalimat dengan objek langsung:

- Rezky taught math. → taught what?
(Rezky mengajar matematika. → mengajar apa?)
- I have read the journal. → have read what?
(Saya telah membaca jurnal. → telah membaca apa?)
- She called her mother. → called whom?
(Dia menelepon ibunya. → menelepon siapa?)

d. Pengganti Kata Benda sebagai Objek Langsung (*Noun Substitute as Direct Object*)

Pengganti kata benda merupakan kata, frasa, atau klausa yang dapat berperan sebagai kata benda, di mana antara lain berupa: klausa kata benda, *gerund (phrase)*, dan *infinitive (phrase)*.

Contoh:

- I want to know how Einstein thought. (*noun clause*)
- Everybody hates waiting. (*gerund*)
- The children learned to write. (*infinitive*)
- I hope that he stops his singing. (*gerund phrase*)
- I want to buy the book tomorrow. (*infinitive phrase*)

Mayoritas kalimat dalam bahasa Inggris menempatkan objek langsung tepat setelah kata kerja. Namun, ada kalanya objek tidak langsung berada di antara keduanya. Penjelasan dan contohnya dapat Anda lihat pada tulisan di bawah.

e. Objek Tidak Langsung (*Indirect Object*)

Objek tidak langsung adalah kata benda, kata ganti, atau pengganti kata benda yang menerangkan apa atau untuk siapa sesuatu dilakukan oleh kata kerja aksi. Objek ini menjawab pertanyaan "*to/for whom*" atau "*to/for what*". Suatu kata kerja diikuti objek tidak langsung hanya jika memiliki objek langsung. Kedua objek tersebut selalu berupa orang, tempat, benda, binatang, maupun hal yang berbeda.

Contoh:

- The manager gave him no choice. → Gave no choice to whom?
(Manager tidak memberi dia pilihan. → tidak memberi pilihan kepada siapa?)
- My uncle donated his salary to charity. → Donated his salary to what?
(Paman saya mendonasikan gajinya untuk amal. → Mendonasikan gajinya untuk apa?)

f. Posisi Objek Tidak Langsung

Objek tidak langsung dapat diletakkan sebelum objek langsung (diapit dengan kata kerja) maupun setelahnya dengan menambahkan preposisi "*to*" atau "*for*". Sebagai informasi, kombinasi antara objek tidak langsung dengan preposisi tersebut membentuk *prepositional phrase*.

Contoh:

- Novel Baswedan will tell us all the facts. ≈ Novel Baswedan will tell all the facts to us. (Novel Baswedan akan mengatakan semua faktanya kepada kita.)
- My brother paid the woodworker ten dollars to repair his front door. ≈ My brother paid ten dollars to the woodworker to repair his front door.
(Saudaraku membayar tukang kayu sepuluh dolar untuk memperbaiki pintu depannya.)

Penggunaan objek tidak langsung dengan preposisi khususnya ketika kedua objek tersebut (langsung dan tidak langsung) berupa kata ganti (*pronoun*). Tujuannya agar kalimat terdengar natural.

Contoh:

- Aditya lost his money; therefore, one of his friend borrowed it for him.
(Aditya kehilangan uangnya. Oleh sebab itu satu dari temannya meminjamkan itu untuknya.)
- Before Yulia went to London, she informed it to us.
(Sebelum Yulia pergi ke London, dia menginformasikan hal itu kepada kami.)

Noun	I don't believe in <i>zodiac</i> . (Saya tidak percaya zodiak.)
	Yulia is really into <i>Ninjutsu</i> . (Yulia benar-benar tertarik Ninjutsu.)
Noun Phrase	In <i>my opinion</i> , we should buy her a new jacket. (Menurut pendapat saya, kita harus membelikannya sebuah jaket baru.)
	He didn't say anything during <i>the trip</i> . (Dia tidak berbicara apa pun selama perjalanan.)
Pronoun	I just got good news from <i>him</i> . (Saya baru mendapat berita gembira darinya.)
	My sister is reading the newspaper next to <i>her</i> . (Saudariku sedang membaca koran di sebelahnya.)

Gerund (phrase)	She is reading an book about <i>swimming</i> . (Dia sedang membaca sebuah buku tentang berenang.)
	You should feel ashamed for <i>giving bribes to win the election</i> . (Kamu seharusnya malu memberi suap untuk memenangkan pemilihan.)
Noun Clause	Tomorrow we will discuss about <i>what is mental illness</i> . (Besok kita akan mendiskusikan tentang apa itu penyakit mental.)
	I thank my English teacher for <i>how he teached me some tricks</i> . (Saya berterima kasih pada guru bahasa Inggris saya untuk bagaimana dia mengajarkan saya beberapa trik.)

EXERCISE I:

Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the given nouns for the following exercise. Use each noun only one time!

chair	job	experience	information	hair
luggage	progress	furniture	permission	work

- I don't have much Just two small bags.
- They are going to tell you all you want to know. They are going to give you a lot of
- There is room for everybody to sit down. There are a lot of
- We have no, not even a bed or a table.
- 'What does Alan look like?' He's got a long beard and very short
- Carla's English is very bad. She must make
- George is unemployed. He's looking for a
- If you want to leave work early, you have to ask for
- I don't think Ann will get the job. She hasn't got enough
- Shakespeare's are wonderful.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1. luggage | 6. progress |
| 2. information | 7. job |
| 3. chairs | 8. permission |
| 4. furniture | 9. experience |
| 5. hair | 10. works |

EXERCISE I:**Identify the noun clauses in the following sentences!**

1. I hope to win the first prize.
2. I tried to solve the puzzle.
3. Did you enjoy reading this book?
4. The boy wants to go home.
5. Horses prefer living in dark stables.
6. The accused refused to answer the question.
7. The boy denied stealing the money.
8. To write such rubbish is disgraceful.
9. I dislike having to punish my kids.
10. I will hate to do such a thing.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

1. Noun phrase: to win the first prize; it acts as the object of the verb hope
2. Noun phrase: to solve the puzzle; it acts as the object of the verb tried
3. Noun phrase: reading this book; it acts as the object of the verb enjoy
4. Noun phrase: to go home; it acts as the object of the verb wants
5. Noun phrase: living in dark stables; it acts as the object of the verb prefer
6. Noun phrase: to answer the question; it acts as the object of the verb refused
7. Noun phrase: stealing the money; it acts as the object of the verb denied
8. Noun phrase: to write such rubbish; it acts as the subject of the verb is.
9. Noun phrase: having to punish my kids; it acts as the object of the verb dislike.
10. Noun phrase: to do such a thing; it acts as the object of the verb hate.

EXERCISE I:

Find out the noun clauses in the following sentences and state what purpose they serve!

1. The king ordered that the traitor should be put to death.
2. He said that he would not go.
3. That he is not interested in the offer is known to us.
4. He said that he was not feeling well.
5. I cannot rely on what he says.
6. I don't know where he has gone.
7. He asked whether the servant had polished his shoes.
8. The news that he is alive has been confirmed.
9. The belief that the soul is immortal is almost universal.
10. It is certain that we will have to admit defeat.
11. It was fortunate that he was present.
12. The report that only ten persons were killed in the riots is not true.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

1. Here the noun clause 'that the traitor should be put to death' is object of the verb **ordered**.
2. Here the noun clause 'that he would not go' is the object of the verb **said**.
3. Here the noun clause 'that he is not interested in the offer' is the subject of the verb **is**.
4. Here the noun clause 'that he was not feeling well' is the object of the verb **said**.
5. Here the noun clause 'what he says' is the object of the preposition **on**.
6. Here the noun clause 'where he has gone' is the object of the verb **know**.
7. Here the noun clause 'whether the servant had polished his shoes' is the object of the verb **asked**.
8. Here the noun clause 'that he is alive' is in apposition to the noun **news**.
9. Here the noun clause 'that the soul is immortal' is in apposition to the noun **belief**.
10. Here the noun clause 'that we will have to admit defeat' is in apposition to the pronoun **it**.
11. Here the noun clause 'that he was present' is in apposition to the pronoun **it**.
12. Here the noun clause 'that only ten persons were killed in the riots' is in apposition to the noun **report**.

EXERCISE IV: THE NOUN PHRASE

Indicate whether each underlined noun phrase contains a pre modifier, a post modifier, or both!

1. The umbrella originated in Mesopotamia over 3,000 years ago.
2. It was an emblem of rank and distinction.
3. It protected Mesopotamians from the harsh sun.
4. For centuries, umbrellas served primarily as a protection from the sun.
5. The Greeks and Romans regarded the umbrella as effeminate and ridiculed men who carried umbrellas.
6. On the other hand, Greek women of high rank favoured umbrellas.
7. Roman women began to oil their paper umbrellas to waterproof them.
8. In the mid-eighteenth century a British gentleman made umbrellas respectable for men.
9. Coach drivers were afraid that the umbrella would threaten their livelihood if it became a respectable means of shelter from the rain.
10. Eventually, men realized that it was cheaper to carry an umbrella than to take a coach every time it rained.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. none | 6. pre modifier dan post modifier |
| 2. post modifier | 7. pre modifier |
| 3. pre modifier | 8. pre modifier |
| 4. post modifier | 9. pre modifier dan post modifier |
| 5. post modifier | 10. post modifier |

12

ADJECTIVE

A. PENGERTIAN *ADJECTIVE*

Kata sifat (*adjective*) adalah kata yang digunakan untuk menerangkan kata benda atau kata ganti (*pronoun*) yang dapat berupa orang, tempat, binatang, benda, atau konsep abstrak. Kata sifat bahasa Inggris ini merupakan satu dari delapan *part of speech*.

B. *ADJECTIVE PHRASE* DAN *COMPOUND ADJECTIVE*

Kata sifat mungkin berbentuk sederhana (*dark, hot, young*), atau berbentuk frasa. Frasa kata sifat, yang disebut *adjective phrase*, merupakan kombinasi dari kata sifat sebagai *head* dan *modifier* dan/atau *determiner*.

Contoh:

- very dark chocolate
- many young married couple

Selain itu, dua kata sifat mungkin dapat bergabung untuk membentuk kata baru yang disebut *compound adjective*.

Contoh:

- part-time jobs
- oil-free lotion

C. POSISI KATA SIFAT (*ADJECTIVE POSITION*)

Kata sifat mungkin menempati salah satu posisi:

- Attributive**, diletakkan di depan kata benda, contoh: beautiful girls.
- Postpositive**, di belakang kata benda tanpa disela *linking verb*, contoh: someone special.
- Predicative**, diletakkan setelah kata benda dengan disela *linking verb*, contoh: The lady is beautiful.

D. URUTAN KATA SIFAT (*ADJECTIVE ORDER*)

Jika ada lebih dari satu kata sifat di depan kata benda, kita perlu mengikuti *adjective order*, yakni urutan kata sifat berdasarkan kategori: opini, ukuran, usia, bentuk, warna, asal, bahan, kegunaan.

Contoh: two happy small blue birds (opinion – size – color)

E. TINGKATAN KATA SIFAT (*ADJECTIVE DEGREE*)

Untuk menyatakan perbandingan, dapat digunakan kata sifat dalam bentuk:

- a. **Positive Degree**, membandingkan kesetaraan, contoh: She is as good as you in math.
- b. **Comparative Degree**, untuk membandingkan dua hal, contoh: Today should be better than yesterday.
- c. **Superlative Degree**, untuk membandingkan tiga hal atau lebih, contoh: He was the best of all of us.

F. KLAUSA KATA SIFAT (*ADJECTIVE CLAUSE*)

Klausula kata sifat merupakan *dependent clause* yang berfungsi sebagai kata sifat, untuk menjelaskan kata benda atau kata ganti di dalam *complex sentence*.

Contoh: The student who always goes to school by bus is my friend.

Klausula ini mungkin direduksi (dipersingkat) — *reduced adjective clause* — dengan menghilangkan *relative pronoun* dan mengubah kata kerja yang digunakan menjadi *participle*.

Contoh: The student always going to school by bus is my friend.

G. MACAM-MACAM KATA SIFAT

a. *Stative* dan *Dynamic Adjective*

Stative mencirikan kondisi yang cenderung permanen (*small, black, tall*), sedangkan *dynamic* berhubungan dengan tingkah laku (*foolish, friendly, playful*).

b. *Inherent dan Non-Inherent Adjective*

Inherent mencirikan secara langsung kata benda yang diterangkannya, contoh: **someone special**. **Special** mencirikan **someone** secara langsung ~ someone who is special.

Non-inherent kebalikannya, contoh: **my old friend** tidak sama dengan **my friend who is old**, **old** mencirikan **friendship** yang telah berlangsung lama.

H. PEMBAGIAN KATA SIFAT

a. **Kata Sifat Kualitas (*Quality Adjectives*)**

Kata sifat kualitas disebut juga kata sifat yang menunjukkan bentuk, ukuran, kondisi, warna, bahan, fungsi, dll dari kata benda atau kata ganti.

Posisi kata sifat kualitas:

1. *Attributives*

Attributive adjectives diletakkan sebelum kata benda atau di antara *article* dan kata benda.

Contoh:

- I can see a **beautiful** girl.
- I have got a **new** book.

2. *Predicatives*

Predicative adjectives dibagi lagi menjadi:

- Pelengkap subjek

Contoh:

- * Your daughter is **pretty**.
- * She is very **beautiful**.
- * The book is **new**.

- Pelengkap objek

Contoh:

- * He made his wife **happy**.
- * I consider him **foolish**.
- * She pushed the window **open**.

3. *Appositives*

Appositive adjectives biasanya mengikuti kata benda dan menjelaskannya. Jenis ini terbagi menjadi dua bagian, yaitu:

- *Restrictive*

Contoh:

A teacher untrained in Phonetics is as useless as a doctor untrained in anatomy.

- *Non-restrictive*

Contoh:

A blacksmith, swarthy and muscular, was leisurely working the long handle of his bellows.

b. Kata Sifat Kepunyaan (*Possessive Adjectives*)

Kata sifat kepunyaan terdiri dari *my, our, their, your, his, her, its*.

1. *Sebagai pelengkap subjek (subjective complement)*

Contoh:

- * What is **your** phone number?
- * That is **my** house.

2. *Sebagai objek*

Contoh:

- * I can't complete **my** assignment because I don't have the text book.
- * The bakery sold **his** favourite type of bread.

3. *Sebagai objek preposisi*

Contoh:

- * After many years, she returned to **her** homeland.
- * They give everything to **their** mother.

c. Kata Sifat Penunjuk (*Demonstrative Adjectives*)

Kata sifat ini terbagi menjadi 2 bagian, yaitu:

1. *Definite*, yang terdiri atas *this, that, these, those*.

Contoh:

- * **This** book is mine
- * **Those** pictures are beautiful.

2. *Indefinite*, yang terdiri dari *another, the other, an, a, some, dll*.

Contoh:

- * **Another** teacher will come to teach us today.
- * They can eat **the other** apples.

d. Kata Sifat Penanya (*Interrogative Adjectives*)

Kata sifat jenis ini terdiri dari:

1. *Sebagai subjek*

Contoh:

- * **What** color is your house?
- * **Whose** book is this?

2. *Sebagai objek*

Contoh:

- * I don't know **what** problem she is talking about.
- * They never question **which** part of the novel will be summarized.

3. *Sebagai objek preposisi*

Contoh:

- * With **whose** father do you speak?
- * In **which** hotel do you like to stay?

e. Kata Sifat Kuantitas (*Quantity Adjectives*)

Kata-kata yang termasuk dalam jenis ini adalah *much, some, enough, little, half, any*, dll.

Contoh:

- * He ate **little** bread.
- * Will you have **some** tea?

f. Kata Sifat Penomoran (*Numeral Adjectives*)

Kata Sifat jenis ini terbagi atas:

1. *Definite, yang menunjukkan jumlah pasti dari suatu kata benda atau kata ganti.*

• *Cardinal*

Contoh:

- * We have **three** cars at home.
- * You can take **twelve** books.

• *Ordinal*

Contoh:

- * Our class is in the **third** floor.
- * They will depart on the **second** flight.

- *Multiplications*

Contoh:

- * The rooms have a **single** bed.
- * There is a **pair** of shoes under the table.

2. *Indefinite*

Kata-kata yang termasuk dalam jenis ini adalah *all, some, enough, many*, dll.

Contoh:

- * **Many** people believe that corporations are under-taxed.
- * I will buy **some** pens.
- * I am waiting for **some** friends here.

g. Kata Sifat Nama Diri (*Proper Adjectives*)

Proper Nouns:

- * England
- * Holland
- * Indonesia, dll

Proper Adjectives:

- * English
- * Dutch
- * Indonesian, dll

Contoh kalimat:

- * **English** people like drinking tea.
- * **Arabian** people like eating dates.

h. Kata Sifat Distributif (*Distributive Adjectives*)

Kata-kata yang sering dipakai adalah *each, every, neither, either*.

Contoh:

- * She reads **every** book in the library
- * I can choose **either** red or yellow car.

EXERCISE:

Choose the correct answer from the options below!

1. Rajesh is feeling very
 - A. angry
 - B. angriest
 - C. angrier

2. Nokia is a company.
 - A. good
 - B. best
 - C. better

3. Rajat is than Ramesh.
 - A. fast
 - B. fastest
 - C. faster

4. Amongst the three brothers, Aditya is the
 - A. tall
 - B. tallest
 - C. taller

5. She will live than him.
 - A. long
 - B. longer
 - C. longest

6. What about this? Isn't it?
 - A. beautiful
 - B. beauty
 - C. beautifully

7. The test was than I thought it would be.
 - A. difficult
 - B. most difficult
 - C. more difficult

8. He is the boy in his class.
 - A. old
 - B. oldest
 - C. older

9. This locality is than ours.
 - A. expensive
 - B. most expensive
 - C. more expensive

10. You are so, I am sure you can pick this up.
- A. strong
 - B. fat
 - C. weak

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. A | 6. A |
| 2. A | 7. C |
| 3. C | 8. B |
| 4. B | 9. C |
| 5. B | 10. A |

I. KATA SANDANG (*ARTICLE*)

A, an, the (articles) adalah kata yang digunakan untuk membatasi pengertian dari sebuah kata benda). *Article* atau kata sandang, terbagi menjadi dua macam, yaitu: *definite* dan *indefinite*. Adapula *zero article* yang berarti tanpa kata sandang.

a. *Definite Article*

- *The* merupakan kata sandang yang digunakan pada *definite article*.
- *The* digunakan pada hal yang spesifik (telah jelas atau telah diterangkan sebelumnya) meliputi: orang, benda, maupun pemikiran.
- Kata ini digunakan sebelum kata benda dapat dihitung (*countable noun*) maupun kata benda tidak dapat dihitung (*uncountable noun*).

Contoh:

- There's a girl in front of the bookstore. The girl wore boots. (Di sana ada seorang anak perempuan di depan toko buku. Dia mengenakan sepatu bot.)
- The place that I just visited is cozy. (Tempat yang baru saya kunjungi sangat nyaman.)

b. *Indefinite Articles*

- *A* atau *an* digunakan pada *indefinite articles*.
- Kata sandang ini digunakan pada hal yang tidak spesifik atau belum pernah diterangkan sebelumnya, meliputi: orang, benda, maupun pemikiran.
- Kata ini hanya digunakan sebelum kata benda dapat dihitung tunggal (*singular countable noun*).

Contoh:

- a man, a book, an umbrella
- He goes to the swimming pool twice a week. (Dia pergi ke kolam renang dua kali seminggu.)

c. Zero Article (tanpa a, an, the)

- *Zero article* berarti tidak ada article (*a, an, the*) yang perlu untuk digunakan terhadap suatu kata benda.
- Beberapa macam kata benda yang tidak menggunakan article (tanpa *a, an, the*) antara lain adalah nama-nama bahasa, olahraga, mata pelajaran, dll.

Contoh:

- Can you speak Japanese? (Dapatkah kamu bicara bahasa Jepang?)
- That children played football. (Anak-anak itu bermain bola.)

d. Kesalahan Penggunaan (Error)

Kesalahan umum yang terjadi pada penggunaan kata ini, yaitu penggunaan yang terbalik pada *definite* dan *indefinite*.

EXERCISE:

Choose the correct answer from the four options!

1. Please wait for ... hour for the test results.
A. a
B. the
C. an
D. none of the above
2. India is the second most populous country in ... world.
A. a
B. the
C. an
D. none of the above
3. Amit is ... M.B.A. from Rajdhani University.
A. a
B. the
C. an
D. none of the above

4. Do you have ... pen?
 - A. a
 - B. the
 - C. an
 - D. none of the above

5. Is this ... pen given by Mr. Singh?
 - A. a
 - B. the
 - C. an
 - D. none of the above

6. How do I go to ... Lajpat Nagar?
 - A. a
 - B. the
 - C. an
 - D. none of the above

7. Mr. Reddy is wearing ... blue shirt.
 - A. a
 - B. the
 - C. an
 - D. none of the above

8. This is ... unique coin.
 - A. a
 - B. the
 - C. an
 - D. none of the above

9. I saw ... elephant on the road today.
 - A. a
 - B. the
 - C. an
 - D. none of the above

10. The headmaster was talking to ... parents.
 - A. a
 - B. the
 - C. an
 - D. none of the above

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. C | 6. D |
| 2. B | 7. A |
| 3. C | 8. A |
| 4. A | 9. C |
| 5. B | 10. B |

J. (A) LITTLE dan (A) FEW SEBAGAI DETERMINER

(A) *little* dan (a) *few* adalah kata yang dapat digunakan sebagai *determiner* (kata yang ditempatkan di depan kata benda untuk membatasi maknanya atau kata ganti (*pronoun*) ketika membicarakan kuantitas).

Sebagai *determiner*, (a) *little* diikuti kata benda yang tidak dapat dihitung (*uncountable noun*), sedangkan (a) *few* diikuti kata benda yang dapat dihitung (*countable noun*). Sebagai subjek kalimat, (a) *little* dipasangkan dengan kata kerja tunggal dan (a) *few* dengan kata kerja jamak.

a. *Little and Few*

Little and few yang berarti *almost none* (hampir tidak ada) dan memiliki arti negatif. Keduanya tidak terlalu umum digunakan sebagai kata ganti, kecuali pada konteks formal.

Not many/much lebih sering digunakan menggantikan *little/few* pada percakapan agar terdengar tidak terlalu formal.

Contoh:

1	There is little fresh raw milk left in the jar. (Tersisa sangat sedikit susu segar mentah di dalam botol.)
2	She served so little time for taking care of herself and her parents. (Dia menyediakan sangat sedikit waktu untuk mengurus dirinya sendiri dan orang tuanya.)
3	Few may have read the latest edition of the newsletter. (Sangat sedikit yang mungkin telah membaca edisi terbaru dari buletin itu.)
4	Little is known about her childhood and youth. (Sangat sedikit yang diketahui tentang masa kanak-kanak dan remajanya.)

5	<p>I have few shirts. (Saya punya sangat sedikit kemeja.)</p> <p>Bandingkan: I don't have many shirts. (Saya tidak punya banyak kemeja.)</p>
6	<p>The job requires little experience. (Pekerjaan tersebut membutuhkan sangat sedikit pengalaman.)</p> <p>Bandingkan: The job doesn't require much experience. (Pekerjaan tersebut tidak membutuhkan banyak pengalaman.)</p>

b. Little sebagai Kata Sifat

Little dapat digunakan sebagai kata sifat di mana maknanya sama dengan *small*. Kita menggunakan *small* hanya untuk membicarakan ukuran, sedangkan *little* untuk membicarakan ukuran dan *positive emotion*. *Little* biasa digunakan bersama kata sifat lain yang bermakna positif, seperti: *beautiful*, *funny*, dan *nice*.

Contoh:

1	<p>She was a beautiful little girl. (Dia dulunya seorang anak kecil yang cantik.)</p>
2	<p>My little sister brought home a little kitten when we already have two adult cats. (Adik kecil saya membawa pulang seekor anak kucing ketika kami sudah punya dua kucing dewasa.)</p>

EXERCISE:

**Complete the sentences with A LITTLE, LITTLE, FEW, A FEW!
The first two have been done as examples.**

1. Let's go to the movies. I have ... money. (a little)
2. I'm sorry, I can't pay for your lunch. I have ... money. (little)
3. Not many children like vegetables. For example, ... children eat squash.
4. Joe is always angry. That's why he has ... friends.
5. Bill didn't drink all the soda. There's ... left.

6. The party was fun. There were ... people I knew there.
7. Your house is almost empty! You have ... furniture.
8. Marty : Do you need some help with your math homework?
Harry : Yes, I could sure use
9. Henry : How many people were at the game last night?
Kenny : Almost none. ... people want to watch a team that always loses.
10. Doris : Are Dallas and Ft. Worth very far from each other?
David : No, they're quite close. There's ... distance between them
11. There's ... milk in the refrigerator. About half a quart, I think.
12. Doctor : Have you ever been in bad health or had a serious operation?
Patient : No, I haven't. I've had ... medical problems.
13. Steve : Have you received any applications for the job that you advertised in the paper last week?
Larry : Yes, but only
14. Steve : I wonder why not many people applied for it?
Larry : ... want to work so hard for so ... money, I guess.
15. May I please have ... more coffee?
16. Greg is always busy; he has ... free time.
17. ... of the children were rude, but most were polite.
18. Donald doesn't care for school. He has ... interest in it.
19. I need to talk to you. Do you have ... minutes?
20. Let's get together when we have ... free time.
21. Rodney feels that his life is very dull. He has ... adventures.
22. There are no empty seats on this flight, but there are ... available on the next one.
23. Almost all of the people at the meeting were in civilian clothes. ... were wearing uniforms.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | | |
|-------------|--------------|------------|
| 3. few | 10. little | 17. A few |
| 4. few | 11. a little | 18. Little |
| 5. a little | 12. few | 19. A few |

- | | | |
|-------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 6. a few | 13. A few | 20. A little |
| 7. little | 14. Few, little | 21. Few |
| 8. a little | 15. A little | 22. A few |
| 9. few | 16. Little | 23. few |

K. QUANTIFIER

Quantifier adalah kata atau kelompok kata yang digunakan untuk menyatakan jumlah (*how many* atau *how much*).

Quantifier bisa berbentuk sederhana dengan hanya terdiri dari satu kata (contoh: *few, little, many*), atau kompleks berupa frasa (contoh: *a lot of, none of, a couple of*).

Quantifier umumnya digunakan sebagai *determiner* yang berfungsi untuk membatasi kata benda. Posisinya di depan kata benda untuk membentuk frasa kata benda (*noun phrase*). Namun, *quantifier* dapat pula berdiri sendiri sebagai kata ganti (*pronoun*), tepatnya *indefinite pronoun*.

Contoh:

Fungsi	Contoh	Keterangan
Determiner	Few workers (sedikit pekerja)	few = determiner = <i>modifier</i> kata benda "workers"
Pronoun	Few come on time. (Sedikit yang datang tepat waktu.)	few = pronoun = subjek kalimat

a. Kombinasi *Quantifier* dengan Kata Benda

Sebagian *quantifier* dapat menambahkan informasi baik pada *countable* maupun *uncountable noun*, sedangkan sebagian *quantifier* yang lain hanya menambahkan informasi pada *countable* atau *uncountable noun*.

Kombinasi	Contoh <i>Quantifier</i>	Contoh Kalimat <i>Quantifier</i>
quantifier + countable/ uncountable noun	Some, any, enough, a lot of, lots of, most, most of the, plenty of, all of the, lack of	Would you mind giving me some advice ? (Maukah kamu memberi saya beberapa nasihat?)
		Some students prefer to learn on their own for the exam, while others do not. (Beberapa siswa lebih suka belajar sendiri untuk ujian sedangkan yang lain tidak.)
		There're not enough chairs for uninvited guests. (Tidak ada cukup kursi untuk tamu yang tidak diundang.)
		Do you have enough money ? (Apakah kamu punya cukup uang?)
		She has a lot of cats . (Dia mempunyai banyak kucing.)
		Do you need a lot of sugar ? (Apakah kamu membutuhkan banyak gula?)
quantifier + countable noun	a few, few, several, a couple of, many, none of	He has a few ties . (Dia mempunyai sedikit dasi.)
		None of his sport shoes is in a good condition. (Tidak satu pun sepatu olahraganya dalam kondisi layak.)
		Several people rented the car. (Beberapa orang menyewa mobil itu.)
quantifier + uncountable noun	a little, little, not much, a great deal of, a good deal of, a bit of, no	Ria has a little money in her pocket. (Ria punya sedikit uang di sakunya.)
		I don't have much money in this time. (Saya tidak punya banyak uang saat ini.)
		You need a great deal of money to buy a Lamborghini car. (Kamu membutuhkan uang yang banyak untuk membeli sebuah mobil Lamborghini.)

b. *A Lot, Much, dan Many*

A lot, much, dan many adalah *quantifiers* (ketiganya memiliki arti yang sama = banyak) yang digunakan untuk mengekspresikan/menunjukkan jumlah (*quantity*) dari sesuatu. Walaupun *a lot, many, dan much* memiliki arti yang sama, tetapi penggunaan *quantifiers* ini memiliki aturan yang berbeda dalam tatanan kalimat Bahasa Inggris.

Bagi Anda yang masih bingung kapan harus menggunakan *a lot, many, dan much* dalam kalimat Bahasa Inggris, mari kita membahasnya dan belajar bersama. Sekarang, silakan pelajari rumus dan contoh kalimat di bawah ini:

Rumus Penggunaan "*a lot, many, and much*"

<i>Much + Kata Benda Tidak Dapat Dihitung (Uncountable Noun)</i>	<i>Many + Kata Benda Jamak (Plural Noun)</i>
Contoh kalimat: <i>Did you buy much food?</i> (Arti: Apakah kamu membeli banyak makanan ?) <i>We have not got much luggage.</i> (Arti: Kita tidak punya banyak barang bawaan .) <i>How much money do you want?</i> (Arti: Berapa banyak uang yang kamu inginkan?) A : <i>Have you got any money?</i> B : <i>I have got some but not much.</i> Arti: A : Apakah kamu punya uang? B : Saya punya uang tetapi tidak banyak .	Contoh kalimat: <i>Did you buy many books?</i> (Arti: Apakah kamu membeli banyak buku?) <i>We don't know many people.</i> (Arti: Kami tidak tahu/kenal banyak orang) <i>How many photographs did you take?</i> (Arti: Berapa banyak foto yang kamu dapat?) A : <i>Did you buy any fruits?</i> B : <i>I buy some but not many.</i> Arti: A : Apakah kamu membeli beberapa buah-buahan? B : Saya membeli beberapa, tetapi tidak banyak.

A Lot Of + Segala Tipe/Bentuk Kata Benda (All Types of Noun)	
<p style="text-align: center;"><i>a lot of + uncountable noun</i></p> <p>Contoh kalimat: <i>We buy a lot of food.</i> (Arti: Kita membeli banyak makanan.) <i>Paula has not got a lot of free time.</i> (Arti: Paula tidak punya banyak waktu luang.) NOTE: Jika setelah <i>quantifier</i> "a lot of" diikuti oleh kata benda tidak dapat dihitung (uncountable noun), maka Anda harus menggunakan kata kerja tunggal. Misalnya: <i>There is a lot of food/ money/ water, etc.</i> (is = kata kerja tunggal)</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><i>a lot of + plural noun</i></p> <p>Contoh kalimat: <i>We buy a lot of books.</i> (Arti: Kita membeli banyak buku.) <i>Did they ask you a lot of questions?</i> (Arti: Apakah mereka menanyaimu banyak pertanyaan?) NOTE: Jika setelah <i>quantifier</i> "a lot of" diikuti oleh kata benda jamak (plural noun), maka Anda harus menggunakan kata kerja jamak. Misalnya: <i>There are a lot of trees/ shops/ people, etc.</i> (are = kata kerja jamak)</p>

Berdasarkan rumus dan contoh kalimat yang ada pada tabel di atas, semoga Anda sudah bisa memahami cara menggunakan *much and many*.

Kesimpulan:

- **much** harus diikuti oleh kata benda tidak dapat dihitung (**uncountable noun**).
- **many** harus diikuti oleh kata benda jamak (**plural noun**).
- Sedangkan untuk penggunaan **a lot of** boleh diikuti segala jenis kata benda, baik oleh **uncountable noun** atau **plural noun**.

Biasanya *much* digunakan pada kalimat tanya dan kalimat negatif. Sedangkan pada kalimat positif Anda bisa menggunakan *a lot of/many*. Tetapi harus diingat bahwa penggunaan *many* harus diikuti oleh kata benda jamak (*plural noun*).

Silakan perhatikan contoh kalimat di bawah ini:

+	<p><i>I drink a lot of coffee.</i></p> <p>Kita menggunakan "a lot" karena <i>coffee</i> merupakan uncountable noun jadi tidak boleh menggunakan "many". Kata many digunakan ketika kata bendanya dalam bentuk jamak.</p>
-	<p><i>I don't drink much coffee.</i></p> <p>Karena kalimat di atas adalah kalimat negatif, maka kita menggunakan "much".</p>
?	<p>A: <i>Do you drink much coffee?</i></p> <p>B: <i>Yes, a lot.</i></p> <p>A: Pada kalimat tanya kita menggunakan "much".</p> <p>B: Kita tidak menggunakan "much" = karena ini kalimat positif jadi kita menggunakan "a lot".</p>

Kata *much* bisa digunakan dalam kalimat positif Bahasa Inggris pada kasus tertentu. Kita menggunakan *much* dan *many* pada kalimat positif untuk menunjukkan ekspresi gaya kalimat yang lebih formal.

Contoh:

There is **much** concern about child abuse in this country.

(Ada banyak keprihatinan terhadap kekerasan anak di negara ini)

We have heard **many** rumors about our new President.

(Kita sudah mendengar banyak rumor tentang Presiden baru kita)

Thank you very **much**.

(Terima kasih banyak)

CATATAN:

Penggunaan *a lot of* cenderung terkesan lebih tidak formal, tetapi kita tetap boleh menggunakannya.

c. Penggunaan Frasa "That Much, This Much"

Ketika kita berbicara dan berhadapan langsung dengan seseorang, kita bisa menggunakan frasa *that much* atau *this much* dengan gerakan tangan untuk memperjelas kuantitas/jumlah suatu benda yang sedang kita bicarakan.

Contoh:

I know this is a big party, but I only have **that much** food.

(Saya tahu ini adalah pesta besar, tetapi saya hanya punya makanan sebanyak itu.)

My sister just gave me **this much** money.

(Arti: Saudari saya baru saja memberikan uang sebanyak ini)

Kesimpulan:

Much bisa digunakan pada kalimat positif, dan ketika menggunakan *that much* atau *this much* biasanya pembicara menunjuk menggunakan jarinya untuk memperjelas jumlah/kuantitas benda atau sesuatu yang sedang dibicarakan.

Kita juga bisa menggunakan *many* dan *a lot of* untuk semua jenis kalimat. *Many* dan *a lot of* bisa digunakan baik pada kalimat positif, negatif, dan kalimat tanya.

Jangan lupa, jika kata bendanya tidak dapat dihitung (*uncountable noun*) Anda tidak boleh menggunakan *many*, tapi gunakan *a lot of*.

Perhatikan contoh kalimat di bawah ini:

+	<i>We have got many friends/a lot of friends.</i>	BENAR
-	<i>We have not got many friends/a lot of friends.</i>	BENAR
?	<i>Have you got many friends/a lot of friends?</i>	BENAR

d. Menggunakan "Much" dan "A Lot Of" Tanpa Diikuti Sebuah Kata Benda

Contoh:

Namia spoke to me but she didn't say **much**.

(Namia berbicara pada saya tetapi dia tidak bicara banyak.)

A : Do you watch TV **much**?

B : No, **not much**. (Not much = not often)

She likes films, so she goes to the cinema **a lot**.

(Dia suka film, jadi dia sering pergi ke bioskop.)

I don't like him very **much**.

(Saya sangat tidak menyukai dia.)

EXERCISE:

Decide whether you have to use much or many!

1. Jane hasn't got ... time.
2. Do you know ... words in English?
3. He didn't eat ... meat.
4. There isn't ... butter in the fridge.
5. How ... eggs did the hens lay?
6. Samantha has as ... money as Bruce.
7. How ... lessons do you have on Mondays?
8. There was too ... noise in the streets.
9. I cannot see ... stars in the sky tonight.
10. Do you have ... friends abroad?

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|---------|----------|
| 1. much | 6. much |
| 2. many | 7. many |
| 3. much | 8. much |
| 4. much | 9. many |
| 5. many | 10. many |

e. *A Lot, A Lot Of, dan Lots Of*

A lot, a lot of, dan lots of adalah quantifier yang bermakna "sejumlah besar" [*a great quantity (of)/a large number (of)*]. Ketiganya digunakan dalam bahasa Inggris tidak formal.

1. *A lot*

A lot (atau *lots*) digunakan sebagai kata keterangan yang biasanya ditempatkan di ujung kalimat.

Contoh:

- Are there many moons in the solar system? Yes, a lot/Yes, lots.
(Apakah ada banyak bulan di tata surya? Ya, banyak.)
- We talked a lot about mental illness.
(Kami berbicara banyak tentang penyakit mental.)
- My sister likes cooking a lot.
(Saudara perempuanku sangat suka memasak.)
- Newborn kittens need to sleep a lot.
(Anak kucing yang baru lahir perlu banyak tidur.)

2. *A lot of and Lots of*

A lot of dan *lots of* berfungsi sebagai *determiner*. Keduanya dapat diikuti kata benda berupa kata benda dapat dihitung tunggal (*plural countable noun*) atau kata benda tidak dapat dihitung (*uncountable noun*). *Lots of* lebih informal dari *a lot of*.

Pada kalimat positif, *a lot of* lebih umum digunakan daripada *many/much* yang lebih formal.

Pada kalimat negatif dan interogatif, *countable noun* lebih umum menggunakan *many* daripada *a lot*; sedangkan *uncountable noun* seperti *food, money, dan love* lebih umum menggunakan *much*.

Contoh:

- There are **a lot of/lots of** reasons why I wake up early.
(Ada banyak alasan mengapa saya bangun pagi.)
- She read **a lot of/lots of** books during pregnancy.
(Dia membaca banyak buku selama kehamilan.)
- Even if I had **a lot** of money, I wouldn't buy much food there.
(Meskipun saya punya banyak uang, saya tidak akan membeli banyak makanan di sana.)
- **A lot of** mushrooms are poisonous.
(Banyak jamur yang beracun.)

EXERCISE:

Choose the right answer (much, many, a lot, a lot of, lots)!

1. We have ... oranges.
2. We don't have bananas, and we don't have ... fruit juice.
3. Do you have any cereal? Sure, there's ... in the kitchen."
4. How ... is this? It's ten dollars.
5. How ... do you want? Six, please.
6. He's very busy; he has ... work.
7. David has ... rice, but Tyler doesn't have
8. London has ... beautiful buildings.
9. They eat ... apples.
10. I wrote ... poems.
11. I have got ... money.
12. I visited ... European cities.
13. Do you like soccer? Yes,

14. Were there ... guests in the wedding? Yes, there were
15. Leila is popular. She's got ... friends. Nancy does not have
16. She hasn't got ... patience.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. A lot of | 9. A lot of |
| 2. Many, much | 10. Many |
| 3. A lot | 11. Lots of |
| 4. Much | 12. Many |
| 5. Many | 13. A lot |
| 6. A lot of | 14. Many, a lot |
| 7. A lot of | 15. A lot of |
| 8. A lot of | 16. Much |

EXERCISE:

1. There are ... biscuits in the packet.
 - A. a few
 - B. a little
 - C. a lot
2. We've got ... time before the plane leaves.
 - A. a few
 - B. a little
 - C. a lot
3. 'Few of my students remember the third person singular 's' ending on verbs' means that
 - A. not many students understand (maybe 2 or 3)
 - B. some students understand (maybe 6 or 7)
 - C. none of my students understand (0 students)
4. He always gets ... presents than his sister on his birthday.
 - A. a lot of
 - B. fewer
 - C. less
5. I have ... money than you.
 - A. a lot
 - B. fewer
 - C. less

6. There are ... people in the supermarket today.
 - A. a lot
 - B. fewer
 - C. little

7. She has ... friends.
 - A. lot of
 - B. lots of
 - C. a lot

8. He earns ... money.
 - A. a lot
 - B. a lot of
 - C. lots

9. She wears ... gold jewellery.
 - A. lots
 - B. a lot
 - C. lots of

10. He eats
 - A. lots of
 - B. a lot
 - C. fewer

11. Do you like hip-hop music?
Yes,
 - A. lots of
 - B. much
 - C. a lot

12. There's ... money in my wallet.
 - A. few
 - B. much
 - C. a little

13. They have ... information on their website.
 - A. much
 - B. few
 - C. very little

14. They have ... customers.
A. very little
B. very few
C. a lot
15. He eats ... sweet food.
A. lots of
B. few
C. a lot
16. He has ... free time.
A. lots
B. few
C. a lot of
17. There's only ... milk left in the fridge.
A. lots
B. a few
C. a little
18. You smoke
A. much
B. a lot
C. few
19. He doesn't earn
A. fewer
B. little
C. a lot
20. I have ... good friends.
A. a few
B. a lot
C. little

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. A | 11. C |
| 2. B | 12. C |
| 3. A | 13. A |
| 4. B | 14. C |
| 5. C | 15. A |

Contoh:

Salah : You will just need a small number of clothing to go to college because the lifestyle is very informal.

Benar : You will just need a small amount of clothing to go to college because the lifestyle is very informal.

Salah : There are a small amount of Chinese restaurant in the city.

Benar : There are a small number of Chinese restaurants in the city.

h. Almost All Of The dan Most Of The

Almost all of the berarti "hampir semua", dan *most of the* berarti "sebagian besar". Keduanya diikuti *plural countable noun* dan *plural verb*.

Almost all (of the) Most (of the)	Noun (count-plural)	Verb (plural)	
Almost all (of the) Most (of the)	trees in your yard tress in your yard	are are	oaks oaks
Arti: Hampir semua pepohonan di halamanmu adalah pohon ek. Sebagian besar pepohonan di halamanmu adalah pohon ek.			

Almost all (of the) Most (of the)	Noun (non- count)	Verb (singular)
Almost all (of the) Most (of the)	art by R.C Gorman art by R.C Gorman	is expensive. is expensive.
Arti: Hampir semua karya seni R.C Gorman mahal (harganya). Sebagian besar karya seni R.C Gorman mahal (harganya).		

Contoh:

Salah : Almost the states have a sales tax.

Benar : Almost all of the states have a sales tax.

atau

Most all states have a sales tax.

atau

Most states have a sales tax.

L. KECUKUPAN: *ENOUGH* + *NOUN*

Enough artinya "cukup". Dapat digunakan sebelum atau sesudah kata benda dapat dihitung jamak (*plural countable noun*) atau kata benda tidak dapat dihitung (*noncountable noun*).

		Enough	Noun (count-plural) Noun count (noncount)
We	have	enough	tickets
We	have	enough	time

		Noun (count-plural) Noun count (noncount)	Enough
We	have	tickets	enough
We	have	time	enough

Contoh:

Salah : There aren't enough car for all of us to go.

Benar : There aren't enough cars for all of us to go.
atau
There aren't cars enough for all of us to go

Salah : Do we have hambergers enough as for the party?

Benar : Do we have enough hambergers for the party?
atau
Do we have hamburgers enough for the party?

a. *Enough* + *Adjective*

Enough ditambah kata sifat mempunyai arti "cukup".

S	V	adjective	enough	infinitive	
It	is	warm	enough	to go	swimming

Untuk kalimat negatif:

S	V	not	adjective	enough	infinitive	
It	is	not	warm	enough	to go	swimming

Contoh:

Salah : Billy isn't enough old to enlist in the army.

Benar : Billy isn't old enough to enlist in the army.

Salah : His score on the exam was enough good to quality him for a graduate program.

Benar : His score on the exam was good enough to quality him for a graduate program.

M. ONE, ANOTHER, THE OTHER

One, another, dan the other digunakan sebelum atau selain kata benda dapat dihitung tunggal (*singular count nouns*). Ketika digunakan sebelum *singular count nouns*, menjadi kata sifat. Ketika digunakan selain *singular count nouns*, menjadi kata ganti (*pronouns*).

One, another, dan the other mengatur tiga kata benda secara berurutan.

One dan the other menyusun dua kata benda berurutan (*consecutively*). *One* berarti benda yang pertama disebutkan, *another* berarti satu lagi sebagai tambahan pada benda yang disebutkan pertama, dan *the other* berarti benda sisanya.

1 one	Count noun (singular)		2 another	Count noun (singular)	
One	movie	starts at five,	another	movie	start at seven
3 the other		Count noun (singular)			
the other		movie			start at nine.

1 One	Count noun (singular)		2 another		3 the other	
One	bus	leaves at two,	another	at six, and	the other	at ten

Contoh:

Salah : One of my roomates studies engineering, another studies business, and the another studies computer science.

Benar : One of my roomates studies engineering, another (roomates) studies business, and the other (roomates) studies computer science.

N. SOME, OTHER, THE OTHER, SOME OTHERS, THE OTHERS (THE REST)

Some, other, dan the other digunakan sebelum kata benda dapat dihitung jamak (*plural count nouns*). Mereka adalah kata sifat.

1 some	Count noun (plural)		2 other	Count noun (plural)	
Some	houses	are for rent,	other	houses	are for sale, and
3 the other/the rest of the		count noun (plural)			
the other/the rest of the		houses	are empty.		

Some, others, dan the others (the rest) digunakan selain kata benda dapat dihitung jamak (*plural count nouns*). Mereka adalah kata ganti (*pronouns*).

1 some	Count noun (plural)		2 others	
Some	schools	are universities	others	are colleges, and
Some	school	are universities	others	are college, and
3 the othe the rest of the				
the others		are junior colleges.		
the rest		are junior colleges.		

Contoh:

Salah : Some of these T-shirt are red, others are blue, and rest are white.

Benar : Some of these T-shirt are red, others are blue, and the rest are white.

O. ORDINAL DAN CARDINAL NUMBER

Number yang merupakan salah satu *determiner* yang sering digunakan digolongkan menjadi cardinal dan ordinal number.

Cardinal number adalah angka untuk menyatakan jumlah (*quantity*), sedangkan *ordinal number* adalah angka untuk menyatakan tahapan (*sequence*).

Sebagai determiner, number diletakkan sebelum kata benda, sehingga membentuk frasa kata benda (*noun phrase*).

Beberapa contoh ordinal dan cardinal number dapat dilihat pada tabel sebagai berikut:

<i>Numeral</i>	<i>Contoh</i>	<i>Contoh Noun Phrase</i>
Cardinal Number	one, two, forty	one apple two apples forty apples
Ordinal Number	first, second, third	first time second opinion third grade

a. *General Ordinal (last, latter, next, previous, subsequent)*

General ordinal merupakan bagian dari ordinal number di mana kata tersebut tidak secara langsung merujuk pada angka.

Contoh:

- last week, last payment, last Monday
- latter days, latter stages, latter times
- next meeting, next time, next Saturday
- previous pages, previous experience, previous jobs
- subsequent developments, subsequent events, subsequent years

b. *Number Yang Bukan Determiner*

Number yang bukan berfungsi sebagai determiner, melainkan sebagai bagian dari kata benda, diletakkan sebelum kata benda dalam rangka membentuk *noun phrase*. Pada kondisi tersebut, *number*, yang berfungsi sebagai *head* pada frasa kata benda, dapat memiliki *determiner*.

Contoh:

- The three of us (The = determiner, three = noun)
- The first of many (The = determiner, first = noun)

Penjelasan selengkapnya mengenai *determiner* dapat dilihat di Bab 11 poin H.

P. BENTUK -ING DAN -ED

(1)	Kata kerja yang berakhiran -e	(a)	hope	hoping	hoped	Bentuk -ing: Bila kata kerja berakhir dengan -e, hilangkan -e dan beri imbuhan -ing Bentuk -ed: Bila kata kerja berakhir dengan -e, hanya tambahkan -d.
			date	dating	dated	
			injure	injuring	injured	
(2)	Kata kerja yang berakhir dengan huruf vokal atau konsonan	Kata kerja satu suku kata				
		(b)	stop	stopping	stopped	1 vokal → 2 konsonan
			rob	robbing	robbed	
			beg	begging	begged	
		(c)	rain	raining	rained	2 vokal → 1 konsonan
			fool	fooling	fooled	
			dream	dreaming	dreamed	
		Kata kerja dua suku kata				
		(d)	listen	listening	listened	Penekanan di suku kata pertama → 1 konsonan
			offer	offering	offered	
open	opening		opened			
(e)	begin	beginning	(began)	Penekanan di suku kata kedua → 2 konsonan		
	prefer	preferring	preferred			
	control	controlling	controlled			
(3)	Kata kerja yang berakhir dengan dua konsonan	(f)	start	starting	started	Jika katanya berakhir dengan dua konsonan, tambahkan saja akhirannya.
			fold	folding	folded	
			demand	demanding	demanded	

(4)	Kata kerja yang berakhir dengan -y	(g)	enjoy	enjoying	enjoyed	Jika -y is diawali huruf vokal, -y tidak berubah
			pray	praying	prayed	
			buy	buying	(bought)	
		(h)	study	studying	studied	Jika -y diawali konsonan: Bentuk -ing: -y tidak berubah, tambahkan -ing. Bentuk -ed: -y berubah menjad -t, tambahkan -ed.
			try	trying	tried	
			reply	replying	replied	
(5)	Kata kerja yang berakhir dengan -ie	(i)	die	dying	died	Bentuk -ing: Ubah -ie menjadi -y, tambah -ing.
			lie	lying	lied	
			tie	tying	tied	Bentuk -ed: tambahkan -d.

* Pengecualian: Jika kata kerja berakhir dengan -ee, -e yang terakhir tidak berubah: *seeing, agreeing, freeing*.

** Pengecualian: -w dan -x tidak digandakan: *plow = plowed, fix = fixed*.

Q. SEBAB DAN AKIBAT: SO DAN SUCH

a. Sebab dan Akibat: So

So digunakan sebelum kata sifat atau kata keterangan dan diikuti oleh "that". *So clause* menggambarkan sebab, *that clause* menggambarkan akibat.

SEBAB				AKIBAT			
S	V	so	adverb adjective	that	S	V	
She	got up	so	late	that	she	missed	her bus
The music	was	so	loud	that	we	couldn't talk	

Contoh:

Salah : He is so slow as he never gets to class on time.

Benar : He is so slow that he never gets to class on time.

Salah : Preparing frozen foods is too easy that anyone can do it.

Benar : Preparing frozen foods is so easy that anyone can do it.

b. Sebab dan Akibat: Such

Such menggambarkan sebab sedangkan *that* menggambarkan akibat.

SEBAB						AKIBAT		
S	V	Such	a	adjective	count noun (singular)	that	S	V
It	was	such	a	hot	day	that	we	went out

Atau : It was so hot a day that we went out.

Hindari penggunaan *so* kecuali *such* sebelum *a*, juga hindari penghilangan *a* dari pola kalimat.

SEBAB					AKIBAT			
S	V	such	adjective	count noun (plural)/ uncount noun	that	S	V	
These	are	such	along	assignments	that	I	can't finish	Them
This	is	such	good	news	that	I	will call	Them

Contoh:

Salah : It is so nice weather that I would like to go to the beach.

Benar : It is such a nice weather that I would like to go to the beach.

Salah : We had so a small lunch that I m hungry already.

Benar : We had such a small lunch that I m hungry already.

Atau

We had so small a lunch that I m hungry already

R. KELEBIHAN: **TOO**

Too berarti “terlalu/berlebihan”, *too clause* menggambarkan sebab. *Infinitive* menggambarkan akibat.

SEBAB			AKIBAT
	Too	Adjective	Infinitive
This tea is	too	hot	to drink

Hindari penggunaan *so* atau *such a* selain *too* sebelum kata sifat bila diikuti *an infinitive*.

Contoh:

Salah : Ralph is such a young to retire.

Benar : Ralph is too young to retire.

Salah : It is too cold go swimming.

Benar : It is too cold to go swimming.

S. PENEKANAN: **VERY**

Very dipakai untuk menekankan maksud. *Very* biasanya tidak mendahului sebuah klausa atau *infinitive* yang menggambarkan akibat.

			very	adjective
This	tea	is	very	hot

Contoh:

Salah : We went out to eat because we are too hungry.

Benar : We went out to eat because we were very hungry.

Salah : Darlene says that the courts are so lenient.

Benar : Darlene says that the courts are very lenient.

T. KATA SIFAT + KATA KERJA PENGINDRAAN (*VERB OF THE SENSE*)

Kata sifat, bukan kata kerja, digunakan setelah kata kerja pengindraan. Berikut ini adalah contoh kata kerja pengindraan:

feel sound
look taste
smell

S	V	Adjective	
I	felt	bad	about the mistake

Hindari penggunaan kata keterangan kecuali kata sifat setelah kata kerja pengindraan.

Contoh:

Salah : We love to go to the country in the spring because the wild flowers smell so sweetly.

Benar : We love to go to the country in the spring because the wild flowers smell so sweet.

Salah : Although the medicine taste badly, it seems to help my condition.

Benar : Although the medicine tastes bad, it seems to help my condition.

13

COMPARATIVE

A. PENGERTIAN *COMPARATIVE DEGREE*

Comparative degree adalah jenis kedua dari *degrees of comparison* yang menyatakan perbandingan tingkat lebih.

Comparative degree menyatakan bahwa sifat atau keterangan suatu benda lebih daripada benda yang lainnya. Sebagai contoh: Benda A lebih tinggi daripada Benda B, Benda B lebih berat daripada Benda C, Benda C lebih mahal daripada Benda D, dan sebagainya.

B. RUMUS *COMPARATIVE DEGREE*

Ada dua macam rumus yang kita gunakan untuk menyatakan suatu *comparative degree*, antara lain adalah sebagai berikut:

Untuk kata sifat yang pendek atau terdiri dari satu suku kata, maka rumusnya adalah sebagai berikut:

Adjective + er + than

Beberapa contoh kata sifat pendek (satu suku kata) yang dapat kita gunakan dalam *comparative degree* misalnya sebagai berikut:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative	Arti
Clever	Cleverer	Cleverest	Pandai
Easy	Easier	Easiest	Mudah
Fast	Faster	Fastest	Cepat
Hard	Harder	Hardest	Keras
Happy	Happier	Happiest	Bahagia
Small	Smaller	Smallest	Kecil
Etc.			

Sedangkan untuk kata sifat yang panjang atau lebih dari satu suku kata, maka rumusnya adalah sebagai berikut:

More + Adjective + than

Beberapa contoh kata sifat yang lebih dari satu suku kata antara lain sebagai berikut:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative	Arti
Beautiful	More Beautiful	The Most Beautiful	Cantik
Careful	More Careful	The Most Careful	Hati-hati/ saksama
Difficult	More Difficult	The Most Difficult	Sulit
Expensive	More Expensive	The Most Expensive	Mahal
Important	More Important	The Most Important	Penting
Interesting	More Interesting	The Most Interesting	Menarik
Etc.			

Berikut ini adalah beberapa contoh *comparative degree* baik untuk menyatakan sifat suatu benda, maupun untuk menyatakan sebuah keterangan.

Contoh *comparative degree* dengan rumus "**Adjective + er + than**"

- She is happier than I am.
(Dia lebih bahagia daripada saya)
- He learns English harder than I do.
(Dia belajar bahasa Inggris lebih keras daripada saya.)
- She went to school earlier than they did.
(Dia pergi ke sekolah lebih pagi daripada mereka.)

Contoh *comparative degree* dengan rumus "**More + Adjective + than**"

- This car is more expensive than that one
- His house is more beautiful than mine
- Yanti learns English more seriously than I do

Dalam praktik kita menggunakan bahasa Inggris, kita masih dipengaruhi oleh bahasa kita sendiri. Contohnya dalam menerjemahkan "Sama dengan saya", kita cenderung menerjemahkannya menjadi "same with", yang tidak lazim dalam tata bahasa Inggris.

Lantas bagaimana sebenarnya penggunaan kata *the same* dalam bahasa Inggris yang benar? Berikut penjelasan tentang penggunaan kata *the same*:

1. *The same*

- These two coins look **the same**. (Dua koin ini tampak sama.)
- Although we look the same, we are not brothers.
- The same problem may crop up later.

2. *The same as*

- Your reason is **the same as** mine. (Alasanmu sama dengan (alasan) saya.)
- Jakarta does not have **the same** number of population **as** Bandung does.
- Make sure your answer is not exactly the same as hers.

3. *The same to you = sama-sama (jawaban dari ucapan kepada Anda)*

- Happy New Year, John. **The same to you**, Tom.

4. *All the same = Tetap saja, walau bagaimanapun*

- I know you are older than he is but you should apologize **all the same**. (Saya tahu Anda lebih tua tapi Anda harus minta maaf walau bagaimanapun.)
- I'll do it all the same. (Tetap saja saya akan melakukan itu.)

5. *It's all the same to = Tidak masalah bagi ... (apa pun keputusan yang diambil)*

- **It's all the same to** me. (Tidak masalah buatku)
- **If it's all the same to** you, I'll do it my way. (Kalau tidak masalah buatmu, saya akan melakukannya dengan cara saya.)

6. *All the same = namun demikian*

- I won't be in financial problem, but all the same, I am careful with my money.
(Saya tidak akan mengalami kesulitan keuangan. Namun demikian, saya tetap berhati-hati dengan uang saya.)
- She is very rich, but all the same, she is not arrogant.

Demikian beberapa penggunaan *the same*. Mudah-mudahan bermanfaat dan menambah perbendaharaan kata kita.

EXERCISE:

"Same ... as/same ... that"

1. My mother has the same car my father.
2. I think that your sister is the same Mariah Carey.
3. This bike is the same you bought me.
4. The one who did that thing is the same person did it a week ago.
5. John is the same clever little boy his father.
6. This room is the same room was used last year for the conference.
7. The man we met yesterday in Paris is the same man we saw in the USA
8. This dress is the same the dress I wanted to buy last week.
9. This computer is the same that one.
10. Mum, this computer is the same computer you bought me.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|---------|----------|
| 1. as | 6. that |
| 2. as | 7. that |
| 3. that | 8. as |
| 4. that | 9. as |
| 5. as | 10. that |

C. PENGGUNAAN *THE SAME, SIMILAR, DAN DIFFERENT*

Kata *the same, similar, dan different* digunakan untuk mengekspresikan kesamaan/kemiripan/ perbedaan antara dua atau lebih benda tanpa menunjukkan tingkat kesamaan atau perbedaannya.

Baik *the same, similar, atau different* digunakan sebagai kata sifat/*adjective*.

Berikut ini beberapa ciri yang mengikuti penggunaan ketiga kata ini:

- **Same** selalu didahului **the**.
- **The same** diikuti **as**.
- **Similar** diikuti **to**.
- **Different** diikuti **from**.

Contoh:

- Will and Bob have *the same* cars.
- Will and Bob have *similar* cars.
- Will and Bob have *different* cars.

- Their cars are *the same*.
- Their cars are *similar*.
- Their cars are *different*.

- This car is *the same as* that one.
- This car is *similar to* that one.
- This car is *different from* that one.

Dalam penggunaan *the same* dimungkinkan juga untuk menempatkan kata benda di antara *the same* dan *as*:

- His car is *the same **type*** as my car.
- He is *the same **age*** as my father.
- Ronaldo has *the same **position*** as Lionel Messi.

D. PENGGUNAAN LIKE, ALIKE, DAN LIKELY

Pada sesi ini kita akan membahas kata *like*, *alike*, dan *likely* yang sering kita jumpai pada kalimat-kalimat dalam bahasa Inggris. Mudah-mudahan contoh-contoh kalimat yang diberikan akan mempermudah pemahaman kita semua.

a. Like

Like mempunyai fungsi sebagai kata kerja dan kata sifat. Sebagai kata kerja *like* berarti "suka" atau "senang". *Like* juga sering digunakan dengan *would* sehingga menjadi *would like* yang artinya "mau".

- Lutfi **likes** swimming on the beach. Atau bisa juga, Lutfi **likes** to swim on the beach. (Lutfi suka berenang di pantai.)
- Do you like coffee without sugar? (Anda suka kopi tanpa gula?)
- She doesn't **like** you. (Dia tidak menyukai Anda.)
- I'd **like** to go now. (Saya ingin pergi sekarang.)
- **Would** you **like** some iced tea? (Anda ingin es teh?)
- We **wouldn't like** to be here without you. (Kami tidak suka berada di sini tanpamu.)

Like sebagai kata sifat yang artinya "sama" atau "serupa".

- You and your brother are **like**. (Kamu dan saudaramu serupa.)
- I'll see you in another **like** occasion. (Saya akan bertemu Anda di kesempatan lain yang sama.)
- This isn't **like** the book you showed me. (Buku ini tidak seperti/sama dengan yang kamu tunjukkan pada saya.)

Like sebagai kata sambung (*conjunction*) yang artinya “seolah-olah, seperti, bagai, bagaikan”.

- It seems **like** we'll be there on time. (Sepertinya kita akan tiba di sana tepat waktu.)
- To ride fast **like** she does requires a serious training. (Untuk bisa berkendara dengan cepat seperti dia membutuhkan latihan yang serius.)
- You look very sad **like** you are having a lot of problems. (Kamu tampak sangat sedih seolah-olah kamu sedang tertimpa banyak masalah.)

Like sebagai kata depan (*preposition*) yang artinya “seperti, laksana, sebagai”.

- Don't forget to prepare things **like** a pencil, a pen, an eraser. (Jangan lupa mempersiapkan hal-hal seperti pensil, pulpen, penghapus.)
- We used to live **like** royalty. (Dulu kami pernah hidup seperti keluarga raja.)
- There are a few exercises you can do easily—like jogging or swimming. (Ada beberapa latihan yang bisa kamu lakukan dengan mudah—seperti *jogging* atau berenang.)

Like sebagai kata benda (*noun*) yang artinya “kesukaan”.

- I have more likes than dislikes. (Saya punya lebih banyak kesukaan daripada ketidaksukaan.)
- What are your likes? (Apa kesukaan-kesukaanmu?)

b. **Alike**

Sebagai kata sifat berarti “mirip, serupa”.

- You and your younger brother look **alike** to me. (Kamu dan saudaramu tampak serupa bagiku).
- These two cats are alike. (Kedua kucing ini mirip.)

Sebagai kata keterangan berarti “tidak membedakan, dengan cara yang sama, sama-sama”.

- You should treat your customers **alike**. (Kamu harus memperlakukan semua langganamu dengan cara yang sama.)
- Mary loves you two **alike**. (Cinta Mary terhadap kalian berdua sama.)
- Lufti and Fitri **alike** expect a better treatment. (Lufti dan Fitri sama-sama mengharapkan perlakuan yang lebih baik.)

c. Likely

Sebagai kata sifat berarti “mungkin, kemungkinan, cenderung, tampak cocok.”

- It's a likely house to stay in. (Sebuah rumah yang tampaknya cocok untuk tempat tinggal.)
- It's likely to rain today. (Kemungkinan akan turun hujan hari ini.)
- I think you are a likely candidate. (Saya rasa Anda calon yang bisa berhasil.)
Sebagai kata keterangan berarti “mungkin, kemungkinan”.
- I'll likely stay home this afternoon. (Kemungkinan saya akan di rumah saja sore ini.)

EXERCISE:

Choose the correct answer from the questions below!

- John and Paul are so ... that people are always confusing them.
 - alike
 - unlike
 - like
 - dislike
- Vegetarians ... meat.
 - like
 - unlike
 - alike
 - dislike
- ... Abu Dhabi Emirate, Dubai does not possess large oil reserves.
 - like
 - unlike
 - dislike
 - alike

4. My ... of seafood started last year when I became very ill after eating prawns.
- A. dislike
 - B. like
 - C. alike
 - D. unlike
5. It is wonderful to meet ... minded people.
- A. like
 - B. unlike
 - C. alike
 - D. dislike
6. I treat my friends well and expect to be treated by them in a ... manner.
- A. alike
 - B. like
 - C. dislike
 - D. unlike
7. I ... French wine more than Italian wine.
- A. unlike
 - B. alike
 - C. like
 - D. likely
8. Although they are called 'identical twins', they are not totally
- A. dislike
 - B. like
 - C. alike
 - D. unlike
9. I ... any form of hunting, I really feel sorry for the animals.
- A. dislike
 - B. unlike
 - C. alike
 - D. like
10. ... Paris, Milan is a world fashion centre.
- A. unlike
 - B. like
 - C. alike
 - D. dislike

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. A | 6. B |
| 2. D | 7. C |
| 3. B | 8. C |
| 4. A | 9. A |
| 5. A | 10. B |

E. DIFFERENT FROM, DIFFERENT THAN, DIFFERENT TO

Apakah ada perbedaan antara ekspresi *different from*, *different than* dan *different to*? Apakah salah satu di antara ketiganya lebih benar dibandingkan yang lain?

Dalam praktiknya, *different from* adalah ekspresi yang paling sering digunakan dibandingkan yang lain, baik di *British* dan *American English*:

We want to demonstrate that this red onion is different from the regular one. (British English).

This book is totally different from other books that he's done. (American English).

Different than biasanya digunakan dalam *American English*:
Teenagers surely want to look different than their parents.

Different to paling umum digunakan dalam *British English*:
In this respect the Royal Academy is no different to any other major museum.

Ada beberapa orang mengatakan bahwa *different than* adalah bentuk yang salah, tapi menurut **Oxford Dictionaries**, tidak ada alasan yang riil dari pandangan ini. Hanya terdapat perbedaan yang kecil di antara ketiga ekspresi di atas.

F. MANY DAN MUCH

Many dan *much* adalah kata yang dapat digunakan sebagai *determiner* atau kata ganti ketika membicarakan kuantitas. Sebagai *determiner*, *many* diikuti kata benda dapat dihitung atau kata benda jamak sedangkan *much* diikuti kata benda tidak dapat dihitung atau kata benda tunggal. Sebagai subjek kalimat *many* dipasangkan dengan kata kerja jamak, sedangkan *much* dengan kata kerja tunggal.

Fungsi	Contoh Kalimat <i>Many/Much</i>
Determiner	Many rooms are available. (Banyak ruangan tersedia.)
	They don't have much work experience . (Mereka tidak punya banyak pengalaman kerja.)
Pronoun	Many are available. (Banyak yang tersedia.)
	They don't have much . (Mereka tidak punya banyak.)

a. *How Many* dan *How Much*

How many bersama kata benda dapat dihitung atau kata benda jamak, dan *how much* bersama kata benda tidak dapat dihitung atau kata benda tunggal dapat berfungsi untuk membentuk pertanyaan.

Many/much dapat pula diikuti preposisi "of" ketika kata tersebut diikuti kata sandang (*a, an, the*), kata kepemilikan (*your, his, her, its*), atau kata ganti (*them, us, you*).

Contoh:

- How many children will you have? (Berapa banyak anak yang akan kamu miliki?)
- How much sugar should I add to your tea? (Berapa banyak gula yang harus saya tambahkan ke tehmu?)
- How much does it cost to rent a large SUV car? (Berapa biaya rental mobil SUV besar?)
- How much of your income do you save? (Berapa banyak pendapatanmu yang kamu tabung?)
- How many of the couples are still able to tolerate each other? (Berapa banyak pasangan yang masih bisa saling bertoleransi?)
- How many of them has finished a Bachelor's Degree? (Berapa banyak dari mereka yang telah mendapatkan gelar Sarjana?)

b. *As Many/Much as*

As many as atau *as much as* dapat digunakan ketika ingin membicarakan kuantitas suatu kata benda dan membandingkannya dengan sesuatu yang kurang lebih setara. Khusus *many*, tidak hanya dapat berfungsi sebagai *determiner* atau kata ganti, melainkan juga kata keterangan.

Contoh:

- Take as many as you need. (Ambil sebanyak yang kamu perlukan.)
- He should drink as much as eight glass of water a day. (Dia seharusnya minum sebanyak delapan gelas air sehari.)
- You can bring as many friends as you want. (Kamu bisa membawa teman sebanyak yang kamu mau.)
- I try to make as much money as he can. (Saya mencoba untuk menghasilkan uang sebanyak yang dia dapat.)

EXERCISE:**Choose the correct answer for the question below!**

1. Rita can walk ... than you think.
A. further
B. more far
C. furthest
2. I hope tomorrow will be ... than today.
A. best
B. good
C. better
3. He runs as ... as molasses in January.
A. slow
B. slowest
C. slower
4. The modern wind turbine works the
A. efficiently
B. most efficiently
C. more efficiently
5. He has the ... house among all his friends.
A. bigger
B. big
C. biggest
6. I have no idea why he spoke ... than before.
A. gentlier
B. gently
C. more gently

7. Krystal is as ... as her sister.
 - A. most beautiful
 - B. more beautiful
 - C. beautiful

8. If only I could find the ... path from node x to node y.
 - A. easiest
 - B. most easy
 - C. easier

9. The man treated his stepchildren ... than animals.
 - A. worst
 - B. worse
 - C. badly

10. Your spicy ramen noodle is ... than mine.
 - A. hot
 - B. hottest
 - C. hotter

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. A | 6. C |
| 2. C | 7. C |
| 3. A | 8. A |
| 4. B | 9. B |
| 5. C | 10. C |

G. KATA BENDA KUALITAS (QUALITY NOUN)

Kata benda kualitas digunakan dalam perbandingan khusus (*comparison of characteristic*).

Contoh:

age	price
color	size
height	style
length	weight

noun	V	the same	quality noun	as	noun
She	is	the same	age	as	John

Hindari *to, than*, atau *like* kecuali *as*. Hindari penggunaan kata sifat kualitas selain kata benda kualitas setelah *the same*

Contoh:

Salah : The gold chain that Edith saw is same weight as yours.

Benar : The gold chain that Edith saw is the same weight as yours.

Salah : Is this thread the same color the cloth?

Benar : Is this thread the same color as the cloth?

H. KATA SIFAT KUALITAS (QUALITY ADJECTIVE)

Kata sifat kualitas digunakan dalam perbandingan dengan kata-kata khusus.

Contoh:

big	expensive	light	small
cheap	hard	little	tall
clear	heavy	long	young
cold	hot	old	
easy	large	short	

noun	V	as	adjective	as	noun
Sheld	is	as	old	as	John

Contoh:

Salah : Mary's job is as hard than Bill's

Benar : Mary's job is as hard as Bill's

Salah : College Station is not as big Austin.

Benar : College Station is not **as big as** Austin.

I. DIFFERENT FROM DAN DIFFERENT

Different from dan *different* mempunyai arti yang sama, tetapi *different from* digunakan di antara dua benda yang dibandingkan dan *different* digunakan setelah dua kata benda atau sebuah kata benda jamak.

Noun		Different from	Noun
This coat	is	different from	that one

Noun		Noun		Different
This coat	and	that one	are	different

Noun (plural)		Different
These coats	are	different

Contoh:

Salah : The watch in the window is a little different this one.

Benar : The watch in the window is a little different from this one.
atau

The watch in the window and this one are a little different.

Salah : The tour packages that we offer are different than most tours.

Benar : The tour packages that we offer are different from most tours.
atau

The tour packages that we offer and most tours are different.

J. TO DIFFER FROM

Differ adalah sebuah kata kerja dan harus berubah bentuk supaya sesuai dengan subjek.

	Differ	From	
This one	differs	from	the rest

Contoh:

Salah : Customs differ one region of the country to another.

Benar : Customs differ from one region of the country to another
atau

Customs are different from one region of the country to another.

Salah : Do you have anything a little different to these?

Benar : Do you have anything a little different from these ?
atau

Do you have anything that differs a little from these.

K. ANGKA KELIPATAN (*MULTIPLE NUMBERS*)

Contoh *multiple numbers*:

half four times

twice five times

three times ten times

	Multiple	as	Much/ Many	as	
Fresh fruit costs	twice	as	much	as	canned fruit
We have	half	as	many	as	we need

Hindari penggunaan *so* selain *as* setelah *a multiple*, hindari penggunaan *more than* selain *as much as* atau *as many as*, juga hindari penggunaan *multiple* setelah *as much* dan *as many*.

Contoh:

Salah : The price was very reasonable; I would gladly have paid three times more than he asked.

Benar : The price was very reasonable; I would gladly have paid three times as much as he asked.

Benar : Bob found a job that paid twice as much as he made working at the library.

L. *MORE THAN* DAN *LESS THAN*

More than atau *less than* dipakai sebelum angka spesifik untuk menggambarkan suatu perkiraan yang bisa lebih atau kurang dari jumlahnya.

Hindari pemakaian *more* atau *less* tanpa *than* dalam perkiraan, hindari pemakaian *as* selain *than*.

Contoh:

Salah : More one hundred people came to the meeting.

Benar : More than one hundred people came to the meeting.

Salah : We have lived in the United States for as less than seven years.

Benar : We have lived in the United States for less than seven years.

M. AS MANY AS

As many as dipakai sebelum sejumlah angka untuk menggambarkan suatu perkiraan yang tidak memunculkan jumlah tersebut.

Perkiraan perbandingan dengan *as much as* juga dipakai sebelum angka spesifik yang merujuk pada berat, jarak, atau uang.

Contoh:

as much as ten pounds

as much as two miles

as much as twenty dollars

Contoh lain:

Salah : We expect as many as thirty people to come.

Benar : We expect as many as thirty people to come.

Salah : There are as many fifteen thousand students attending summer school.

Benar : There are as many as fifteen thousand students attending summer school.

14

PREPOSITIONS

A. PENGERTIAN PREPOSISI

Preposisi (kata depan) adalah kata yang tidak dapat berubah bentuknya dan biasanya diletakkan di depan kata benda atau pada kata benda (*noun-equivalent*, termasuk kata ganti) untuk memperlihatkan hubungan tertentu dengan kata-kata lain dalam kalimat. Kata benda atau padan kata benda itu disebut objek:

Contoh:

I put the book **on** the table. Saya meletakkan buku di atas meja itu.
Kata **on** dalam kalimat tersebut ialah kata depan (preposisi).

Kata keterangan, ungkapan, atau anak kalimat kata benda yang dapat dipakai sebagai objek untuk preposisi.

a. Kata Keterangan sebagai Objek

Beberapa kata keterangan waktu atau tempat dapat dipakai sebagai objek untuk preposisi yang menunjukkan hubungan waktu atau tempat.

Contoh:

He has studied hard from then till now.
(Dia telah belajar giat dari waktu itu sampai sekarang.)

b. Ungkapan sebagai Objek

Ungkapan yang bersifat kata keterangan (yaitu ungkapan yang tidak berakhir dengan kata depan atau kata sambung) dapat dipakai sebagai objek untuk preposisi.

Contoh:

She didn't return till about a week afterwards.
(Dia tidak kembali sampai kira-kira seminggu kemudian.)

c. Anak Kalimat Kata Benda (*noun clause*) sebagai Objek

Noun clause (anak kalimat yang melakukan pekerjaan kata benda) dapat menjadi objek untuk preposisi dengan cara yang sama seperti kata benda dan kata ganti.

Contoh:

My departure will depend upon whether I get leave or not.

(Keberangkatanku akan bergantung pada apakah aku mendapat izin cuti atau tidak.)

B. BENTUK PREPOSISI

a. Preposisi Tunggal (*Simple Preposition*)

- *after* sesudah
- *at* di, pada
- *by* oleh, pada, dengan, di dekat
- *for* untuk, selama, bagi, karena
- *from* dari
- *of* dari, tentang, karena
- *over* di atas
- *on* di atas, pada
- *in* di, di dalam
- *through* melalui
- *to* ke, kepada
- *off* lepas dari, jauh
- *till/until* sampai, hingga
- *under* di bawah
- *up* ke atas, ke
- *with* dengan, pada
dan sebagainya.

b. Preposisi Ganda (*Double Preposition*)

Preposisi ganda dipakai bilamana preposisi tunggal tidak cukup untuk menyatakan pengertian.

- *into* ke dalam
- *onto* di atas
- *from under* dari bawah
- *from among* dari antara
- *from off* lepas dari
- *from within* dari dalam
- *over against* bersandar di/kepada
dan sebagainya.

c. Preposisi Gabungan (*Compound preposition*)

Preposisi gabungan dibentuk dari kata benda, kata sifat, atau kata keterangan yang digabungkan dengan preposisi "be" (= *by*) atau "a" (= *on*)

- *across/on cross* di seberang
- *long* sepanjang
- *amidst/on middle* di tengah-tengah
- *behind* di belakang
- *about* di sekitar, tentang
- *above* di atas
- *before* di muka
- *amongst* di antara (lebih dari dua)
- *below* di bawah
- *beneath* di bawah
- *beside* di sebelah, di samping
- *besides* selain
- *between* di antara dua
- *beyond* di luar
- *but* kecuali
- *within* dalam
- *without* tanpa

d. Preposisi Partisipel (*Participial preposition*)

- *pending* seraya menantikan
- *during* selama, pada waktu
- *notwithstanding* meskipun
- *past* lewat
- *except* kecuali
- *save* kecuali
- *considering* mengingat
- *concerning* mengenai
- *regarding* mengenai
- *owing to* karena

e. Preposisi Frase (*Phrase preposition*)

Dua atau lebih kata yang biasanya disusun dalam rangkaian kata dan yang berakhir dengan preposisi tunggal bisa disebut sebagai *phrase preposition*.

- *because of* disebabkan oleh, karena
- *by means of* dengan memakai
- *by reason of* karena, berhubungan dengan

- *for the purpose of* dengan maksud
- *for the sake of* demi
- *in consequence of* karena
- *in lieu of* sebagai pengganti
- *in place of* sebagai pengganti
- *in point of* tentang
- *in behalf of* untuk kepentingan
- *in the event of* kalau (sekiranya), dalam hal, bila
- *in the place of* sebagai pengganti
- *in view of* karena, mengingat
- *in front of* di muka
- *in opposition to* berlawanan dengan
- *in spite of* meskipun
- *instead of* sebagai pengganti, daripada
- *on account of* karena
- *on behalf of* atas nama
- *on the score of* karena
- *upon the subject of* tentang
- *with a view to* dengan maksud untuk
- *with reference to* berkenaan dengan
- *with regard to* berkenaan dengan, mengenai
- *with relation to* berkenaan dengan
- *with respect to* berkenaan dengan, mengenai
- *with the pupose of* dengan maksud

f. Preposisi Tersembunyi (*Disguised Preposition*)

Contoh : He has gone a-hunting.
(Dia telah pergi berburu.)

C. PEMAKAIAN PREPOSISI

a. Perbedaan Pemakaian Khusus Preposisi yang Sering Membingungkan

1. *At, in, (place = tempat)*

In biasanya dipakai di depan nama negara dan kota besar, atau di depan nama tempat saat seseorang berbicara.

At dipakai di depan nama kota kecil dan desa, atau pada waktu membicarakan suatu tempat yang jauh.

- I passed my holidays **at** Puncak.
(Aku melewati liburanku di Puncak.)
- He lives **in** London.
(Dia tinggal di London.)

2. *At, in, on (time = waktu)*

At dipakai untuk mengatakan waktu yang tepat, misalnya *at two o'clock, at dawn, at noon, at sunset, at midnight* dan sebagainya.

In dipakai dengan suatu bagian waktu, misalnya *in the morning, in June, in summer, in 1997, in the year 1997* dan sebagainya.

On dipakai dengan nama hari atau tanggal, misalnya *on Saturday, on August 10, on New Year's Day*, dan sebagainya.

- I usually get up **at** six o'clock.
(Saya biasanya bangun pada pukul enam.)
- He takes a walk **in** the afternoon.
(Dia berjalan-jalan pada sore hari.)
- The ship will arrive **on** Monday.
(Kapal itu akan tiba pada hari Senin.)

3. *At, for (price = harga)*

At dipakai jika jumlah uang yang sebenarnya tidak diberikan.

For dipakai jika jumlah uang yang sebenarnya disebutkan.

- I can not buy the goods **at** such a high price.
(Saya tidak dapat membeli barang itu dengan harga yang begitu tinggi.)
- He bought a book **for** ten dollars.
(Dia membeli buku dengan harga sepuluh dolar.)

4. *Beside, besides*

Beside berarti di samping, di sebelah.

Besides berarti di samping itu, selain.

- He came and sat **beside** me.
(Dia datang dan duduk di sebelah saya.)
- We study German **besides** English.
(Kami mempelajari bahasa Jerman selain bahasa Inggris.)

5. *Between, among*

Between dipakai untuk di antara dua orang.

Among lebih dari dua.

- I sat **between** the two of them.
(Saya duduk di antara mereka berdua.)
- Devide the apple **among** you three.
(Bagilah buah apel itu di antara kalian bertiga.)

6. *By, with*

With digunakan ketika:

- kita menggunakan sesuatu untuk melakukan sesuatu: *I paint the wall **with** brush.*
- kita menggabungkan seseorang untuk melakukan sesuatu: *Jimmy goes to school **with** his sister.*
- kita juga bisa menggunakan "with" untuk berarti "terhadap": *I quarrelled **with** my best friend.*

By berhubungan dengan pelaku, sedangkan **with** dengan alat yang dipakai.

- This book was written **by** me.
(Buku ini ditulis olehku.)
- This letter was written **with** a fountain pen.
(Surat ini ditulis dengan sebuah pena.)

7. *By, before, since*

Ketiganya digunakan untuk menunjukkan suatu batas tertentu.

- You must be back **by** five o'clock.
(Kamu harus kembali menjelang pukul lima.)
- She didn't get back **before** five o'clock.
(Dia tidak kembali sebelum pukul lima.)
- She has been here **since** five o'clock.
(Dia sudah berada di sini sejak pukul lima.)

8. *In, after*

- I will finish it **in** three hours.
(Saya akan menyelesaikannya dalam waktu tiga jam.)
- He died **after** a few days.
(Dia meninggal setelah beberapa hari.)

9. *In, into*

- She spent all the afternoon **in** her room.
(Dia menghabiskan sepanjang sore di dalam kamarnya.)
- She came **into** the room and sat down.
(Dia masuk ke dalam kamar dan duduk.)

10. *To, at*

To dipakai untuk menyatakan gerak dari satu tempat ke tempat lain, sedangkan **at** dipakai untuk menunjukkan posisi atau ketiadaan gerak.

- We come **to** school every morning.
(Kami datang ke sekolah setiap pagi.)
- Somebody is standing **at** the door.
(Seseorang sedang berdiri di pintu itu.)

11. *To, till*

To dipakai dengan jarak, dan **till** dengan waktu.

- We walked **to** the the tennis court and back.
(Kami berjalan ke lapangan tenis dan kembali.)
- I shall stay here **till** next week.
(Saya akan tinggal di sini sampai minggu depan.)

b. Perbedaan Pemakaian Umum Preposisi Menurut Apa yang Dinyatakan

1. Sebab atau alasan dinyatakan oleh *of, from, through, for, because of, in consequence of, atau owing to.*

Contoh:

- He died **of** cancer.
(Dia meninggal karena kanker.)
- He almost died **from** fatigue.
(Dia hampir meninggal karena kelelahan.)
- She couldn't speak **for** grief.
(Dia tidak dapat berbicara karena kesedihan.)
- **Owing to** bad health, he couldn't work.
(Karena kesehatan yang buruk, dia tidak dapat bekerja.)

2. Akibat dinyatakan oleh *preposisi to*.

Contoh:

- **To** our surprise, he wasn't successful.
(Mengherankan bagi kita, dia tidak berhasil.)
- The king has engaged in war **to** his ruin.
(Raja itu telah berperang sehingga mengakibatkan kejatuhannya.)

3. Kepunyaan dinyatakan oleh preposisi *of*, kecuali kalau akhiran kasus genetif dipakai untuk maksud ini.

Contoh:

The house **of** my uncle is very big.
(Rumah paman saya sangat besar.)

4. Pertukaran, atau fakta satu benda/makhluk yang disalahkirakan/ dikira benda/makhluk yang lain, dinyatakan oleh *for*.

Contoh:

She gave me two dollars **for** that book.
(Dia memberi kepadaku dua dolar sebagai pengganti buku itu.)

5. Substitusi/pengganti dinyatakan oleh ungkapan yang berpreposisi *instead of*, *in lieu of*, *in the place of*, dan kadang-kadang oleh preposisi *for*.

Contoh:

- You had better work **instead of** idling away your time.
(Lebih baik kamu bekerja daripada membuang-buang waktumu.)
- Pronouns are words used **instead of** nouns.
(Kata ganti adalah kata yang dipakai sebagai pengganti kata benda.)

6. Pertentangan atau perlawanan dinyatakan oleh *with* atau *against*, sedangkan tindakan setuju dinyatakan oleh *for*.

Contoh:

- He was deeply offended **with** me.
(Dia sangat marah kepadaku.)
- I did it **against** my better judgment.
(Kulakukan itu bertentangan dengan pertimbanganku yang lebih baik.)

- They acted **for** the public interest.
(Mereka berbuat demi kepentingan umum.)
7. Perbedaan atau kontras dinyatakan oleh *with, for, after, notwithstanding*, dan kadang-kadang oleh ungkapan seperti *in spite of*.

Contoh:

- **With** all his weight he isn't a strong man.
(Walaupun dia begitu berat dia tidaklah kuat.)
 - He is a good man, **for** all that.
(Sekalipun begitu, dia adalah orang baik.)
 - **After** all his labour, he has failed.
(Meskipun dia bekerja sangat keras, dia masih tetap gagal.)
8. Penyesuaian dinyatakan oleh *after* atau *to*.

Contoh:

- He's a man **after** my own heart.
(Dia pria yang cocok dengan perasaan hatiku.)
 - This coffee is quite **to** my taste.
(Kopi ini cocok dengan selera.)
9. Pengecualian dinyatakan oleh *except, but, save*.

Contoh:

- All failed **except** him.
(Semua gagal kecuali dia.)
 - All **but** you three may go.
(Semua boleh pergi kecuali kalian bertiga.)
 - All **save** one were successful.
(Semua berhasil kecuali satu orang.)
10. Gambaran aposisi dinyatakan oleh *of*.

Contoh:

- The city **of** Jakarta. (Kota Jakarta)
 - The island **of** Bali. (Pulau Bali)
11. Material, isi, dan sifat dinyatakan oleh preposisi *of*.

Contoh:

- Tables are usually made **of** wood.
(Meja biasanya dibuat dari kayu.)
- He drinks a cup **of** coffee every morning.
(Dia minum secangkir kopi setiap pagi.)

- He is a man **of** good character.
(Dia seorang pria berwatak baik.)
12. Penilaian sesuatu atau suku (bunga) dinyatakan oleh preposisi *at*.
- Contoh:**
- This must be done **at** any rate.
(Bagaimanapun juga, hal ini harus dilakukan.)
 - He lends out money **at** three per cent.
(Dia meminjamkan uang dengan bunga tiga persen.)
13. Takaran atau ukuran dinyatakan oleh preposisi *by*.
- Contoh:**
Don't judge of a man **by** his words or by his looks.
(Jangan menilai orang menurut perkataan atau rupanya.)
14. Batas atau taraf dinyatakan oleh preposisi *to* atau *up to*.
- Contoh:**
- He paid his debts **to** the last cent.
(Dia membayar hutangnya sampai lunas sama sekali.)
 - He remained faithful **to** the last.
(Dia tetap setia sampai akhir.)
15. Pokok persoalan, perihal dinyatakan oleh *of*, *on*, *about*, *concerning*, *as to*, *regarding*, *in regard to*, *with regard to*, *in respect to*.
- Contoh:**
- This is a book **about** proverbs.
(Ini adalah buku tentang peribahasa.)
 - I have no preference **as to** color.
(Perihal warna, bagiku tidak menjadi soal.)
 - I have something to say **in respect to** our business.
(Ada sesuatu yang ingin kukatakan tentang bisnis kita.)
16. Kesimpulan, alasan (motif), dan sumber dinyatakan oleh preposisi *from*.
- Contoh:**
- **From** what I have seen of him, he seems to be a good man.
(Menurut pengamatan saya terhadapnya, sepertinya dia orang baik.)
 - He did it **from** ignorance.
(Dia melakukannya karena ketidaktahuan.)

- He is sprung **from** a noble ancestry.
(Dia berasal dari keturunan bangsawan.)

17. Arah atau tujuan dinyatakan oleh preposisi *at, on, upon, for, dan to*.

Contoh:

- The troops marched **on** the town.
(Pasukan itu berbaris menuju kota.)
- He aimed his gun **at** the wild boar.
(Dia membidikkan senapannya kepada babi hutan itu.)

18. Penunjukkan kepada maksud, pokok, atau hal khusus tertentu dinyatakan oleh *of* dan *in*, dan preposisi ini biasanya didahului oleh kata sifat tertentu.

Contoh:

- He's free **of** responsibility.
(Dia bebas dari tanggung jawab.)
- He's honest **in** word and deed.
(Dia jujur dalam ucapan dan perbuatan.)

19. Perimbangan dinyatakan oleh *to* dan perbandingan dinyatakan oleh *than*.

Contoh:

- I will bet you five **to** one on his success.
(Saya berani bertaruh lima lawan satu untuk keberhasilannya.)
- He did nothing else **than** laugh.
(Selain tertawa sia tidak melakukan apa pun yang lain.)

20. Pekerjaan atau jabatan dinyatakan oleh *at, in, atau about*.

Contoh:

- He is **at** his old tricks again.
(Da mulai lagi dengan tipu muslihatnya seperti dulu.)
- He engaged himself **in** business.
(Dia melakukan usaha dagang.)
- You may go **about** your business.
(Kamu boleh melakukan usaha sendiri.)

21. Pengangkatan sumpah dinyatakan oleh preposisi *by*.

Contoh:

- I swear **by** the name of God.
(Saya bersumpah demi nama Tuhan.)

22. Persiapan untuk menghadapi peristiwa tertentu yang akan segera datang dinyatakan oleh *against*.

Contoh:

Get all the men together **against** the arrival of the chief.

(Panggilah semua anak buah bersama-sama untuk menyambut kedatangan sang kepala.)

23. Penyebutan sebagian tertentu seperti ternyata dari keseluruhan dinyatakan oleh *of*.

Contoh:

Many **of** the wounded did not recover.

(Banyak di antara mereka yang terluka tidak sembuh.)

24. Perbedaan orang atau benda yang satu dari yang lain, dinyatakan dengan *from*.

Contoh:

He can tell apples **from** peaches.

(Dia dapat membedakan buah apel dari buah persik.)

25. Pemisahan atau kenyataan bahwa benda yang satu berada di luar atau terlepas dari yang lain, kadang dinyatakan oleh *from*, *of*, atau *off* dan kadang oleh *out of*.

Contoh:

- He's away **from** home.
(Dia berada jauh dari rumah.)
- He was within an inch **of** being killed by a random shot.
(Ia hampir saja terbunuh oleh tembakan sembarangan.)
- We are **off** duty today, but shall on duty again tomorrow.
(Hari ini kami bebas tugas, tetapi besok akan bertugas lagi.)

26. Keunggulan dinyatakan oleh *above* dan sifat yang rendah atau ketidakpatuhan dinyatakan oleh *beneath*.

Contoh:

- He is **above** suspicion.
(Dia bebas dari kecurigaan.)
- His conduct is **beneath** contempt.
(Kelakuannya terlalu hina.)

27. Wibawa atau kekuasaan dinyatakan oleh *over* dan penaklukan atau keadaan di bawah kekuasaan atau pengaruh dinyatakan oleh *under*.

Contoh:

- Since you have been placed **over** me, I must obey.
(Karena kedudukan Anda berada di atas saya, saya harus patuh.)
- She is quite **under** your thumb.
(Dia betul-betul berada di bawah kekuasaanmu.)

D. MASALAH YANG TIMBUL DALAM PREPOSISI:

a. Tempat: *Between* dan *Among*

Contoh:

Salah : The choice is between a vanilla, chocolate, and strawberry ice cream cone.

Benar : The choice is among a vanilla, chocolate, and strawberry ice cream cone.

Salah : Rick and his wife can usually solve their problem among them.

Benar : Rick and his wife can usually solve their problem between them.

b. Tempat: *In*, *On*, *At*

In : country, state, province, county, city, a corner (of a room), a room, a building, a park, a car, a boat

On : street, street corner, coast, river, a ship, a train, a plane

At : number

Contoh:

Salah : Cliff can live on Yellowstone National Park because he is a park ranger.

Benar : Cliff can live in Yellowstone National Park because he is a park ranger.

Salah : Is Domino's Pizza in Tenth Street?

Benar : Is Domino's Pizza on Tenth Street?

Benar : We live in the United States in North Carolina in Jacksonville on the East Coast on New River at 2600 River Road.

c. Waktu: In, On, At

In, on, dan at mempunyai arti yang sama, tapi dipakai dalam waktu yang berbeda. Secara umum *in* dipakai sebelum *a large units of time*, *on* dipakai sebelum *a middle-size units of time*, dan *at* dipakai sebelum *numbers clock time*.

Idiomatic phrase seperti *in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening, at night, at noon*, dipelajari seperti mempelajari *vocabulary*, yaitu dihafalkan satu per satu.

In : year, month

On : day, date

At : time

Contoh:

Lily was born in 1919 in December on Sunday at 7.00

d. Tambahan: Besides

Besides berarti sebagai tambahan atau selain, sedangkan *beside* berarti di samping atau berdekatan.

Contoh:

- Besides our dog, we have two cats and canary.
- Besides white, we stock green and blue.
- We sat beside the teacher.

e. Pengecualian: But dan Except

Bila dipakai sebagai preposisi, *but* berarti *except* (kecuali).

Contoh:

- All of the students but the seniors will receive their grades.
- All of the students except the senior will receive their grades.

Contoh lain:

Salah : All of the group exception Barbara went to the lake.

Benar : All of the group but Barbara went to the lake.
atau

All of the group except Barbara went to the lake.

f. Penggantian: *Instead of* dan *Instead*

Instead of dan *instead* artinya menggantikan tempat, tetapi *instead of* dipakai sebelum kata benda, kata sifat, atau kata keterangan. *Instead* dipakai pada akhir kalimat atau klausa yang merujuk pada kata benda, kata sifat, atau kata keterangan yang sudah disebutkan sebelumnya.

Contoh:

Salah : Bob's father wanted him to be an engineer instead a geologist.

Benar : Bob's father wanted him to be an engineer instead of a geologist.

Atau

Bob's father wanted him to be an engineer instead.

g. Contoh: *Such As*

Such as artinya contoh (*example*).

Contoh:

Salah : A metal detector buzzes not only when firearms are locked but also when smaller metal objects as keys and belt buckles are found.

Benar : A metal detector buzzes not only when firearms are locked but also when smaller metal objects such as keys and belt buckles are found.

Salah : Jobs at fast-food restaurants for such as McDonald's or Taco Bell are often filled by students.

Benar : Jobs at fast-food restaurants such as McDonald's or Taco Bell are often filled by students.

EXERCISE I:

Choose the correct preposition from the dropdown menu and form correct time phases!

1. ... September.
A. at
B. in
C. on

2. ... 12 o'clock.
 - A. at
 - B. in
 - C. on

3. ... winter.
 - A. at
 - B. in
 - C. on

4. ... Easter Monday.
 - A. at
 - B. in
 - C. on

5. ... 4th July, 1776.
 - A. at
 - B. in
 - C. on

6. ... Christmas.
 - A. at
 - B. in
 - C. on

7. ... Tuesday.
 - A. at
 - B. in
 - C. on

8. ... the weekend.
 - A. at
 - B. in
 - C. on

9. my birthday.
 - A. at
 - B. in
 - C. on

10. ... the end of the week.
 - A. at
 - B. in
 - C. on

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. B | 6. A |
| 2. A | 7. C |
| 3. B | 8. A |
| 4. C | 9. C |
| 5. C | 10. A |

EXERCISE I:

Match the phrases in the column the verbs below. Mind the prepositions and find meaningful phrases!

at the airport
during the night
on the plane
out with friends
to music

behind the tree
on the beach
out of the window
outside the stadium
to the swimming pool

- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1. Hang | 6. Look |
| 2. Listen | 7. Sleep |
| 3. Talk | 8. Lie |
| 4. Go | 9. Wait |
| 5. Arrive | 10. Hide |

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. out with friends | 6. out of the window |
| 2. to music | 7. during the night |
| 3. on the phone | 8. on the beach |
| 4. to the swimming pool | 9. outside the stadium |
| 5. at the airport | 10. behind the tree |

EXERCISE I:

Choose the correct preposition!

- I'm tired ... waiting for you.
 - on
 - of
 - with
 - in
- He hasn't smoked ... ages.
 - since
 - for
 - at
 - to
- Nina is good ... running.
 - for
 - to
 - in
 - at
- I'm looking ... my keys. Has anyone found them?
 - for
 - after
 - of
 - to
- They dream ... moving to South Africa.
 - at
 - in
 - for
 - of
- This song was written ... Madonna.
 - to
 - with
 - by
 - in

7. You can look the word ... in a dictionary.
 - A. on
 - B. up
 - C. through
 - D. with

8. I can't come to the party. Don't wait ... me.
 - A. for
 - B. on
 - C. after
 - D. at

9. She had problems ... reading the instructions.
 - A. to
 - B. by
 - C. in
 - D. with

10. The police car chased the robbers ... the streets.
 - A. among
 - B. between
 - C. through
 - D. on

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. B | 6. C |
| 2. B | 7. B |
| 3. D | 8. A |
| 4. A | 9. D |
| 5. D | 10. C |

EXERCISE I:

Choose the correct prepositions!

I'm Peter and I live ... (of, at,in) Germany. ... (in, during, at) summer I like to travel ... (after, to, towards) Italy, because ... (by, from, of) the weather and the people there. Last summer I took a plane ... (from, over, against) Munich to Rome. ... (from, on, after) the airport we went to our hotel ... (by, with, on) bus. We stopped ... (between, up, at) a small restaurant for a quick meal. The driver parked the bus ... (behind, over, back) the restaurant. Nobody could find the

bus and the driver, so we waited ... (outside, down, on) the restaurant ... (for, in, through) one hour. The driver was walking ... (across, through, off) the small park ... (near, over, around) the restaurant which we did not know. So we were very angry ... (along, with, over) him. But my holidays were great. We sat ... (over, at, round) campfires and went dancing ... (for, against, till) the early mornings.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|---------|-------------|
| 1. in | 9. behind |
| 2. in | 10. outside |
| 3. to | 11. for |
| 4. of | 12. across |
| 5. from | 13. near |
| 6. from | 14. with |
| 7. by | 15. round |
| 8. at | 16. till |

15

CONJUNCTION

A. PENGERTIAN CONJUNCTION

Kata sambung (*Conjunction*) adalah kata atau kelompok kata yang berfungsi menghubungkan dua kata, frasa, klausa, atau paragraf. Kata ini merupakan satu dari delapan *part of speech* bahasa Inggris.

B. MACAM DAN CONTOH KALIMAT CONJUNCTION

Adapun macam dan contoh kalimat *conjunction* antara lain sebagai berikut:

a. *Correlative Conjunction*

<i>Correlative Conjunction</i>	
Kata hubung ini digunakan berpasangan untuk menunjukkan hubungan antara dua kata, frasa, atau klausa.	Diana is as beautiful as her sister. (Diana secantik saudaranya.)
Contoh: As... as, both ... and ..., either ... or ...	

b. *Coordinating Conjunctions*

Coordinating conjunctions digunakan untuk menggabungkan dua kalimat yang secara *grammar* berkedudukan sama dan selalu berada di antara kata atau klausa yang dihubungkannya.

Contoh:
and, but, or, nor, for, yet, so.

Perhatikan contoh kalimat berikut!

I like (tea) **and** (coffee).

(Sarah likes tea), **but** (Jimmy likes coffee).

Ketika *coordinating conjunctions* menghubungkan klausa yang berdiri sendiri, biasanya didahului oleh tanda koma sebelum kata sambungnya.

Contoh:

I want to work as an English teacher in the future, **so** I am studying English at university.

Namun, jika klausa tersebut pendek, koma tidak begitu penting untuk digunakan.

Contoh:

He is kind **so** he helps people.

Ketika "and" digunakan di akhir kata urutan, koma boleh digunakan, boleh juga tidak. Perhatikan contoh di bawah ini!

He drinks beer, wine, **and** rum.

He drinks beer, wine **and** rum.

c. Subordinating Conjunctions

Subordinating Conjunctions digunakan untuk menggabungkan **anak kalimat** dengan **induk kalimatnya** dan biasanya berada di awal anak kalimat.

Contoh:

after, although, as because, before, how, if, once, since, than, that, though, till, until, when, where, wether, while.

Contoh kalimat:

INDUK KALIMAT	ANAK KALIMAT	
Brian went swimming	<i>although</i>	it was raining.
	<i>Subordinating Conjunctions</i>	

Anak kalimat tidak selalu berada setelah induk kalimatnya, terkadang anak kalimat dapat berada di awal kalimat atau di depan induk kalimatnya.

Perhatikan contoh di bawah ini!

Kimmy went swimming **although** it was raining.

Although it was raining, Kimmy went swimming.

d. **Adverbial Conjunction**

Adverbial conjunction/conjunctive adverb/connecting adverb adalah kata yang berfungsi baik sebagai kata keterangan (*adverb*) maupun kata sambung (*conjunction*). Sebagai kata sambung, kata ini berfungsi untuk menghubungkan dengan logis dua *independent clause* menjadi kalimat majemuk (*compound sentence*). Sedangkan sebagai kata keterangan, kata sambung ini berfungsi untuk menerangkan klausa yang kedua.

Adverbial conjunction dapat menempati posisi di awal, tengah, atau akhir kalimat dan memiliki antara lain hubungan penambahan (*addition*), pertentangan (*contrast*), akibat/hasil (*result*), dan waktu (*time*).

Contoh kalimat:

Berikut beberapa contoh kalimat dengan *adverbial conjunction* dan berbagai hubungannya:

Hubungan	Conjunction	Contoh kalimat
Addition (penambahan)	also, besides, furthermore, moreover (tambahan lagi)	Atiek was my classmate in senior high school; also , she's my best friend until now. (Atiek adalah teman sekelas saya di SMU. Selain itu dia teman terbaik saya sampai sekarang.)
		The scientists found that the question is difficult; besides , they needed to work hard to solved it. (Para ilmuwan menemukan bahwa pertanyaan itu sulit. Tambahan lagi, mereka perlu bekerja keras untuk memecahkannya.)
		Both gold and green kiwi fruits are widely cultivated in New Zealand; furthermore , they're distributed to our country. (Baik kiwi emas maupun hijau dibudidayakan secara luas di New Zealand. Tambahan lagi, mereka didistribusikan ke negara kita.)

Contrast (pertentangan)	however, yet (tapi, namun) despite that, in spite of that nevertheless nonetheless notwithstanding (meskipun demikian) on the other hand still otherwise (jika tidak) rather (sebaliknya, malahan)	Natural resources of Indonesia spread from Sabang to Marauke; however/yet , they're not utilized properly. (Sumber daya alam di Indonesia tersebar dari Sabang sampai Marauke. Namun mereka tidak dieksplorasi dengan benar.)
		She looks tomboyish; in spite of that ; she's good at cooking. (Dia tampak tomboy. Meskipun demikian, dia pandai memasak.)
		The man wearing glasses seems serious and stiff; nevertheless , he sometimes laughs out loud with his friends. (Pria yang memakai kacamata itu tampak serius dan kaku. Meskipun demikian terkadang dia tertawa keras dengan teman-temannya.)
		If the sun shines tomorrow, I'll go swimming; otherwise , maybe I'll try the new recipe in the kitchen. (Jika matahari bersinar besok, saya akan berenang; jika tidak, mungkin saya akan mencoba resep baru di dapur.)
		She's not bad; rather , she's very kind. (Dia tidak jahat. Malahan dia sangat baik.)

Result (akibat)	accordingly, consequently, hence, so, therefore, thus, (oleh karena itu)	Lamborghini cars are very sophisticated; accordingly , I want to have one. (Mobil-mobil Lamborghini sangat canggih; karenanya, saya ingin punya satu.)
		The worker came late; consequently , his salary for the next month will be cut. (Pekerja itu datang terlambat. Sebagai akibatnya, gajinya bulan depan akan dipotong.)
		She loves to read psychology books; hence , she is easy to understand other people. (Dia suka membaca buku-buku psikologi. Karena itu dia mudah mengerti orang lain.)
		Yulia drinks fresh milk and does exercise regularly; therefore , her bones are dense and strong. (Yulia minum susu segar dan berolahraga dengan teratur. Oleh karena itu, tulangnya padat dan kuat.)

Time (waktu)	meanwhile (sementara itu)	The rich sleeps on the warm and comfortable bed; meanwhile , the poor sleeps on the damp and cold sidewalk. (Orang kaya tidur di tempat tidur yang hangat dan nyaman; sementara itu, orang miskin tidur di trotoar yang lembap dan dingin.)
	<u>Time sequence:</u>	He built a business for many years tirelessly; finally , he got success. (Dia membangun usaha selama bertahun-tahun tanpa kenal lelah. Akhirnya, dia sukses.)
	finally (akhirnya) then (lalu, kemudian) After all/at last (setelah itu) first, second (pertama, kedua) last (terakhir) next (selanjutnya, berikutnya)	Slice onion, garlic, and chili, then , stir-fry them on a non-stick pan. (Iris bawang merah, bawang putih, dan cabai. Selanjutnya tumis di panci anti lengket.)
		He built a business for many years tirelessly; after all , he got success. (Dia membangun usaha selama bertahun-tahun tanpa kenal lelah. Akhirnya dia sukses.)

d. Posisi *Adverbial Conjunction*

Posisi dan contoh *adverbial conjunction* dalam suatu kalimat dapat dilihat pada tabel di bawah ini:

Posisi	Contoh <i>Adverbial Conjunction</i>
di awal kalimat	Yulia drinks fresh milk and does exercise regularly; therefore (for that reason) , her bones is dense and strong.
di tengah kalimat	Her bones, therefore , they are dense and strong.
di akhir kalimat	Her bones is dense and strong, therefore .

e. Modifikasi Tanda Baca

Modifikasi tanda baca koma (,) dan titik-koma (;) serta contoh *adverbial conjunction* dalam kalimat sebagai berikut:

Ilustrasi Tanda Baca	Contoh Kalimat	Keterangan
complete idea; X, complete idea.	I'm not hungry; however , I want some cheese.	[1] Hanya A atau B yang merupakan <i>complete idea</i> .
complete idea; X; complete idea.	I'm not hungry; however; I want some cheese.	
A, X, B.	I don't, however , I want some cheese	[2]&[3] Titik-koma tidak digunakan karena kalimat hanya terdiri dari satu <i>complete idea</i> .
X, complete idea.	However , I don't want some cheese.	
complete idea, X.	I don't want some cheese, however	X = Adverbial Conjunction

EXERCISE I:

1. The hurricane destroyed the beach area (*although, in spite of, so*) the town had to reconstruct the boardwalk.
2. MAC cosmetics were first designed for models (*although, before, afterward*) they are now used by women all over the world.
3. Harry doesn't usually like blue cheese (*and, but, so*) he loves Roquefort on toast.
4. (*despite, although, while*) it was after midnight, we did not feel tired.
5. We had to wait fifteen minutes for the shop to open, (*because, so, even though*) we had arrived early.
6. Did you go out (*and, nor, or*) stay at home last night?
7. The sun is warm this afternoon, (*despite, while, however*) the air is still quite cool.
8. He had just begun to work, (*while, when, an*) he was interrupted by his boss.
9. (*unless, when, however*) he helps us, we cannot finish the project on time.
10. (*because of, however, while*) it was snowing, we played cards.

11. I wanted to study; (*however, because, so*) I was too tired.
12. (*eventhough, where*) it rained hard, we still enjoyed the outdoor concert at Wembley.
13. Joan and Elliot chatted about everything (*in spite of, despite of, though*) the fact that they had just met that afternoon.
14. They sold their house in Miami for \$375,000 (*and, because, even so*) travelled all over the world for a year.
15. Geraldine Chaplin is a great actress (*although, though, so*) she is less well-known than her father Charlie Chaplin.
16. Did Miss Smith buy the red boots (*or, and, so*) the black and white sandals?
17. The ski slopes were busy, (*so, despite, in spite*) the cold, freezing weather.
18. Lynda likes Tom (*so, and, but*) he is in love with Annette.
19. The fox caught the mouse (*so, however, despite*) it got away on her.
20. Kimberly and her friends caught a plane to Atlanta, (*so, even though, because*) they had no hotel room for the night.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|-------------|-----------------|
| 1. so | 11. however |
| 2. although | 12. even though |
| 3. but | 13. in spite of |
| 4. althoug | 14. and |
| 5. because | 15. though |
| 6. or | 16. though |
| 7. however | 17. despite |
| 8. when | 18. but |
| 9. unless | 19. however |
| 10. while | 20. even though |

C. BOTH ... AND/NOT ONLY, BUT ALSO

a. Both ... And

Baik X dan Y menggabungkan elemen (bentuk kata yang sama) serupa dalam sebuah kalimat. Ini adalah *correlative conjunction*.

1. *Kata benda*

Both the movie and the play were good. (bentuk kata kerja jamak)
I liked both the movie and the play.

2. *Modifiers*

The actors were both engaging and skillful in their performances.
The plot moved both swiftly and artfully throughout the movie.

3. *Infinitives & gerunds*

The directors wanted both to win and to receive recognition for their work.
The producers ended up both extending and expanding their filming hours.

4. *Kata kerja*

Ebert both likes and recommends the movie.

5. *Prepositional phrases*

The movie is being shown both at The Fox Theater and in neighborhood theaters.

b. Not Only..., But (Also)

Tidak hanya X tapi juga Y menggabungkan elemen (bentuk kata yang sama) serupa dalam sebuah kalimat. Kata kerjanya menyetujui kata benda yang terdekat. Ini adalah *focusing adverbs*.

1. *Kata benda*

Not only the movie but also the play was good. (kata kerja setuju dengan kata benda kedua)
I liked not only the movie but also the play.

2. *Modifiers*

The actors were both engaging and skillful in their performances.
The plot moved both swiftly and artfully throughout the movie.

3. *Infinitives & gerunds*

The directors wanted both to win and to receive recognition for their work.
The producers ended up both extending and expanding their filming hours.

4. *Kata kerja*

Ebert both likes and recommends the movie.

5. *Prepositional phrases*

The movie is being shown both at The Fox Theater and in neighborhood theaters.

D. POSISI KATA KERJA BANTU

a. Tidak Ada Kata Kerja Bantu yang Ditambahkan

Ketika *not only* digunakan di awal kalimat dan menggabungkan elemen (bentuk sama) serupa dari sebuah kalimat, tidak ada kata kerja bantu yang digunakan. Ini adalah *correlative conjunction*.

Contoh:

Not only you but also I applauded the performance. (kata benda + kata benda)

You and I applauded the performance.

I like **not only** to watch movies but also to see plays. (infinitive + infinitive)

I like to watch movies and see plays.

b. Kata Kerja Bantu Sebelum Subjek dan Kata Kerja

Ketika *not only* digunakan di awal kalimat dan menggabungkan dua klausa, kata kerja bantu dari klausa *not only* diletakkan sebelum subjek. Ini adalah *coordinating conjunction*.

Contoh:

Not only did I applaud, but I also stood up.

I applauded the performance, and I stood up.

Not only do I like to watch movies, but I also like to see plays.

I like to watch movies, and I like to see plays.

E. TANDA BACA

a. Kata dan Frasa

Tanda koma tidak diperlukan ketika menggabungkan elemen-elemen kalimat setara: kata benda-kata benda, *modifier-modifier*, kata kerja-kata kerja, atau kata keterangan-kata keterangan. Ini adalah *correlative conjunction*.

Contoh:

We both applauded and stood up. (tanda tanpa koma)

We both clapped our hands and stomped our feet.

I both liked the movie and loved the play.

b. Klausula

Tanda koma digunakan ketika menggabungkan sebuah klausa dependen pada klausa independen. Ini adalah *coordinating conjunction*.

Contoh:

We not only applauded, but we also stood up. (klausa independen + klausa dependen)

I not only liked the movie, but I also loved the play.

F. PENAMBAHAN NEGATIF

a. Neither ... Nor

Gunakan *neither ... nor* untuk penambahan negatif: bukan X dan bukan Y. Ketika *neither ... nor* memulai sebuah kalimat dan menggabungkan dua kata kerja, kata kerja bantu mendahului subjek.

1. Kata benda

Neither the movie nor the play was good. (bentuk kata kerja tunggal)
I liked neither the movie nor the play.

2. Modifiers

The plot was neither believable nor engaging.
The director spoke neither specifically nor excessively about the project.

3. Infinitives & Gerunds

The actors tried neither to overplay nor to underplay their roles.
They objected to the movie neither following the book nor keeping the central theme.

4. Kata kerja

I neither liked nor would recommend the movie.
Neither did I like nor would recommend the movie.

b. Either ... Or (Preference)

Ekspresi *either ... or* tidak berhubungan dengan *neither nor*. Kebalikannya, ekspresi itu mengindikasikan "tidak ada yang dipilih".

1. Kata benda

Either the movie or the play was good. I can't remember.
I didn't like either the movie or the play. They were both bad.

2. *Modifiers*

The plot was either believable or unbelievable depending on the viewer's perspective.

The director spoke either briefly or excessively about his project depending on how much free time he had. (one or the other)

3. *Infinitives & Gerunds*

The actors tried either to over play or to underplay their roles. (I don't know what they did, but it wasn't effective in the movie.) (one or the other)

They objected to either following the book or keeping the central theme. (one or the other)

4. *Kata kerja*

Either I like a movie or I hate it. There is nothing in-between. (one or the other)

c. **Perbedaan *Either ... Or* dan *Either ... Or Else***

1. *Either... Or*

Kata sambung *either ... or* mengekspresikan bahwa seseorang tidak ingat atau tidak lebih menyukai satu hal dari yang lainnya (tidak ingin memutuskan mana yang lebih disukai).

- Either you ate the pie or I ate it. I can't remember who did. (one or the other)
- Either you can eat the pie or I'll eat it. I don't really care who eats it. (no preference)

2. *Either ... Or Else*

Ekspresi *conditional "either ... or else"* mengekspresikan konsekuensi dari sebuah perbuatan. Ekspresi ini sering digunakan sebagai ancaman halus. Penambahan kata "*else*" bersifat opsional.

- Either you eat the pie, or (else) I will. (Informal dengan "either")
You eat the pie, or else I will. (kondisi: setengah mengancam)
- You eat the pie. Otherwise, I will. (kondisi: alternatif)

G. KESALAHAN UMUM

SALAH

- * Not only the Grand Canyon is deep but also is wide.
- * Not only the jokes but also the dialog were good.

- * Neither I took vacation nor I asked for sick leave.
- * Neither I nor my sons carries a mobile phone.
(Harus membandingkan dua benda tunggal)

SOLUSI

Not only is the Grand Canyon deep but also wide. (kata sifat + kata sifat)
Not only is the Grand Canyon deep [is], but also it is wide. (klausa + klausa).
 Pindahkan kata kerja bantu ke depan subjek.

Ketika *not only ... but* juga memulai sebuah kalimat dan menggabungkan dua kata kerja, kata kerja bantu mendahului subjek.

Not only the jokes but also the dialog was good. (kata kerja menyetujui kata benda paling dekat.)
Neither did I take vacation, nor did I ask for sick leave.

Pindahkan kata kerja bantu ke depan subjek.

Ketika *neither... nor* memulai sebuah kalimat dan menggabungkan dua kata kerja, kata kerja bantu mendahului subjek.
Neither I nor my son carries a mobile phone.

H. PENGGUNAAN KATA SAMBUNG (CONJUNCTION) DALAM KALIMAT LANGSUNG DAN TIDAK LANGSUNG

a. Penggunaan Kata Sambung "That"

Apabila "*reported words*" dalam kalimat langsung (*direct speech*) berupa kalimat berita, baik berbentuk positif maupun negatif, maka dalam bentuk laporan atau kalimat tidak langsung (*indirect speech*) kata sambung yang digunakan adalah "**that**" yang berarti "bahwa".

Contoh:

Direct : Rina said, "I love you." (+)

Indirect : Rina said that she loved me.

Direct : Ida told me, "I don't love you." (-)

Indirect : Ida told me that she didn't love me.

b. Penggunaan Kata Sambung "If" atau "Whether"

Apabila "*reported words*" dalam kalimat langsung (*direct speech*) berupa kalimat pertanyaan jenis "*Yes-No Questions*"; maka dalam bentuk laporan atau kalimat tidak langsung (*indirect speech*) kata sambung yang digunakan adalah "**if**" atau "**whether**" yang berarti "apakah".

Contoh:

Direct : Rina asked me, "Do you really love me?"

Indirect : Rina asked me if I really love her.

Direct : Ida asked me, "Are you sick?"

Indirect : Ida asked me whether I was sick.

c. Penggunaan Kata Sambung Berupa Kata Tanya (Question Words)

Apabila "*reported words*" dalam kalimat langsung (*direct speech*) berupa kalimat pertanyaan jenis "*W-H Questions*" atau pertanyaan yang menggunakan kata tanya 5W-1H, maka dalam bentuk laporan atau kalimat tidak langsung (*indirect speech*) kata sambung yang digunakan adalah "**Question Words**" atau kata tanya itu sendiri.

Contoh:

Direct : Oscar asked me, "What is your name?"

Indirect : Oscar asked me what my name was.

Direct : Tom asked him, "Where do you live?"

Indirect : Tom asked me where he lived.

d. Penggunaan Kata Sambung Berupa Kata "To"

Apabila "*Reported Words*" dalam kalimat langsung (*direct speech*) berupa kalimat perintah positif, maka dalam bentuk laporan atau kalimat tidak langsung (*indirect speech*) kata sambung yang digunakan adalah kata "**to**"

Contoh:

Direct : Billy ordered her, "Close the door!"

Indirect : Billy ordered her to close the door.

Direct : Tom told me, "Please, wait for me."

Indirect : Tom told me to wait for him.

e. Penggunaan Kata Sambung Berupa Kata "Not To"

Apabila "*reported words*" dalam kalimat langsung (*direct speech*) berupa kalimat perintah negatif (larangan), maka dalam bentuk laporan atau kalimat tidak langsung (*indirect speech*) kata sambung yang digunakan adalah kata "**not to**"

Contoh:

Direct : Ida said to me, "Don't use my car!"

Indirect : Ida told me not to use her car.

Direct : Nancy told me, "Please, don't disturb me!"

Indirect : Nancy told me not to disturb her.

EXERCISE:

Select the word or phrase from the list that best completes the sentence!

1. (*both, not only*) you but also Paul forgot to do the annual report last week.
2. You will need to finish it by (*either, neither*) today or tomorrow. Just get it done by Friday.
3. (*both, not only*) you and Paul have been wasting too much time.
4. I will take (*either, neither*) yours nor Paul's excuses anymore.
5. Not only (*she yells, does she yell, is she yell*) at me, but also she screams at me.
6. Either (*she stops, does she stop*) yelling at me or I quit.
7. Neither (*I want, do I want*) to quit, nor do I have the savings to be able to quit.
8. She both (*annoys, does she annoy*) and angers me.
9. My boss not only overlooks my achievements, but also (*avoids, he avoids*) giving me compliments.
10. Neither do I want trouble, nor (*am I asking, I ask*) for it.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. not only | 6. she stops |
| 2. either | 7. do I want |
| 3. both | 8. annoys |
| 4. neither | 9. avoids |
| 5. does she yell | 10. am I asking |

I. KATA TANYA + EVER

Kita bisa berpikir tentang *question word W + Ever* semantis sebagai *question word 'W' + quantifier 'any'*. Trik untuk memahami istilah-istilah ini adalah untuk menyadari bahwa mereka berlaku untuk setiap satu acuan, dan pada saat yang sama mengacu pada semua acuan.

- **Whatever** - Any thing (bisa juga: be every thing)
- **Whenever** - Any time (bisa juga: be 'every time')
- **Wherever** - Any 'where' (Anywhere atau everywhere).
- **Whoever** - Anyone (Any person or every person, atau kadang-kadang dipakai untuk merujuk kepada orang yang tidak dikenal oleh si pembicara)

- **Whichever** - Any 'which' (pilihan antara sebuah kelompok atau kumpulan).
- **However** - Any 'way' (dengan cara apa pun [sikap atau cara], tidak peduli bagaimana).

Pada dasarnya artinya adalah "**It does not matter what/when/where etc.**" atau "**An unknown thing/time/place etc.**"

a. Contoh Whatever

- **Whatever** you do, pay attention to the road when you are driving. (You can do anything as long as you pay attention to the road.)
- They say you can buy **whatever** you desire in Harrods, as long as you have the money. (You can buy anything in Harrods, if you have enough money.)
- The student was so intelligent that **whatever** we taught, she understood. (She understood everything that she was taught.)
- The criminal said he would do **whatever** he could in order to get out of jail. (He would do everything or anything he could to get out of jail.)

b. Contoh Whenever

- **Whenever** the neighbours flush the toilet, water comes through our ceiling. (Every time they flush the toilet it happens.)
- **Whenever** she calls, the landlord is busy. (Every time she calls the landlord, he/she is busy.)
- Call me **whenever** you need something. (Call me any time you need something.)
- **Whenever** he comes home, he acts like a hungry dog. (Every time he comes home, he is like that.)
- **Whenever** I go to sleep early, I have extraordinary dreams. (Every time I go to sleep early, I have these dreams.)

c. Contoh Wherever

- **Wherever** you go in the world, remember where you came from and where you are going. (Anywhere you go in the world, remember those things.)
- With a good education in English, **wherever** you go, you will have a good time. (If you are taught well, you will have a good time anywhere.)

- **Wherever** we put the TV in the room, the reception is bad.
(Anywhere we put the TV, the reception is bad.)
- You can put the present that she gave you **wherever** you want, just don't let her know if you put it in the trash.
(You can put that present anywhere.)

d. Contoh Whoever

- **Whoever** broke the vase, can you please replace it?
(Any specific person who broke the vase, please replace it.)
- **Whoever** goes to the shop, please don't steal anything.
(Any one or more of the people who will go to the shop, don't steal anything.)
- **Whoever** it was that knocked on the door last night must have been drunk, because they dropped twenty dollars as they ran away.
(The unknown person who knocked on the door dropped twenty dollars.)
- **Whoever** you just spoke to, she must have some special powers, because you look like you fell in love.
(The unknown person who you spoke with must have some special powers.)

e. Contoh Whichever

- You can drive **whichever** of the cars you want.
(You can choose to drive any of the cars.)
- **Whichever** dress I wear tonight, I'm worried that my butt will look fat. What do you think?
(Person is worried that the person's butt looks fat in any of the selected dresses.)
- **Whichever** road you take to Rome, you will need to drive carefully.
(There are a number of roads to take, and it is necessary to drive carefully on any one that you take.)
- **Whichever** pizza you ordered for her, it must have had some very delicious ingredients.
(The pizza that was ordered from those available had some special ingredients.)

f. Contoh However

- You can dress **however** you like for the party, it's not formal.
(You can dress the way that you want for the party.)
- **However** much she eats, she never puts on weight.
(It doesn't matter how much she eats, she never gets fat.)

- You can do it **however** you like, I don't really care as long as it gets done.
(You can do it any way that you want.)
- **However** rich they may be, it still isn't enough for them.
(It doesn't matter how rich they may be.)

EXERCISE:

Use the correct word to fill in the blanks!

1. You are welcome to come and stay with us you like.
2. I'd like to speak to is in charge of sales.
3. you do, don't forget to call me as soon as you arrive.
4. It comes in three colours; choose you prefer.
5. What do you want to do on Saturday? I don't mind you like!
6. He always makes friends quickly, he goes.
7. borrowed the dictionary should return it as quickly as possible.
8. The teacher says I don't participate enough, but I try to speak, someone interrupts me!
9. There is no entrance fee; you give you can afford.
10. He says he's from Brookstown, that is.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. whenever | 6. wherever |
| 2. whoever | 7. whoever |
| 3. whatever | 8. whenever |
| 4. whichever | 9. whatever |
| 5. whatever | 10. wherever |

16

ADVERB

A. KATA KETERANGAN FREKUENSI (*ADVERB OF FREQUENCY*)

Adverb of frequency adalah kata keterangan yang menyatakan seberapa sering suatu kegiatan atau peristiwa dilakukan atau terjadi. Kata keterangan ini terdiri dari kata keterangan kuantitas (*adverb of quantity*) dan kata keterangan jumlah (*adverb of number*).

How often dapat digunakan untuk mengajukan pertanyaan untuk menunjukkan kuantitas sedangkan *how many times* untuk menunjukkan jumlah.

Berikut beberapa contoh kalimat dengan kata keterangan frekuensi:

Kata Keterangan Frekuensi		Contoh Kalimat
Kata Keterangan Kuantitas	always (selalu)	I always eat hygiene food to avoid stomach ache. (Saya selalu makan makanan higienis untuk menghindari sakit perut.)
	often (sering/75-90%)	My mother often surprises me with her ideas. (Ibu saya sering mengejutkan dengan ide-idenya.)
	frequently (seringkali)	She frequently rearranges her bedroom. (Dia seringkali menata ulang kamar tidurnya.)
	usually (biasanya)	I usually wake up at 4 a.m. (Saya biasanya bangun pukul 4 pagi.)
	sometimes (kadang-kadang)	The worker sometimes feels bored with his work. (Pegawai tersebut kadang merasa bosan dengan pekerjaannya.)
	hardly ever (hampir tidak pernah)	The old man, her prospective father-in-law, hardly ever goes to the mall. (Pria tua itu, calon ayah mertuanya, hampir tidak pernah ke mal.)
	seldom (jarang (10-25%))	Tina seldom washes her shoes by herself. (Tina jarang mencuci sepatunya sendiri.)
	rarely (jarang/1-10%)	The rich man is rarely at home. (Pria kaya itu jarang berada di rumah.)
	occasionally (sesekali)	He occasionally climbs a mountain and sleeps in a tent. (Dia sesekali mendaki gunung dan tidur di tenda.)
	never (tidak pernah)	She never sheds tears in front of other people. (Dia tidak pernah menetasakan air mata di depan orang lain.)

Kata Keterangan Jumlah	Once (sekali), twice/two times (dua kali), three times (tiga kali), four times (empat kali)	I do the exercise three times a week to gain my muscle mass. (Saya berlatih tiga kali seminggu untuk menambah massa otot.)
-------------------------------	--	--

Penempatan kata keterangan frekuensi dalam kalimat dapat dilihat di: Penempatan Kata Keterangan.

B. KATA KETERANGAN WAKTU (*ADVERB OF TIME*)

Adverb of time adalah kata keterangan yang digunakan untuk menyatakan waktu terjadinya suatu kegiatan atau peristiwa. *When* merupakan kata tanya yang dapat digunakan untuk mengajukan pertanyaan yang menunjukkan kata keterangan waktu.

Adapun contoh kalimat dengan kata keterangan waktu dapat dilihat pada tabel sebagai berikut:

Contoh Kata Keterangan Waktu	Contoh Kalimat dengan Kata Keterangan Waktu
Already (sudah)	I, together with my pals, already have eaten lunch. (Saya bersama para sahabat sudah makan siang.)
Finally (akhirnya)	Tita finally found a solution to solve her academic problem. (Tita akhirnya menemukan sebuah solusi untuk mengatasi masalah akademiknya.)
Recently (baru saja)	The children have recently went home. (Anak-anak itu baru saja pulang.)
Now (sekarang)	Please call me later, I'm studying now . (Tolong hubungi saya lagi nanti, saya sedang belajar sekarang.)
Today (hari ini)	Athiya arrives from Osaka today . (Athiya tiba dari Osaka hari ini.)
From ... to/until ... (dari ... sampai)	She'll prepare for the final test from now to the next Saturday . (Dia akan mempersiapkan tes akhir dari sekarang sampai Sabtu depan.)

In the 20th century (abad kedua puluh), in the past (dulu/di masa lalu)	In the 20th century , there are so many social networking websites. (Pada abad kedua puluh, ada begitu banyak <i>website</i> jejaring sosial.)
Ago (yang lalu), two days ago (dua hari lalu), a month ago (satu bulan lalu)	They sent a box of tiramisu cake to me eleven days ago . (Mereka mengirim sekotak kue tiramisu untukku sebelas hari yang lalu.)
Last Tuesday (Selasa lalu) last week (minggu lalu), last month (bulan lalu), last year (tahun lalu)	I paid a call to my friend in the hospital last week . (Saya menjenguk teman di rumah sakit minggu kemarin.)
Yesterday (kemarin), yesterday morning (kemarin pagi), yesterday afternoon (kemarin siang), yesterday night (kemarin malam)	He got the birthday surprise party yesterday . (Dia mendapat pesta ulang tahun kejutan kemarin.)
Since 1983 (sejak 1983)	The factory has operated since 1983 . (Pabrik tersebut telah beroperasi sejak 1983.)
Then (pada saat itu)	She was poor then . (Dia miskin pada saat itu.)
Tomorrow (besok), tomorrow morning (besok pagi)	She'll have dinner at the cafe near her home tomorrow . (Dia akan makan malam di kafe dekat rumahnya besok.)

C. KATA KETERANGAN CARA (*ADVERB OF MANNER*)

Adverb of manner adalah kata keterangan yang digunakan untuk menyatakan cara suatu kegiatan dilakukan atau peristiwa terjadi. How (bagaimana) dapat digunakan untuk mengajukan pertanyaan yang menunjukkan kata keterangan cara.

Pada kalimat yang menggunakan kata kerja transitif (kata kerja yang membutuhkan objek), kata keterangan cara tidak diletakkan di antara kata kerja dengan objek.

Contoh:

- He read carefully the instructions. [SALAH]
- He read the instructions carefully. [BENAR]

Beberapa contoh kalimat dengan kata keterangan cara dapat dilihat pada tabel sebagai berikut:

Contoh Kata Keterangan Cara	Arti	Contoh Kalimat dengan Kata Keterangan Cara
Automatically	secara otomatis	The toaster will automatically turn off. (Pemanggang roti itu akan mati secara otomatis.)
Beautifully	dengan cantik	The rich woman learned from experts how to arrange flowers beautifully . (Wanita kaya itu belajar dari para ahli bagaimana cara merangkai bunga dengan cantik.)
Calmly	dengan tenang	Students have to walk calmly in the school. (Para siswa harus berjalan dengan tenang di dalam sekolah.)
Carefully	secara hati-hati	Please read the instructions carefully before you filling the form. (Tolong baca instruksi tersebut dengan hati-hati sebelum kamu mengisi formulir.)
Fast	dengan cepat	He said that he always drives fast . (Dia mengatakan bahwa dia selalu mengemudi dengan cepat.)
Fluently	dengan lancar	The requirement to join the program is can speak English fluently . (Syarat untuk bergabung dengan program itu adalah dapat berbicara bahasa Inggris dengan lancar.)
Gently	secara lembut	You will wipe my LCD screen gently , will you? (Kamu akan melap layar LCD-ku dengan lembut kan?)
Happily	dengan bahagia	The new young married couple live happily in their small cottage. (Pasangan pengantin muda baru itu hidup dengan bahagia di pondok kecil mereka.)

Hard	dengan keras	He wanted to know the difference between working hard and working smart. (Dia ingin tahu perbedaan antara bekerja keras dengan bekerja cerdas.)
Peacefully	secara damai	I prefer to live peacefully to hate other people even though they tease me. (Saya lebih memilih hidup secara damai daripada membenci orang lain meskipun mereka menjahati saya.)
Quickly	dengan cepat	My mother got up early and cooked breakfast quickly . (Ibuku bangun pagi dan memasak sarapan dengan cepat.)
Slowly	dengan lambat	She carried out the homework slowly . (Dia mengerjakan PR dengan lambat.)
Suddenly	secara tiba-tiba	The rain came suddenly without little warning. (Hujan datang secara tiba-tiba tanpa peringatan sedikit pun.)
Together	bersama-sama	Let's do over this report together . (Ayo ulangi laporan ini bersama-sama.)
Well	dengan baik	Chewing our food well may be one of the simple acts to help our digestion. (Menguyah makanan dengan baik mungkin satu dari tindakan sederhana untuk membantu pencernaan kita.)

Beberapa kata keterangan yang tidak beraturan (*irregular*) yang mempunyai bentuk yang sama dengan kata sifat.

Daftar kata keterangan tidak beraturan:

fast ⇒ fast
daily ⇒ daily
late ⇒ late

early ⇒ early
 hard ⇒ hard
 good ⇒ well

D. KESALAHAN UMUM

Kesalahan Umum	Versi yang Benar	Kenapa?
The camera works perfect.	The camera works perfectly .	Kita memakai adverb (<i>perfectly</i> = adverb, <i>perfect</i> = adjective) bila kita ingin mengatakan bagaimana sesuatu dilakukan.
Did you work hardly today?	Did you work hard today?	Beberapa <i>adverb</i> mempunyai bentuk yang sama seperti bentuk <i>adjective</i> : <i>hard</i> - <i>hard</i> , <i>fast</i> - <i>fast</i> , <i>late</i> - <i>late</i> .
She behaved rather sillily. She passed the exam difficultly.	She behaved in a silly way . She passed the exam with difficulty .	Beberapa <i>adjective</i> (termasuk banyak yang berakhiran in <i>-ly</i>) tidak memiliki padanan <i>adverb</i> . Kecuali kita memakai <i>adverbial phrase</i> (<i>in a friendly manner</i> , <i>in a silly way</i> , <i>with difficulty</i>).
His answer sounded correctly. He looks happily.	His answer sounded correct . He looks happy .	Setelah <i>linking verb</i> (<i>look</i> , <i>sound</i> , <i>taste</i> , <i>smell</i> , <i>feel</i> , <i>seem</i> , etc.) kita menggunakan <i>adjective</i> , BUKAN <i>adverb</i> .

E. SOMETIME, SOMETIMES, DAN SOME TIME

Ketiga kata keterangan ini dipakai dan diterima dalam tulisan formal.

a. *Some Time*

Ketika memakai *some time*, *some* di sini adalah kata sifat. Digunakan untuk menggambarkan lamanya waktu dan frekuensi suatu lamanya periode.

Contoh:

- For some time, the world has been known to be round.
- He has been studying Aramaic for some time.
- It can also imply a fairly specific amount of time:
- I require another couple of hours to finish this project today.
- I require some time to finish this project today.

b. Sometime

Ketika ditulis sebagai satu kata, *adverb* ini mengimplikasikan sesuatu yang samar-samar di waktu yang akan datang/future. Sering bisa digantikan tempatnya oleh *someday*.

Contoh:

- The cure for cancer will be found sometime.
- I'll get around to finishing that book sometime later.
- Give me a call sometime, and we'll have coffee.

c. Sometimes

Ketika ditulis sebagai satu kata dan berakhir dengan 's' *adverb* ini mengimplikasikan sesuatu yang terjadi sesekali/kadang-kadang.

Contoh:

- Sometimes, I just don't understand what that man is saying.
- English grammar sometimes follows its own rules, and sometimes it doesn't.

EXERCISE I:

Choose the correct option!

1. I found his home very
A. easily
B. frequently
C. difficultly
2. Rohan behaves very with his elders.
A. goodly
B. easily
C. badly
3. My father will be of town this weekend.
A. inside
B. out
C. outside

4. Rohan plays football
 - A. aggressively
 - B. hardly
 - C. sympathetically

5. He doesn't care for anything and looks happy every time.
 - A. since
 - B. hence
 - C. ago

6. They called the police after the accident.
 - A. immediately
 - B. peacefully
 - C. slowly

7. Kiran is a paid employee of this company.
 - A. lowly
 - B. hardly
 - C. highly

8. I was stuck in a jam for two hours.
 - A. nearly
 - B. correctly
 - C. simply

9. How do you go there?
 - A. never
 - B. often
 - C. seldom

10. Thomas was happy when he got his first job.
 - A. extremely
 - B. halfly
 - C. fully

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. A | 6. A |
| 2. C | 7. C |
| 3. B | 8. A |
| 4. A | 9. B |
| 5. B | 10. A |

EXERCISE I:

Choose the correct option!

- I met my childhood friend Meeta.
 - yesterday
 - this Sunday
 - tomorrow
- You need to run to win this race.
 - slow
 - fast
 - steadily
- I won't say it
 - progressively
 - necessarily
 - repeatedly
- Speak, I cannot hear you.
 - loudly
 - hardly
 - slowly
- You should smoke as it is dangerous for your health.
 - always
 - never
 - usually
- We searched but were unable to find her lost jewellery.
 - nowhere
 - everywhere
 - anywhere
- I hope to see you!
 - soon
 - random
 - never

8. Deepak never dresses for work.
 - A. formally
 - B. dirtily
 - C. coolly

9. The manager looked at me with an expression when I reached late!
 - A. sad
 - B. angry
 - C. regret

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. A | 6. B |
| 2. B | 7. A |
| 3. C | 8. A |
| 4. A | 9. B |
| 5. B | |

EXERCISE I:

Use these nine words to complete the sentences below. Use each word once!

Still	ago	while	yet	since
when	for	ever	never	

1. They moved away from here many years
2. I was young, I lived in Rome.
3. I have tried a cigarette.
4. Is she here? I want to speak to her.
5. we continue living together, things will improve.
6. He hasn't left his hometown.
7. We haven't had any problems
8. She said she has known you a long time.
9. I've been really busy Christmas.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 1. ago | 6. ever |
| 2. when | 7. yet |
| 3. never | 8. for |
| 4. still | 9. since |
| 5. while | |

EXERCISE I:

Rewrite the sentences and put the adverbs in correctly!

1. We were in London. (*last week*) → We were in London last week
2. He walks his dog. (*rarely*) →
3. She waited. (*patiently*) →
4. My father goes fishing. (*always*) →
5. Your bedroom is. (*upstairs*) →
6. We don't go skiing. (*in summer*) →
7. Cats can hear. (*well*) →
8. I saw him. (*there*) →
9. The girl speaks English. (*fluently*) →
10. I have seen that film. (*never*) (*before*) →

KUNCI JAWABAN:

1. We were in London last week.
2. He rarely walks his dog.
3. She waited patiently.
4. My father always goes fishing.
5. Your bedroom is upstairs.
6. We don't go skiing in summer.
7. Cats can hear well.
8. I saw him there.
9. The girl speaks English fluently.
10. I have never seen that film before.

F. PENGGUNAAN "ONCE" DALAM BAHASA INGGRIS

Kata "Once" sering kita dengar dan baca dalam beberapa teks berbahasa Inggris. Ada 2 fungsi *once* dalam kalimat bahasa Inggris, pertama, difungsikan sebagai kata keterangan dan kedua, difungsikan sebagai kata sambung.

a. *Once* Sebagai Kata Keterangan

"When once means 'at some time', we use it for the past but not for the future. To refer to an indefinite future time, we can use 'sometime' or 'one day'". (Swan, 2005: 395)

Menurut Swan, ketika **once** bermakna "pada suatu waktu", kita menggunakannya untuk waktu lampau, bukan untuk waktu mendatang. Untuk mengacu pada waktu mendatang, "pada suatu waktu" menggunakan kata "*sometime*" atau "*one day*".

Contoh:

- I met her once in Venezuela
- Once upon a time there was a beautiful princess.

Bandingkan dengan contoh di bawah ini:

- Come up and see me *sometime*. (bukan: Come up and see me **once**)
- We must go walking *one day*. (bukan: We must go walking **once**)

"When 'once' has the more precise meaning of 'one time' (*not twice or three times*), it can be used to talk about any time, including the future."

Menurut Swan lagi, ketika "*once*" bermakna "sekali" (bukan dua kali atau tiga kali), kata "*once*" tersebut bisa digunakan pada waktu kapan saja, termasuk waktu mendatang.

Contoh:

I am going to say this *once*. = Saya akan mengatakan hal ini sekali (saja).

Catatan:

Kata *at once* bermakna "immediately" (secara seketika.)

b. *Once* sebagai Kata Sambung

Kata "once" dapat digunakan sebagai kata sambung yang bermakna *setelah*, *segera setelah*. Biasanya menunjukkan bahwa sesuatu telah selesai, dan biasanya digunakan dengan *perfect tenses*.

Contoh:

- Once you have passed your test I'll let you drive your car.
- Once he had found somewhere to live he started looking for work.
- Once you know how to ride a bike you never forget it.

Catatan:

Jangan gunakan kata *that* setelah *once*.

(Contoh salah : Once ~~that~~ you have passed your test I will let you drive your car.)

G. PENGGUNAAN KATA KETERANGAN

a. *When vs While*

Baik *when* dan *while* sama-sama berarti "ketika" dan dapat digunakan untuk menjelaskan dua peristiwa yang terjadi pada saat yang bersamaan. Kita dapat menggunakan kedua kata tersebut untuk menggambarkan suatu "latar belakang" peristiwa yang berlangsung lebih lama ketika peristiwa lain terjadi.

- Somebody knocked the door **when** I was cooking in the kitchen. (=When I was cooking in the kitchen, somebody knocked the door)
- **While** they were playing cards, somebody broke into the house.

CATATAN:

1. Pada contoh di atas, kita melihat masing-masing contoh memiliki 2 kalimat. Misalnya contoh kalimat pertama. Pada kalimat pertama, kita melihat ada 2 kalimat, yaitu "somebody knocked the door" dan "I was cooking in the kitchen". Tentu kita dapat menyimpulkan bahwa memasak di dapur prosesnya lebih lama daripada mengetuk pintu. Oleh karena itu, kata "when" diletakkan sebelum "I was cooking in the kitchen" bukan di depan "somebody knocked at the door", karena prosesnya memang lebih pendek.

2. When dan while dapat diletakkan di awal atau di akhir kalimat. Kita biasanya menggunakan while untuk mengatakan bahwa ada dua kejadian atau situasi yang terjadi bersamaan (pada waktu yang sama).

- While you were reading the paper, I was working.

Kalau kita membicarakan tentang masa di waktu lampau, gunakan when:

- When I was a child we lived in London. (BUKAN While I was a child ...)
- His parents died when he was twelve. (BUKAN... while he was twelve)

Kita menggunakan (just) when untuk mengatakan bahwa ada dua kejadian/situasi yang sama-sama berlangsung secara singkat dan terjadi pada waktu yang bersamaan:

- I thought of it (just) when you opened your mouth.
(BUKAN I thought of it while opened your mouth.)

Kita juga boleh menghilangkan struktur "subject + be" setelah when dan while:

- While/When in Germany, he got to know a family of musicians.
(While/When he was in Germany ...)

b. **While vs whilst**

Tidak ada perbedaan antara kedua kata tersebut. Dalam *British English*, kata "*whilst*" dianggap lebih resmi dalam literatur dari pada "*while*".

c. Penggunaan *Already, Still, Yet, dan No Longer*

Kita memakai **still** untuk menunjukkan bahwa sesuatu (*continues up to a time*) pada *past present* atau *future*. Posisinya di depan kata kerja utama:

Contoh:

The children still enjoyed playing games.

They are still living next door.

We will still be on holiday.

Atau setelah/after the present simple atau the past simple of **be**:

Contoh:

Her grandfather is still alive.

They were still unhappy.

Kita memakai **already** untuk menunjukkan bahwa sesuatu yang telah terjadi lebih cepat daripada yang diharapkan terjadi. Seperti *still, already* terletak sebelum kata kerja utama:

Contoh:

The car is OK. I've already fixed it.

It was early but they were already sleeping.

... atau setelah *present simple* atau *past simple* dari kata kerja **be**:

Contoh:

It was early but we were already tired.

We are already late.

Kita memakai **yet** dalam klausa negatif dan interogatif, biasanya dengan aspek perfektif (terutama dalam *British English*), untuk menunjukan bahwa sesuatu belum terjadi pada suatu waktu tertentu. **Yet** terletak di akhir kalimat:

Contoh:

It was late, but they hadn't arrived yet.

Have you fixed the car yet?

She won't have sent the email yet.

d. Beda Penggunaan *Since dan For*

Dalam kalimat Bahasa Inggris *since* dan *for* adalah dua kata yang sering digunakan sebagai keterangan waktu dalam kalimat *present perfect tense*. Kedua kata ini mempunyai maksud yang berbeda. *Since* digunakan untuk menyatakan permulaan sesuatu yang hingga sekarang tetap dilakukan,

sedangkan *for* digunakan untuk menyatakan lamanya suatu kegiatan dilakukan.

Contoh kalimat *present perfect* menggunakan *since*:

- I've been here since 2 p.m.
(Saya sudah berada di sini sejak pukul 2 sore).
- I've lived here since I was child.
(Saya sudah tinggal di sini sejak masih anak-anak).
- I've walked along the street since the sun rose.
(Saya sudah berjalan di sepanjang jalan ini sejak matahari terbit).

Contoh kalimat *present perfect* menggunakan *for*:

- I've been here for 3 hours.
(Saya sudah ada di sini selama 3 jam).
- I've worked for 2 days.
(Saya sudah bekerja selama 2 hari).
- My father has left Indonesia for a month.
(Ayah saya sudah meninggalkan Indonesia selama satu bulan).

e. Antara *All* dan *Whole* dalam Bahasa Inggris

All dan *whole* merupakan dua buah kata yang mempunyai makna hampir sama. Keduanya berarti "semua". Untuk memberikan Anda pengetahuan yang jelas, di bawah ini terdapat uraian mengenai perbedaan antara *all* dan *whole*.

Perbedaan Susunan

Kita menggunakan **All of + Determiner (his, her, their, these, those, my, dll) + Kata Benda.**

Contoh:

- I will show you **all of his fault**.
(Saya akan menunjukkan kepadamu semua kesalahannya.)
- Can you give **all of your books**?
(Dapatkah kamu memberikan semua bukumu?)
- Would you bring **all of these papers** to my room?
(Bersediakah kamu membawa semua kertas ini ke ruangan saya?)

Sedangkan, untuk *whole*, kita menggunakan **Determiner + Whole + Kata Benda.**

- **His whole life** is quite challenging.
(Semua bagian hidupnya sangatlah menantang.)

- Did you spend **your whole day** for just laying on the bed?
(Apakah kamu menghabiskan keseluruhan harimu hanya untuk berbaring di tempat tidur?)
- I won't tell **the whole truth** to you.
(Saya tidak akan mengatakan semua kenyataan kepadamu.)

f. Penulisan Tanggal dan Waktu

1. Aturan: Contoh berikut berlaku ketika menggunakan tanggal
 - The meeting is scheduled for June 30.
 - The meeting is scheduled for the 30th of June.
 - We have had tricks played on us on April 1.
 - The 1st of April puts some people on edge. (Some prefer to write it out: The first of April)
2. Aturan: Ada perbedaan kebijakan untuk mengekspresikan dekade dengan menggunakan angka. Beberapa menulis 1980s dan '80-an, yang lain menulis tahun 1980-an dan 80-an . Namun, penggunaan dua apostrof ('80) dirasa canggung dan tidak direkomendasikan .

Benar:

- During the '80s, the world's economy grew.
- During the 1980s, the world's economy grew.
- During the 1980's, the world's economy grew.

Tidak Dianjurkan:

- During the '80's, the world's economy grew.

3. Aturan: Beberapa penulis menguraikan waktu, yang lain lebih suka menggunakan angka.

Contoh:

- She gets up at four thirty before the baby wakes up.
- The baby wakes up at 5 o'clock in the morning.

4. Aturan: Beberapa menggunakan angka untuk penulisan waktu saat waktu persisnya ditekankan.

Contoh:

- Her flight leaves at 6:22 a.m.
- Please arrive by 12:30 p.m. sharp.

5. Aturan: Hal ini jelas untuk menggunakan siang dan tengah malam daripada 12:00 atau 00:00.

Catatan:

Anda dapat menggunakan AM dan PM, A.M. dan P.M., pagi dan sore, Beberapa menempatkan spasi setelah angka tersebut, yang lainnya tidak.

Contoh:

- Her flight leaves at 6:22 a.m.
- Her flight leaves at 6:22am.
- Please arrive by 12:30 P.M. sharp.

17

SENTENCE AND CLAUSE

A. PENGERTIAN *SENTENCE*

Kalimat (*sentence*) adalah suatu konstruksi grammatical yang mengandung suatu pikiran yang utuh. Kalimat terbentuk dari satu atau lebih klausa, di mana sedikitnya ada satu klausa independen (terdiri atas subjek dan predikat). Kalimat diawali oleh huruf kapital dan diakhiri oleh tanda titik, tanda seru, atau tanda tanya.

B. POLA KALIMAT

Suatu klausa independen tersusun dari subjek dan predikat. Ada banyak kemungkinan kombinasi subjek dan predikat yang dihasilkan. Berikut beberapa di antaranya:

- subjek + kata kerja transitif + objek langsung (*I just sent an email*)
- subjek + kata kerja transitif + objek tidak langsung + objek langsung (*I just sent you an email*)
- subjek + kata kerja intransitif +/- kata keterangan (*He speaks slowly*)
- subjek + kata kerja penghubung + kata benda/kata sifat (*He is a scientist*)

C. JENIS KALIMAT

Jenis kalimat dapat dibedakan berdasarkan struktur atau penggunaannya.

a. Berdasarkan Strukturnya, kalimat dapat dikelompokkan menjadi:

1. *Kalimat sederhana (simple sentence): terdiri dari satu klausa independen.*

Contoh:

The ship arrives late.

2. *Kalimat majemuk setara (compound sentence): terdiri dari dua atau lebih klausa independen.*

Contoh:

I borrowed him the book, but he didn't read it.

3. *Kalimat majemuk bertingkat (complex sentence): terdiri dari satu klausa independen dan satu atau lebih klausa dependen*

Contoh:

I was sleeping when you called.

4. *Kalimat majemuk gabungan (compound-complex sentence): kombinasi kalimat majemuk setara dan kalimat majemuk bertingkat.*

Penjelasan singkat dan contoh jenis kalimat berdasarkan strukturnya sebagai berikut:

Jenis Kalimat	Contoh Kalimat
Kalimat Sederhana	
Merupakan jenis kalimat yang paling mendasar karena hanya terdiri dari satu klausa independen.	Water boils at 100 degrees Celcius. (Air mendidih pada suhu 100 derajat Celcius.)
Kalimat Majemuk Setara	
Merupakan jenis kalimat yang terdiri dari dua atau lebih klausa independen yang dihubungkan oleh coordinate conjunction (<i>for, and, nor, but, or, yet, so</i>).	Vina wakes up at 5:00 am, and she go to school at 6:30 am. (Vina bangun pukul 5 pagi dan dia pergi ke sekolah pukul setengah 7.)
Kalimat Majemuk Bertingkat	
Merupakan jenis kalimat yang terdiri dari satu klausa independen dan satu atau lebih klausa dependen [subordinate conjunction (<i>although, when, because, dll</i>) + subjek + predikat].	Her face is fresh because she always eats fresh fruits. (Wajahnya segar karena dia selalu makan buah-buahan segar.)

Kalimat Majemuk Gabungan	
Merupakan jenis kalimat hasil kombinasi antara kalimat majemuk setara dan kalimat majemuk bertingkat.	Andra found a lot of expired food, but he didn't got rid of it because he was too busy. (Andra menemukan banyak makanan basi, tapi dia tidak menyingkirkannya karena dia terlalu sibuk.)

b. Berdasarkan Penggunaannya, kalimat dapat dikategorikan menjadi:

1. *Kalimat pernyataan (declarative sentence)*

Contoh:

The weather is cold.

2. *Kalimat tanya (interrogative sentence)*

Contoh:

How far is the grocery store from here?

3. *Kalimat seru (exclamatory sentence): digunakan untuk mengungkapkan perasaan yang kuat.*

Contoh:

How cruel you are!

4. *Kalimat perintah (imperative sentence): digunakan untuk memerintah, memberi petunjuk, atau meminta)*

Contoh:

Let me think about it.

Berikut penjelasan singkat dan contoh jenis kalimat berdasarkan penggunaannya.

Jenis Kalimat	Contoh Kalimat
Kalimat Pernyataan	
Merupakan jenis kalimat untuk membuat pernyataan, berupa fakta (<i>fact</i>) atau pendapat (<i>opinion</i>).	Batik is a tradisional cloth from Indonesia. (Batik adalah pakaian tradisional dari Indonesia.)

Kalimat Tanya	
Merupakan jenis kalimat untuk membuat pertanyaan (yes-no, tag, dan wh-question)	Why do you hate cats? (Mengapa kamu membenci kucing?)
Kalimat Seru	
Merupakan jenis kalimat untuk menyatakan perasaan yang kuat (<i>strong feeling</i>) melalui seruan.	What a beautiful craft! (Kerajinan yang cantik!)
Kalimat Perintah	
Merupakan jenis kalimat untuk membuat perintah (<i>command</i>), permintaan (<i>request</i>), atau petunjuk (<i>direction</i>).	Please take off your shoes here. (Tolong lepas sepatumu di sini.)

D. PROBLEMS: SENTENCE FRAGMENT & RUN-ON SENTENCE

Sentence fragment dan *run-on sentence* adalah masalah-masalah pada topik kalimat. *Sentence fragment* merupakan kalimat yang tidak lengkap namun beraksi seakan kalimat lengkap.

Contoh:

Because I enjoy cooking.

Koreksi:

Hilangkan "because" agar makna kalimat menjadi utuh.

Sedangkan *run-on sentence* terdiri dari dua atau lebih klausa independen namun tidak terhubung dengan benar.

Contoh:

The test begins in a few minutes (**you**) get your pen and paper ready.

Koreksi:

The test begins in a few minutes. Get your pen and paper ready.

E. KLAUSA

Klausa (*clause*) adalah serangkaian kata yang mengandung subjek (pokok kalimat) dan predikat (sebutan kalimat). Dalam bahasa Inggris ada 2 macam klausa, yaitu, induk kalimat (*main clause*) dan anak kalimat (*subordinate clause*). Perhatikan penjelasannya di bawah ini!

a. Induk Kalimat (*Main Clause*)

Induk kalimat (*main clause*) disebut juga dengan *independent clause* adalah serangkaian kata yang mengandung subjek dan predikat yang telah mempunyai pengertian sempurna (jelas), dan dapat berdiri sendiri, artinya tidak tergantung pada klausa yang lain.

Contoh:

- We study English.
- English is an international language.
- She has finished working.

b. Anak Kalimat (*Subordinate Clause*)

Anak kalimat (*subordinate clause*) disebut juga dengan *dependent clause*, adalah serangkaian kata yang mengandung subjek dan predikat tetapi belum mempunyai pengertian yang sempurna, dan tidak dapat berdiri sendiri, artinya tergantung pada kata-kata yang lain (induk kalimat).

Contoh:

- I will go if you go.
- She won't come unless you invite her.
- I enjoy my job although I work long hours.

F. KLAUSA INDEPENDEN DAN DEPENDEN

Klausa adalah pengelompokan kata-kata dalam bahasa Inggris yang mengandung subjek dan kata kerja. Klausa adalah blok bangunan dari sebuah kalimat. Klausa dibagi menjadi dua jenis: independen dan dependen. Dalam pembentukan kalimat penting untuk dapat mengenali mana klausa independen dan mana klausa dependen.

a. Klausa Independen

Klausa independen adalah sekelompok kata yang mengandung subjek dan kata kerja. Klausa independen adalah kalimat. Klausa independen adalah klausa yang mengekspresikan pemikiran yang lengkap. Mereka dapat

berfungsi sebagai kalimat. Ini adalah klausa yang dapat berfungsi sendiri. Mereka tidak perlu bergabung dengan kalimat lain, karena mengandung semua informasi yang diperlukan untuk menjadi kalimat lengkap.

Ada tiga ciri atau komponen yang dimiliki klausa independen:

1. Subjek: Memberikan informasi atas apa yang dibicarakan kalimat itu.
2. Tindakan atau predikat: Memberikan informasi atas apa yang dilakukan subjek.
3. Menyatakan ide yang lengkap: Memberikan informasi atas apa yang terjadi dalam kalimat.

Contoh:

"*Dedi buy some food*" termasuk klausa independen, dan jika Anda akhiri dengan tanda titik, klausa ini akan menjadi sebuah kalimat.

b. Klausa Dependen

Klausa dependen adalah sekelompok kata yang mengandung subjek dan kata kerja. Klausa dependen tidak bisa disebut kalimat. Mereka tidak mengungkapkan pikiran yang lengkap, dengan demikian tidak bisa berfungsi sebagai kalimat. Mereka biasanya ditandai dengan kata-kata penanda dependen. Ini adalah kata yang ditambahkan ke awal klausa independen yang membuatnya menjadi klausa dependen.

Sebuah klausa disebut klausa dependen karena adanya:

1. Kata penanda dependen (*because, after, before, since, in order to, although, though, whenever, wherever, whether, while, even though, even if, etc.*)
2. Kata penghubung atau *conjunction* (*but, and, or, nor, yet, etc.*)

Contoh:

'When Dedi buy some food' tidak bisa disebut kalimat karena tidak mempunyai ide yang lengkap.

'What happened when Budi went to the market?' Di sini '*when*' berfungsi sebagai kata penanda dependen. Oleh karena itu klausa dependen harus digabungkan dengan klausa independen untuk membentuk kalimat yang utuh.

Misalnya:

'When Dedi buy some food, Mulyadi stole the money.' Ini adalah contoh kalimat yang lengkap.

G. KLAUSA KATA SIFAT (*ADJECTIVE CLAUSE*)

Klausula kata sifat adalah klausula dependen yang berfungsi sebagai kata sifat dan menjelaskan tentang kata benda atau kata ganti pada suatu kalimat kompleks.

a. Ciri Klausula Kata Sifat

1. Posisi klausula kata sifat selalu mengikuti kata benda atau kata ganti (subjek atau objek) yang dijelaskan. Dengan kata lain, klausula ini merupakan informasi yang ditambahkan terhadap subjek atau objek.
2. Klausula kata sifat biasanya dimulai dengan **relative pronoun**, seperti *which, that, who, whom, whose*. Atau **relative adverb**, seperti *where, when, why*, atau **zero relative**. Kata ini berguna untuk menjembatani hubungan dengan subjek/objek yang diterangkan.

b. Contoh Klausula Kata Sifat

1. *Klausula kata sifat pada kalimat kompleks:*
 - The movie **that we saw** last morning was very good.
2. *Klausula kata sifat dengan relative pronoun:*
 - I thanked the woman **who helped me**.
 - The woman **whom I saw** was Mrs. Irna.
 - I know the man **whose bicycle was stolen**.
 - The rabbit **which eat carrots are very cute**.
 - The building **where he lives is very old**.
 - I'll never forget the day **when I met you**.
 - This is the house **that I have showed to my father**.
3. *Klausula kata sifat dengan subordinate conjunctions "where" dan "when"*
 - Klausula kata sifat menggunakan **"where"**
The building is very old. He lives in that building (there).
 - The building **where** he lives is very old.
 - The building **in which** he lives is very old.
 - The building **which** he lives in is very old.
(Bangunan di mana dia tinggal itu sangat tua)

Where digunakan pada klausula kata sifat untuk mengubah tempat (negara, kota, ruangan, rumah, dll). Jika where

digunakan, preposisi tidak digunakan dalam klausa kata sifat (seperti contoh 1). Tetapi jika *where* tidak digunakan, relative pronoun dan preposisi harus digunakan (seperti contoh 2 & 3).

- Klausa kata sifat menggunakan **“when”**
I'll never forget the day. I met you (on that day).
 - I'll never forget the day **when** I met you.
 - I'll never forget the day **that** I met you.
(Saya tidak akan pernah melupakan hari ketika saya bertemu denganmu.)

When digunakan pada klausa kata sifat untuk mengubah kata benda dari waktu (tahun, hari, waktu, dll).

EXERCISE:

Combine each of the following pairs of simple sentences into one complex sentence containing an adjective clause!

1. The theft was committed last night. The police has caught the man.
2. The French language is different from the Latin language. Latin was once spoken throughout Europe.
3. You are looking upset. Can you tell me the reason?
4. He had several plans for making money quickly. All of them have failed.
5. The landlord was proud of his strength. He despised the weakness of his tenants.
6. This is the village. I was born here.
7. You put the keys somewhere. Show me the place.
8. Paul was an old gentleman. He was my travelling companion.
9. A fox once met a crane. The fox had never seen a crane before.
10. The shop keeper keeps his money in a wooden case. This is the wooden case.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

1. The police has caught the man who committed the theft last night.
2. The French language is different from the Latin language which was once spoken throughout Europe.
3. Can you tell me the reason why you are looking upset.
4. All the plans which he had for making money quickly have failed.
5. The landlord who was proud of his strength despised the weakness of his tenants.
6. This is the village where I was born.
7. Show me the place where you put the keys.
8. Paul who was an old gentleman was my travelling companion.
9. A fox which had never seen a crane before once met a crane.
10. This is the wooden case where the shopkeeper keeps his money.

18

REPORTED SPEECH (INDIRECT SPEECH)

A. PENGERTIAN KALIMAT LANGSUNG (*DIRECT SPEECH*)

Kalimat langsung adalah kalimat di mana ucapan si pembicara langsung dituliskan seperti apa adanya. Kalimat ini ditulis dengan menggunakan tanda kutip. Oleh karena itu, kalimat ini biasa juga disebut sebagai "Kalimat Kutipan".

Kalimat langsung terdiri dari dua bagian, yakni: kata kerja yang melaporkan (*reporting verbs*) dan kata atau ucapan yang dilaporkan (*reported words*).

Untuk memperjelas pemahaman tentang kalimat langsung, silakan perhatikan tabel di bawah ini:

KALIMAT LANGSUNG (<i>DIRECT SPEECH</i>)	
Reporting Verbs	Reported Words
<ul style="list-style-type: none">Ina says,Yanti said,Ani has said,	<p>"I am an English teacher." "English is easy." "We have to study more seriously."</p>

Beberapa contoh lain yang merupakan kalimat langsung adalah sebagai berikut:

- Ani says, "I can speak Japanese."
(Ani berkata, "Aku dapat berbicara bahasa Jepang")
- "I have much money," Jacob said.
("Aku punya banyak uang," kata Jacob.)
- Leo has said, "My father has stayed in Bali for two years."
(Leo telah berkata, "Ayahku telah tinggal di Bali selama 2 tahun.")
- Edi said, "I will buy a new computer."
(Edi berkata, "Aku akan membeli sebuah komputer baru")
- Oscar said, "I don't like seafood."
(Oscar berkata, "Aku tidak suka makanan laut.")

B. PENGERTIAN KALIMAT TIDAK LANGSUNG (*REPORTED SPEECH/INDIRECT SPEECH*)

Kalimat tidak langsung (*reported speech*) adalah kalimat yang melaporkan sesuatu yang diucapkan oleh orang lain. Oleh karena itu kalimat ini biasa disebut "*reported speech*".

Kalimat langsung dapat diubah menjadi kalimat tidak langsung dengan cara menghilangkan tanda kutip dan menggantinya dengan kata sambung "*that*" yang berarti "bahwa".

Apabila beberapa contoh kalimat langsung di atas kita ubah menjadi kalimat tidak langsung maka hasilnya akan seperti berikut ini:

- Ani says that she can speak Japanese.
(Ani berkata bahwa dia dapat berbicara bahasa Jepang.)
- Jacob said that he had much money.
(Jacob berkata bahwa dia mempunyai banyak uang.)
- Leo has said that his father has stayed in Bali for two years.
(Leo telah berkata bahwa ayahnya telah tinggal di Bali selama 2 tahun.)
- Edi said that he would buy a new computer.
(Edi berkata bahwa dia akan membeli sebuah komputer baru.)
- Oscar said that he didn't like seafood.
(Oscar berkata bahwa dia tidak suka makanan laut.)

C. ATURAN PERUBAHAN *DIRECT SPEECH* MENJADI *INDIRECT SPEECH*

Ada dua macam aturan yang berkaitan dengan perubahan tenses dalam pembentukan kalimat tidak langsung, antara lain:

a. *Tenses* pada "*Reported Words*" Tidak Perlu Diubah.

Apabila *tenses* pada "*reporting verbs*" dalam kalimat langsung berbentuk ***Simple Present Tense***, ***Present Future Tense***, dan ***Present Perfect Tense***, maka *tenses* pada "*reported words*" dalam kalimat tidak langsung tidak perlu mengalami perubahan.

Untuk lebih memperjelas pembahasan di atas, silakan perhatikan tabel berikut:

Reporting Verbs	Reported Words
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Simple Present Tense • Present Future Tense • Present Perfect Tense 	Tenses Tidak Berubah
<p>Contoh Kalimat:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Direct: Ina says, "I like music very much." • Indirect: Ina says that she likes music very much. 	

Beberapa contoh kalimat tidak langsung lainnya yang tidak mengalami perubahan *tenses* pada "*reported words*"-nya adalah sebagai berikut:

1. *Reporting verb berbentuk simple present tense:*

Contoh:

- **Direct:** They say, "We are happy."
(Mereka berkata "Kami bahagia.")
- **Indirect Speech:** They say that they are happy.
(Mereka berkata bahwa mereka bahagia.)

2. *Reporting verb berbentuk present future tense:*

Contoh:

- **Direct:** All people will say, "Nobody is perfect."
(Semua orang akan berkata, "Tidak seorang pun yang sempurna.")
- **Indirect Speech:** All people will say that nobody is perfect.
(Semua orang akan berkata bahwa tidak ada seorang pun yang sempurna.)

3. *Reporting verb berbentuk present perfect tense:*

- **Direct:** Adi has said, "I have understood this lesson."
(Adi telah berkata "Aku telah mengerti pelajaran ini.")
- **Indirect Speech:** Adi has said that he has understood this lesson.
(Adi telah berkata bahwa dia telah mengerti pelajaran ini.)

b. Tenses pada "Reported Word" yang Harus Mengalami Perubahan

Apabila *tenses* pada "*reporting verbs*" dalam kalimat langsung berbentuk **Simple Past Tense** atau **Past Perfect Tense**, maka *tenses* pada "*reported words*" dalam kalimat tidak langsung harus mengalami perubahan.

Untuk lebih memperjelas pembahasan di atas, perhatikan tabel berikut!

Reporting Verbs	Reported Words
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Simple Past Tense• Past Perfect Tense	Tenses Harus Berubah
Contoh Kalimat: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Direct: Ina said, "I like music very much."• Indirect: Ina said that she liked music very much.	

Adapun perubahan *tenses* dalam "*reported word*" pada kalimat tidak langsung ini adalah sebagai berikut:

1. *Simple present tense menjadi simple past tense*

Contoh:

- **Direct:** Paul said, "I want to be an English teacher."
(Paul berkata, "Aku ingin menjadi Guru Bahasa Inggris.)
- **Indirect:** Paul said that he wanted to be an English teacher.
(Paul berkata bahwa dia ingin menjadi Guru Bahasa Inggris.)

2. *Present continuous tense menjadi past continuous tense*

Contoh:

- **Direct:** My mother had said, "I am reading a magazine."
(Ibuku berkata, "Aku sedang membaca sebuah majalah.)
- **Indirect:** My mother had said that she was reading a magazine.
(Ibuku berkata bahwa dia sedang membaca sebuah majalah.)

3. *Future tense menjadi past future tense*

Contoh:

- **Direct:** Edi said, "I will visit my Grandmother."
(Edi berkata, "Aku akan mengunjungi nenekku.)
- **Indirect:** Edi said that he would visit his Grandmother.
(Edi berkata bahwa dia akan mengunjungi neneknya.)

4. *Simple past tense menjadi simple past tense/past perfect tense*

Contoh:

- **Direct:** Ida said, "My brother lived in Bandung."
(Ida berkata, "Saudara lelaki saya tinggal di Bandung.")
- **Indirect:** Ida said that her brother lived in Bandung.
(Ida berkata bahwa saudara lelakinya tinggal di Bandung) (Simple Past Tense)
- **Indirect:** Ida said that her brother had lived in Bandung. (Past Perfect Tense)

5. *Present perfect tense menjadi past perfect tense*

Contoh:

- **Direct:** Leo said, "I've taken a bath."
(Leo berkata "Aku telah mandi.")
- **Indirect:** Leo said that he had taken a bath.
(Leo berkata bahwa dia telah mandi.)

EXERCISE 1:

Complete the sentences in reported speech!

1. John said, "I love this town."
John said
2. "Do you like soccer?" He asked me.
He asked me
3. "I can't drive a lorry," he said.
He said
4. "Be nice to your brother," he said.
He asked me
5. "Don't be nasty," he said.
He urged me
6. "Don't waste your money," she said.
She told the boys

7. "What have you decided to do?" she asked him.
She asked him
8. "I always wake up early," he said.
He said
9. "You should revise your lessons," he said.
He advised the students
10. "Where have you been?" he asked me.
He wanted to know

KUNCI JAWABAN:

1. John said **that he loved that town.**
2. He asked me **if /whether I liked soccer.**
3. He said **that he couldn't drive a lorry.**
4. He asked me **to be nice to my brother.**
5. He urged me **not to be nasty.**
6. She told the boys **not to waste their money.**
7. She asked him **what he had decided to do.**
8. He said **that he always woke up early.**
9. He advised the students **to revise their lessons.**
10. He wanted to know **where I had been.**

EXERCISE I:

Complete the sentences in reported speech. Note the change of pronouns and tenses!

1. "What's the time?" he asked.
He wanted to know
2. "When will we meet again?" she asked me.
She asked me
3. "Are you crazy?" she asked him.
She asked him
4. "Where did they live?" he asked.
He wanted to know

5. "Will you be at the party?" he asked her.
He asked her
6. "Can you meet me at the station?" she asked me.
She asked me
7. "Who knows the answer?" the teacher asked.
The teacher wanted to know
8. "Why don't you help me?" she asked him.
She wanted to know
9. "Did you see that car?" he asked me.
He asked me
10. "Have you tidied up your room?" the mother asked the twins.
The mother asked the twins

KUNCI JAWABAN:

1. He wanted to know what the time was.
2. She asked me when we would meet again.
3. She asked him if he was crazy.
4. He wanted to know where they had lived.
5. He asked her if she would be at the party.
6. She asked me if I could meet her at the station.
7. The teacher wanted to know who knew the answer.
8. She wanted to know why he didn't help her.
9. He asked me if I had seen that car.
10. The mother asked the twins if they had tidied up their room.

EXERCISE: REQUEST (MIXED)

Complete the sentences in reported speech. Note the change of pronouns in some sentences!

1. She said, "Go upstairs."
She told me
2. "Close the door behind you," he told me.
He told me

3. "Don't be late," he advised us.
He advised us
4. "Stop staring at me," she said.
She told him
5. "Don't be angry with me," he said.
He asked her
6. "Leave me alone," she said.
She told me
7. "Don't drink and drive," she warned us.
She warned us
8. "John, stop smoking," she said.
She told John
9. "Don't worry about us," they said.
They told her
10. "Meet me at the cinema," he said.
He asked me

KUNCI JAWABAN:

1. She told me to go upstairs.
2. He told me to close the door behind me.
3. He advised us not to be late.
4. She told him to stop staring at her.
5. He asked her not to be angry with him.
6. She told me to leave her alone.
7. She warned us not to drink and drive.
8. She told John to stop smoking.
9. They told her not to worry about them.
10. He asked me to meet him at the cinema.

19

AGREEMENT

A. PENGERTIAN ANTESEDEN (*ANTECEDENT*), KATA GANTI (*PRONOUN*), DAN KESESUAIAN KATA GANTI-ANTESEDEN (*PRONOUN-ANTECEDENT AGREEMENT*)

Kata ganti (*pronoun*) adalah kata yang digunakan untuk menggantikan kata benda, frasa kata benda, klausa kata benda, kata ganti lain, maupun konstruksi lain yang berakting sebagai kata benda. Di dalam suatu kalimat, kata ini dapat mengarah pada kata benda yang sudah disebutkan sebelumnya.

Sedangkan anteseden adalah kata, frasa, atau klausa yang dirujuk atau digantikan oleh kata ganti. Biasanya posisi anteseden berada sebelum kata ganti.

Contoh [anteseden, kata ganti]:

- **Tanpa kata ganti:** Anna is reading Anna's pledoi to the judges in the main courtroom. kita tidak menulis seperti ini
- **Dengan kata ganti:** Anna is reading *her* pledoi to the judges in the main courtroom.

Pronoun-antecedent agreement adalah kesesuaian kata ganti dengan anteseden dalam hal:

- jumlah (tunggal atau jamak)
- orang (orang pertama, kedua, ketiga)
- jenis kelamin (wanita, pria, netral)

Anteseden tunggal (*singular antecedent*) menggunakan kata ganti tunggal (*singular pronoun*), sedangkan anteseden jamak (*plural antecedent*) menggunakan kata ganti jamak (*plural pronoun*).

Begitu pula orang pertama menggunakan kata ganti orang pertama, dan anteseden wanita pun menggunakan kata ganti wanita.

a. Tabel Kata Ganti

Jumlah	Orang	Kata Ganti Personal			Jumlah	Possessive Adjective
		Subjective	Objective	Possessive		
Tunggal	1st	I	me	Mine	tunggal atau jamak	My
	2nd	You	you	Yours		Your
	3rd	she*, he**, it	her*, him**, it	hers*, his**, its		her*, his**, its
Jamak	1st	We	us	Ours		Our
	2nd	You	you	Yours		Your
	3rd	They	them	Theirs		Their

Keterangan:

*wanita, **pria, sisanya netral

Contoh [anteseden, kata ganti]:

No	Contoh Kalimat	Keterangan
1	<u>You</u> should submit the report to <i>your</i> teacher immediately. (Kamu harus menyerahkan laporan tersebut kepada gurumu secepatnya.)	You = anteseden orang kedua tunggal sesuai dengan your = kata ganti orang kedua.
2	<u>They</u> took off <i>their</i> shoes there. (Mereka melepas sepatu mereka di sana.)	They = anteseden orang ketiga jamak sesuai dengan their = kata ganti orang ketiga jamak.
3	To get rich, the <u>man</u> gave <i>his</i> money away to charity. (Untuk menjadi kaya, pria tersebut mendonasikan uangnya untuk amal.)	Man = anteseden orang ketiga tunggal (pria) sesuai dengan his = kata ganti orang ketiga tunggal (pria).

b. Kesesuaian Kata Ganti-Anteseden (*Pronoun-Antecedent Agreement*)

Berikut beberapa kesesuaian kata ganti-anteseden beserta contoh kalimatnya.

Keterangan:

- anteseden
- kata ganti (atau kata sifat kepemilikan)

No	Kesesuaian Kata Ganti-Anteseden	Contoh Kalimat
1	Dua atau lebih anteseden yang dihubungkan dengan <i>coordinate conjunction</i> "and" selalu menggunakan kata ganti jamak. Jika dengan <i>or/nor</i> , kata ganti menyesuaikan anteseden terdekat.	Vina and Ipit have decided to do over their task. (Vina dan Ipit telah memutuskan untuk mengerjakan kembali tugas mereka.)
		That <u>woman</u> or her <u>friends</u> often turn on their radio. (Wanita itu atau teman-temannya sering menyalakan radio mereka.)
2	Anteseden yang berupa kata benda kolektif (kata benda yang menyatakan kelompok) diikuti oleh kata ganti tunggal atau jamak tergantung pada maknanya. Jika anggota kelompok melakukan hal yang sama secara serentak, maka kata benda dianggap sebagai suatu kesatuan subjek sehingga menggunakan kata ganti tunggal. Sebaliknya, jika anggota dari kumpulan bertindak secara individual, maka dianggap sebagai subjek jamak sehingga membutuhkan kata ganti jamak.	The team is planning its strategies for the next match. (Para anggota tim sedang merencanakan strategi-strateginya untuk pertandingan selanjutnya.)
		The team are planning their strategies for the next match. (Para anggota tim tersebut sedang merencanakan strateginya masing-masing untuk pertandingan selanjutnya.)

3	<p>Anteseden berupa kata benda bentuk jamak dengan makna tunggal seperti: <i>measles, mumps, news, dollars, mathematics</i>, dan <i>physics</i> menggunakan kata ganti tunggal.</p>	<p>Mathematics would be an easy subject if you knew how to face its difficulties. (Matematika akan menjadi mata pelajaran yang mudah jika kamu tahu bagaimana cara menghadapi kesulitan-kesulitannya.)</p>
4	<p>Anteseden yang berupa indefinite pronoun (kata ganti untuk benda, orang, atau hal secara umum):</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. <i>Anything, everything, anybody, anyone, everybody, everyone, each, nobody, somebody, someone, something, nothing, either, neither, much, another, enough, little, less</i>, dan <i>one</i> diikuti oleh kata ganti tunggal. 2. <i>All, both, several, many, few, fewer</i>, dan <i>ones</i> diikuti oleh kata ganti jamak. 3. <i>None, some, any, more</i>, dan <i>most</i> diikuti oleh kata ganti tunggal atau jamak tergantung dari maknanya. <i>None</i> merupakan tunggal ketika merupakan singkatan dari "no one". Sedangkan <i>some, any, more</i>, dan <i>most</i> ketika mengacu sebagai kata ganti kata benda yang tidak dapat dihitung, dan jamak ketika sebagai kata ganti untuk kata benda yang dapat dihitung. 	<p>The man always gives everything to his daughter, but she never uses it wisely. (Pria tersebut selalu memberikan apa pun kepada anak perempuannya, namun dia tidak pernah menggunakannya dengan bijaksana.)</p> <p>Both are sleeping on their house. (Keduanya sedang tidur di rumah mereka.)</p> <p>I bought some and left it to you in the jar. (Saya membeli beberapa dan meninggalkannya untukmu di dalam guci.)</p> <p>Some prefer to learn on their own for the exam. (Beberapa lebih suka belajar sendiri untuk ujian.)</p> <p>Most of the staffs are too busy to help their partners. (Mayoritas dari para staf terlalu sibuk untuk membantu rekan-rekannya.)</p>

	<p><i>None, all, some, any, more,</i> dan <i>most</i> dapat diikuti oleh frase preposisi (preposisi dan objeknya) sehingga mungkin dapat diikuti kata ganti tunggal atau jamak, tergantung <i>number</i> dari kata benda yang berfungsi sebagai objek preposisi di dalam frase preposisi tersebut.</p>	<p>All of the sugar has been consumed, and its container has been removed. (Semua gula telah dikonsumsi dan wadahnya telah dibuang.)</p>
5	<p>Every dan many a yang diikuti kata benda atau sejumlah kata benda merupakan anteseden tunggal sehingga membutuhkan kata ganti tunggal.</p>	<p><u>Every</u> white-bearded wildebeest and african elephant leaves its original home to find food and water during the dry season. (Setiap <i>wildebeest</i> berjanggut putih dan gajah Afrika meninggalkan tempat tinggal aslinya untuk menemukan makanan dan air selama musim kering.)</p> <p><u>Many a</u> girl hopes that she will find her soulmate. (Banyak anak perempuan berharap mereka akan menemukan belahan jiwanya.)</p>
6	<p>The number of (jumlah) merupakan anteseden tunggal sehingga membutuhkan kata ganti tunggal, sedangkan a number of (banyak) merupakan anteseden jamak sehingga membutuhkan kata ganti jamak.</p>	<p><u>The number of</u> cars on the earth grows fast, and it may double within the next thirty years. (Jumlah mobil di bumi berkembang pesat dan itu mungkin berlipat ganda dalam tiga puluh tahun ke depan.)</p> <p><u>A number of</u> men work hard in the company to develop their abilities. (Banyak pria bekerja keras di perusahaan tersebut untuk mengembangkan kemampuan mereka.)</p>

7	<p>Penggunaan kesesuaian kata ganti-anteseden dapat memunculkan masalah gender. Berikut dua situasinya:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Jika anteseden berupa orang ketiga tunggal seperti: <i>a student</i> atau <i>a worker</i>, maka kata gantinya dapat berupa: he or she, him or her, atau his or hers. Untuk menghindari struktur yang mengganggu seperti itu, antesedennya dapat dijamakkan saja menjadi: <i>students</i> atau <i>workers</i>, sehingga kata gantinya menjadi: they, their, atau them. <p>Jika anteseden berupa kata ganti <i>indefinite</i> tunggal: <i>everybody</i> atau <i>somebody</i>, ketimbang berulang kali menggunakan kata ganti berupa "his or her", penggunaan "their" cukup dibenarkan.</p>	<p>A <u>student</u> should take part in discussions, but he or she should not be an active participant. (Seorang siswa harus ambil bagian pada diskusi tapi dia tidak harus menjadi partisipan yang aktif.)</p> <p>atau <u>Students</u> should take part in discussions, but they should not be active an active participant. (Para siswa harus ambil bagian pada diskusi tapi mereka tidak harus menjadi partisipan yang aktif.)</p>
		<p><u>Somebody</u> lost his or her car parked in front of the cafe. atau <u>Somebody</u> lost their car parked in front of the cafe. (Seseorang kehilangan mobilnya yang diparkir di depan kafe.)</p>
8	<p>Frase atau klausa di antara subjek dan kata kerja tidak akan mengubah anteseden, karena kata ganti bukannya disesuaikan dengan kata benda di dalam frase atau klausa tersebut.</p>	<p>The <u>box</u> of tennis balls keep its contents dry. [of tennis ball = frasa preposisi] (Kotak bola tenis menjaga isinya tetap kering.)</p>

B. PENGERTIAN KESESUAIAN SUBJEK-KATA KERJA (SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT)

Subject-verb agreement adalah kesesuaian antara kata kerja dengan subjek kalimat dalam hal jumlah (*number*), yaitu: tunggal

atau jamak. Subjek dapat berupa kata benda, kata ganti, atau konstruksi lain yang berakting sebagai kata benda, seperti *gerund* dan *infinitive*.

Pada dasarnya, subjek tunggal (*singular subject*) menggunakan kata kerja tunggal (*singular verb*), sedangkan subjek jamak (*plural subject*) menggunakan kata kerja jamak (*plural verb*).

Secara umum pada bentuk *present tense*, kata kerja tunggal berupa bentuk dasar dari verb dengan ditambahkan akhiran -s. Adapun pada kata kerja jamak tanpa ditambahkan akhiran -s (sebaliknya, subjek jamak ditambahkan akhiran -s).

Aturan kata kerja ini berlaku pula pada subjek berupa orang ketiga (contoh: Ricky, Anna) dan semua kata ganti personal (*they, we* = jamak; *he, she, it* = tunggal), kecuali *I* dan *you*. Walaupun berupa subjek tunggal, *I* dan *you* dipasangkan dengan kata kerja jamak (tidak termasuk verb "be" (*was, am*) pada "I").

Contoh kalimat kesesuaian subjek-kata kerja:

[subjek = **bold**; kata kerja = *italic*]:

1	The sun <i>rises</i> . (Matahari terbit.)
2	The stars <i>shine</i> . (Bintang bersinar.)
3	Leo rarely <i>eats</i> white bread. (Leo jarang makan roti putih.)
4	You <i>go</i> straight ahead then <i>turn</i> left. (Kamu jalan lurus ke depan lalu belok kiri.)

Namun jika ada kata kerja bantu (*helping verb*), maka kata kerja bantu yang berubah sedangkan kata kerja utama dalam bentuk dasar (*base form verb*). Pilihan kata kerja bantu dalam bentuk tunggal-jamak-nya adalah *is-are, does-do, dan has-have*. Khusus untuk *has-have*, kesesuaian tidak berlaku jika kata tersebut merupakan kata kerja bantu kedua atau digunakan di belakang kata kerja bantu lainnya.

Contoh kalimat dengan kesesuaian subjek-kata kerja:

[subjek = **bold**; kata kerja = *italic*; kata kerja bantu = underline]:

1	My boss always <u>comes</u> on time. (Atasan saya selalu datang tepat waktu.)
---	---

2	They <i>like</i> eating out. (Mereka suka makan di luar.)
3	He <i>is</i> <u>working</u> . (Dia sedang bekerja.)
4	I <u>do</u> <i>submit</i> the task. (Saya harus mengirimkan tugas tersebut.)
5	The manager <u>has</u> <i>checked</i> the documents. (Manajer telah memeriksa dokumen-dokumen tersebut.)
6	I <u>will have been</u> <i>sleeping</i> for an hour when you arrive. (Saya akan sudah tidur selama satu jam ketika kamu tiba.) has-have TIDAK BERLAKU

Sedangkan pada past tense, tidak ada perbedaan bentuk kata kerja dalam hal jumlah (tunggal atau jamak) jika tidak ada kata kerja bantu, yaitu: was-were.

Contoh kalimat dengan kesesuaian subjek-kata kerja:

[subjek = **bold**; kata kerja bantu = underline]:

1	The cat was sleeping. (Kucing itu sedang tidur.)
2	We were roasting corn. (Kita sedang membakar jagung.)
3	She drove fast. (Dia mengemudi.) TIDAK BERLAKU

Adapun jika kata kerja yang digunakan berupa kata kerja penghubung (*linking verb*), maka *is*, *am* (khusus I), *was* (past tense) digunakan oleh subjek tunggal, sedangkan *are* dan *were* (past tense) oleh subjek jamak.

Contoh kalimat dengan kesesuaian subjek-kata kerja:

[subjek = **bold**; kata kerja penghubung = *italic*]:

1	Ricky <i>is</i> smart. (Ricky pintar.)
2	The children <i>are</i> naughty. (Anak-anak itu nakal.)

3	I was a stamp collector. (Saya dulu pengoleksi prangko.)
4	My books were borrowed by him. (Buku-buku saya dipinjam dia.)

C. PERMASALAHAN PADA *SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT*

Kesesuaian subjek-kata kerja menjadi membingungkan ketika dihadapkan pada persoalan seperti: subjek berupa kata benda kolektif, compound subject, bentuk jamak dengan makna tunggal, dan kata ganti indefinite. Selain itu, ada pula frase atau klausa yang menyela subjek dan kata kerja sehingga cukup dapat membingungkan di dalam penentuan kesesuaiannya.

Berikut penjelasan dan beberapa contoh kesesuaian subjek-kata kerja.

[Subject = **bold**; kata kerja, kata kerja penghubung = *italic*; kata kerja bantu = underline]

Kesesuaian Subjek-Kata Kerja	Contoh
Kata benda kolektif merupakan kata benda yang digunakan untuk menyatakan suatu nama kumpulan (terdiri dari lebih dari satu anggota). Sebagai subjek, kata benda ini dapat berupa tunggal atau jamak tergantung konteks. Jika anggota kumpulan melakukan hal yang sama secara serentak, maka kata benda ini dianggap sebagai suatu kesatuan subjek dengan kata kerja tunggal. Sebaliknya, bila anggota kumpulan bertindak secara individual, maka dianggap sebagai subjek jamak dengan kata kerja yang jamak pula.	The team <u>is</u> <i>going</i> on holiday now. [Para anggota tim sedang pergi berlibur (bersama-sama) sekarang.]
	The team <u>are</u> <i>going</i> on holiday now. [Para anggota tim sedang berlibur (masing-masing) sekarang.]

Kesesuaian subjek-kata kerja berarti kesesuaian kata kerja dan subjek. Ingat bahwa subjek dan kata kerja dalam sebuah kalimat harus sesuai (agree).

Subjek yang tunggal (singular subject) harus bertemu dengan kata kerja tunggal pula (singular verb); subjek jamak (plural subject) harus bertemu dengan kata kerja yang jamak (*plural verb*).

a. Basic Subject-Verb Agreement

1. The elevator works very well.
(Elevator itu berfungsi dengan sangat baik.)
2. The elevators work very well.
(Elevator-elevator itu berfungsi dengan sangat baik.)
3. My friend lives in Makassar.
(Temanku tinggal di Makassar.)
4. My friends live in Makassar.
(Teman-temanku tinggal di Makassar.)

Penjelasan:

- **Verb + -s/-es** = untuk orang ketiga tunggal dalam present tense
Work-works, live-lives
 - **Noun + -s/-es** = jamak
Elevator-elevators, friend-friends
5. My brother and sister live in Lasusua, Southeast Sulawesi.
(Saudara laki-laki dan perempuanku tinggal di Lasusua, Sulawesi Tenggara.)

Penjelasan:

Dua atau lebih subjek yang dihubungkan oleh **“and”** berarti berbentuk jamak. **Kecuali** untuk subjek **“every”** dan **“each.”** Akan dijelaskan selanjutnya di bawah.

6. Every man, woman, and child needs love.
(Setiap orang baik itu laki-laki, perempuan, maupun anak-anak membutuhkan rasa kasih sayang.)
7. Each book and magazine is listed in the card catalog.
(Setiap buku dan majalah terdaftar di katalog.)

Penjelasan:

- **Pengecualian:** kata **“every”** dan **“each”** selalu berbentuk tunggal. Walaupun kata benda yang dihubungkan ada dua atau lebih, kata kerja yang mengikutinya berbentuk tunggal.
8. That book in the library of UIN Alauddin is interesting.
(Buku yang ada di perpustakaan UIN Alauddin itu menarik.)
 9. The books in the library of UIN Alauddin are very interesting.
(Buku-buku yang ada di perpustakaan UIN Alauddin itu menarik.)

10. My cat, as well as my dogs, likes cat food.
(Kucing dan anjingku suka makanan kucing.)
11. My cats, as well as my dogs, like cat food.
(Kucing dan anjing-anjingku suka makanan kucing.)
12. The book that I got from my friend, Muh. Rifqy, was very interesting.
(Buku yang kudapat dari temanku, Muh. Rifqy, sangat menarik.)
13. The books that I got from my friend, Muh. Rifqy, were very interesting.
(Buku-buku yang kudapat dari temanku, Muh. Rifqy, sangat menarik.)
14. The study of the languages is very interesting.
(Pelajaran bahasa sangatlah menarik.)

Penjelasan:

Kadang sebuah frasa atau klausa memisahkan sebuah subjek dari kata kerjanya. Struktur-struktur yang memisahkan itu tidak memengaruhi aturan dasar. Contohnya, di kalimat nomor 8. frasa preposisi "in the library of UIN Alauddin" tidak mengubah ketentuan awal bahwa kata kerja "is" harus sesuai dengan subjek "book." Di (12) dan (13) subjek dan kata kerjanya dipisahkan oleh sebuah klausa kata sifat "that I got from my friend, Muh. Rifqy."

Contoh lain:

- Imamsyah Al-Hadi, along with his friends, is playing football.
- Mismar, accompanied by Muh. Ikhsan Nur and Mila, is going to a party tonight.
- Iswahyudi, together with Lisa, is taking English Education Department.

15. Playing football is my hobby.
(Hobiku adalah bermain sepak bola.)

Penjelasan:

Sebuah *gerund* (playing) yang menjadi subjek dalam sebuah kalimat memerlukan sebuah kata kerja tunggal.

16. Anybody who has lost his ticket should report to the desk.
(Siapapun yang kehilangan dompetnya diharapkan melapor ke meja depan)

Penjelasan:

Any + kata benda tunggal harus diikuti oleh kata kerja tunggal.

b. Kesesuaian Subjek-Kata Kerja: Menggunakan Ungkapan Jumlah (Kuantitas)

1. Some of the book is good.
2. Some of the books are good.
3. A lot of the equipment is new.
4. A lot of my friends are here.
5. Two-thirds of the money is mine.
6. Two-thirds of the pennies are mine.

Penjelasan:

Kebanyakan untuk mengungkapkan kuantitas, bentuk kata kerja ditentukan oleh kata benda (pengganti benda) yang mengikuti kata "of."

Contoh:

- Di (1) some of + kata benda tunggal (book) = kata kerja tunggal (is).
 - Di (2) some of + kata benda jamak (books) = kata kerja jamak (are).
 - Di (3) a lot of + kata benda tidak dapat dihitung = kata kerja tunggal (is).
 - Di (4) A lot of + kata benda jamak = kata kerja jamak (are).
7. One of my friends is here.
 8. Each of my friends is here.
 9. Every one of my friends is here.

Penjelasan:

Pengecualian: one of, each of, dan every one of membutuhkan kata kerja tunggal.

One of
Each of + kata benda jamak = kata kerja tunggal.
Every one of

10. None of the boys is here.
11. None of the boys are here.
12. None of counterfeit has been found.
13. No example is relevant to this case.
14. No examples are relevant to this case.

Penjelasan:

Subject dengan **“none of”** dianggap tunggal untuk Bahasa Inggris yang sangat formal, tetapi sering digunakan berbentuk jamak untuk penulisan pidato yang tidak formal. Sementara **none of + kata benda tidak dapat dihitung (tunggal) = tunggal**.

15. The number of students in my class is thirty-three.
16. A number of students were late for class.

Penjelasan:

- Di (12) **“the number”** merupakan subjek.
 - Di (13) **“a number of”** merupakan sebuah ungkapan kuantitas yang bermakna **“banyak”**. **“A number of”** diikuti kata benda jamak dan kata kerja jamak.
17. If either of you takes a vacation now, we will not be able to finish the work.
 18. Neither of my friends is ready for marriage.
 19. Either Muh. Aslam or Muh. Jusranis going to the beach today.
 20. Neither Muh. Aslam nor Muh. Jusranis going to the beach today.
 21. Either Muh. Aslam or his friends are going to the beach today.
 22. Neither Muh. Aslam nor his friends are going to the beach today.

Penjelasan:

Bentuk **“either”** dan **“neither”** adalah tunggal jika mereka **tidak** digunakan bersama **“or”** dan **“nor”** seperti pada contoh (17) dan (18). Ketika **“either”** dan **“neither”** diikuti oleh **“or”** dan **“nor”**, kata kerjanya bisa berbentuk tunggal dan juga jamak, tergantung kata benda yang mengikuti (setelah) **“or”** dan **“nor”** apakah tunggal atau jamak.

c. Kesesuaian Subjek-Kata Kerja: Menggunakan There + To Be

1. There are thirty-three students in my class.
2. There is a student in the class.
3. There are seven continents.
4. There is a book on the shelf.
5. There are some books on the shelf.
6. There is some books on the shelf.

Penjelasan:

Ingat bahwa subjek dari kalimat yang didahului **“there”** adalah setelah kata kerja. Pada contoh (1) subjeknya adalah *thirty-three students* (**BUKAN THERE**).

d. Kesesuaian Subjek-Kata Kerja: Yang Tidak Beraturan

1. The United States is big.
2. The Philippines consists of more than 7,000 islands.

Penjelasan:

Kadang sebuah kata benda spesifik/*proper noun* (The United States, The Philippines) yang berakhir -s adalah tunggal. Pada contoh di atas, jika subjeknya (The United States atau The Philippines) diubah menjadi sebuah kata ganti (*pronoun*), kata ganti tunggal "**it**" yang digunakan (bukan kata ganti jamak "**they**") karena bendanya (The United States atau The Philippines) berbentuk tunggal.

3. The news is interesting

Penjelasan:

News berbentuk tunggal.

4. Mathematics is easy for her.

Penjelasan:

Mata pelajaran yang berakhir -ics berbentuk tunggal, contoh lain adalah *physics*.

5. Diabetes is an illness.

Penjelasan:

Beberapa penyakit tertentu yang berakhir -s adalah tunggal: *diabetes, measles, mumps, rabies, rickets, shingles*.

6. Eight hours of sleep is enough.
7. Ten dollars is too much to pay
8. Five thousand miles is too far to travel.

Penjelasan:

Ungkapan waktu, uang, dan jarak biasanya membutuhkan kata kerja tunggal (*singular verb*).

9. Two and two is four.

Penjelasan:

Ungkapan ilmu hitung membutuhkan kata kerja tunggal.

10. The police have been called.
11. Cattle are domestic animals.

Penjelasan:

Kata "police" dan "cattle" tidak berakhiran -s, tetapi adalah kata benda yang jamak dan membutuhkan kata kerja jamak pula.

12. English is spoken in many countries.
13. The English drink tea.

14. Chinese is not easy to learn.
15. The Chinese have an interesting history.

Penjelasan:

Di (12) **English** = bahasa. Di (13) The English = orang-orang Inggris. Beberapa kata benda nasional (nama negara) yang berakhiran -sh, -ese, dan -ch bisa berarti bahasa ataupun penduduknya. Contoh: *English, Spanish, Chinese, Japanes, Vietnamese, Portuguese, French.*

16. The poor have many problems.
17. The rich get richer.

Penjelasan:

Beberapa kata sifat bisa didahului oleh kata "**the**" dan digunakan sebagai bentuk kata benda jamak (tanpa -s) untuk menyatakan orang-orang yang mempunyai sifat itu.

Contoh lain: the young, the elderly, the living, the dead, the blind, the deaf, the disabled.

18. The pants are in the drawer.
19. A pair of pants is in the drawer.
20. The scissors are dull.
21. The pair of scissors is dull.
22. The family was elated by the news.
23. The committee has met, and it rejected the proposal.
24. The flock of birds is circling overhead.
25. The herd of cattle is breaking away.

Penjelasan:

Juga banyak kata benda yang mengindikasikan banyak orang atau hewan adalah tunggal. Pada beberapa kasus kata-kata benda di atas bisa berbentuk jamak jika mengindikasikan individu-individu dari kelompok tersebut.

20

IMPERSONAL "IT"

A. PENGERTIAN DAN CONTOH KATA GANTI IMPERSONAL "IT"

Pronoun adalah kata ganti untuk orang atau benda. Kata ganti impersonal "it" merupakan salah satu bentuk kata ganti yang diucapkan untuk merujuk kepada sesuatu yang tidak jelas atau tidak dapat diidentifikasi.

Contoh:

It is so hot here = panas sekali di sini.

Jika dilihat dari terjemahan dalam bahasa Indonesianya saja, kita akan kesulitan menemukan subjek kalimatnya. Hal ini biasa digunakan jika ingin menekankan sebuah kata benda atau kata sifat sehingga ditempatkan di depan. Jika tidak ada penekanan, sebenarnya bisa menggunakan kalimat yang subjek kalimatnya lebih jelas seperti: Here is so hot.

a. Fungsi Kata Ganti Impersonal "It".

Berikut beberapa fungsi dan contoh kata ganti impersonal "it":

1. *Subjek kalimat.*

Contoh:

- It is snowing on the mountains.
- It is Sunday today.
- 'What is the time now?' 'It is 3 o'clock.'
- It is always cloudy on the hills.

2. *Sebagai penguat atau memberi tekanan yang diletakkan sebelum kata ganti atau kata benda.*

Contoh:

- It was Sandy who painted this picture.
- It was Michael who broke the window.
- It was Nani who made the cake.
- It was the Prime Minister who made this announcement.

3. Sebagai pengganti *to + infinitive*.

Contoh:

- It is not easy to defeat him.
(lebih mudah daripada mengatakan: to defeat him is not easy.)
- It is dangerous to play with fire.
(lebih mudah daripada mengatakan: to play with fire is dangerous).
- It is crazy to eat frog.
(lebih mudah daripada mengatakan: to eat frog is crazy).
- It is unbelievable to know you date with Shakira.
(lebih mudah daripada mengatakan: to know you date with Shakira is unbelievable).

b. Kalimat dengan Kata Kerja Impersonal (*Impersonal Verb*)

Impersonal verb adalah kata kerja yang digunakan bersama subjek tidak tentu (*indeterminate subject*) atau tanpa subjek dan menyatakan aksi yang tidak dilakukan oleh subjek (*agent-nya* tidak jelas). Di dalam bahasa Inggris, subjek tak tentu biasanya berupa kata ganti impersonal "it".

Contoh kata kerja impersonal antara lain: rain, thunder, dan snow.

Adapula pernyataan tanpa subjek seperti: "methinks" yang berarti "it seems to me" dan "lists" yang berarti "it pleases me".

Berikut beberapa contoh kalimat dengan kata kerja impersonal:

No	Contoh Kalimat <i>Impersonal Verb</i>
1	It snowed in the past three days. (Turun salju dalam tiga hari terakhir.)
2	Is it raining cats and dogs in your city right now? (Apa sedang hujan lebat di kotamu sekarang?)
3	If it thunders in the winter, will it snow within 10 days? (Jika bergemuruh di musim dingin, akankah turun salju dalam 10 hari?)
4	She said that she had to go home because it was growing dark. (Dia mengatakan bahwa dia harus pulang ke rumah karena mulai gelap.)
5	It is cold. You should wear a jacket and scarf. (Dingin. Kamu sebaiknya memakai jaket dan syal.)

B. PENGERTIAN KALIMAT APOSITIF (FRASA)

Apositif adalah kata berupa kata benda atau kata ganti yang digunakan untuk mendeskripsikan atau menjelaskan kata benda atau kata ganti lain.

Kata ini seringkali didampingi oleh modifier (kata yang menerangkan apositif) dan membentuk frasa apositif. Dengan demikian, frasa ini umumnya berupa frasa kata benda.

Contoh apositif (**Bold** = apositif; *Italic* = kata benda/kata ganti):

- Our friend Joe just became a new father. (apositif berupa kata benda)
- My brother, a chemical engineer, is very dilligent. (apositif berupa frasa kata benda)

C. POSISI APOSITIF

Apositif biasanya diletakkan setelah kata benda yang dideskripsikannya, namun mungkin bisa juga diletakkan sebelumnya. Lihat: *Delayed Appositive* (tidak segera setelah kata benda).

Contoh posisi apositif [**Bold** = apositif; *Italic* = kata benda/kata ganti]:

Sebelum Kata Benda	Setelah Kata Benda
A foremost scientist , <i>Niels Bohr</i> advocated the peaceful use of atomic energy. (Seorang ilmuwan terkemuka, Niels Bohr, menganjurkan penggunaan damai dari energi atom.)	<i>Niels Bohr</i> , a foremost scientist , menganjurkan the peaceful use of atomic energy.
The best-selling car in Indonesia , <i>Toyota Avanza</i> is produced by the Daihatsu manufacturer. (Mobil dengan penjualan terbaik di Indonesia, Toyota Avanza, diproduksi oleh pabrik Daihatsu.)	<i>Toyota Avanza</i> , the best-selling car in Indonesia , is produced by the Daihatsu manufacturer.

D. TANDA BACA DAN APOSITIF

Seperti yang berlaku pada relative clause, adanya tanda baca berupa koma (,) atau tanda strip (-) jika frasa apositif bersifat non-restrictive/non-defining/non-essential.

Non-restrictive appositive phrase berarti informasi tambahan yang dibawa oleh frasa tersebut bersifat tidak penting dan dapat dihilangkan.

Contoh kalimat dengan frasa apositif restriktif dan non-restriktif:

Contoh Kalimat	Keterangan
Frasa Apositif yang Restriktif	
A foremost <i>scientist</i> Niels Bohr advocated the peaceful use of atomic energy.	Subjek (<i>scientist & car</i>) terlalu umum, sehingga apositif (Niels Bohr & Toyota Avanza) tidak dapat dihilangkan (merupakan informasi yang penting). Jika dihilangkan, kalimat menjadi kurang/tidak jelas.
One of the best-selling <i>cars</i> in Indonesia Toyota Avanza is produced by the Daihatsu manufacturer.	
Frasa Apositif yang Non-Restriktif	
<i>Niels Bohr</i> , a foremost scientist , advocated the peaceful use of atomic energy.	Subjek (Niels Bohr & Toyota Avanza) dapat dimengerti sehingga apositif (<i>a foremost scientist & one of the best-selling car in Indonesia</i>) sesungguhnya dapat dihilangkan tanpa menyebabkan makna kalimat menjadi tidak jelas.
<i>Toyota Avanza</i> , one of the best-selling cars in Indonesia , is produced by the Daihatsu manufacturer.	

E. FRASA LAIN YANG MENJADI APOSITIF

Selain frasa kata benda, frasa-frasa lain seperti gerund (phrase) dan infinitive (phrase) dapat pula beraksi sebagai apositif. Hal ini disebabkan karena gerund dan infinitive merupakan verbal, yaitu suatu kata yang dibentuk dari kata kerja, namun berfungsi sebagai part of speech lain (kata benda).

Frasa	Contoh Kalimat dengan Frasa Apositif
Gerund (Phrase)	His hobby, sailing , takes a lot of time. (Hobinya, berlayar, memakan banyak waktu.)
	His hobby, sailing across the Pacific ocean , takes a lot of time. (Hobinya, berlayar menyeberangi Samudera Pasifik, memakan banyak waktu.)
Infinitive (Phrase)	His dream, to win , has made him work harder. (Mimpinya, untuk menang, telah membuatnya bekerja keras.)
	His dream, to win the tender , has made him work harder. (Mimpinya, untuk memenangi tender, telah membuatnya bekerja keras.)

F. MENGUBAH KALIMAT *ADJECTIVE CLAUSE* MENJADI APOSITIF

Kita pernah mempelajari atau menyinggung pelajaran mengenai klausa kata sifat (*adjective clause*) dan apositif (*appositive*) baru-baru ini. Kalimat *adjective clause* sendiri ternyata bisa diubah menjadi kalimat apositif mengingat kedua tipe kalimat ini berkaitan. Klausa kata sifat dan apositif sebenarnya memiliki kesamaan dalam kalimat, yakni sama-sama menjelaskan kata benda dalam kalimat.

Namun selain memiliki persamaan, untuk membedakan antara klausa kata sifat dan apositif adalah awalan penggunaannya yang diawali oleh *relative pronoun* (*who, which, that, etc*) untuk klausa kata sifat, sedangkan apositif berupa kata benda (*frasa*).

Klausa kata sifat dapat diubah menjadi apositif, namun hanya klausa yang kata kerjanya menggunakan *verb be* seperti *is, are, was, dan were* dan diikuti pelengkap subjek (kata yang berfungsi menerangkan subjek kalimat) berupa kata benda (*frasa*).

Pola penggunaan kalimat dengan klausa kata sifat adalah:

Relative pronoun + be (is/are/was/were) + noun (phrase)

Namun jika diubah menjadi apositif, maka polanya akan berubah menjadi:

Relative pronoun + be (is/are/was/were) + noun (phrase)

Maksud dari pola di atas adalah bahwa apositif cukup menggunakan kata benda (frasa) saja.

Agar bisa memahami, berikut beberapa contoh yang dapat Anda simak:

- *My brother, **who is an engineer**, works at the water treatment plant.*
(Saudara saya yang seorang teknisi bekerja di instalasi pengolahan air) (*Adjective Clause*)
- *My brother, **an engineer**, works at the water treatment plant.*
(Saudara saya, seorang teknisi, bekerja di instalasi pengolahan air.) (*Appositive*)
- *We have good shovel and pruning shears, **which are essential gardening tools**.* (*Adjective Clause*)
- *We have good shovel and pruning shears, essential gardening tools.*
(Kami punya sekop dan gunting bagus yang merupakan peralatan berkebun yang penting.) (*Appositive*)
- *Benjamin Franklin, **who was one of the Founding Fathers of the United States**, became a successful newspaper editor in Philadelphia.* (*Adjective Clause*)
- *Benjamin Franklin, **one of the Founding Fathers of the United States**, became a successful newspaper editor in Philadelphia.*
(Benjamin Franklin, satu dari pendiri Amerika Serikat, menjadi seorang editor surat kabar yang sukses di Philadelphia.) (*Appositive*)

G. FRASA APOSITIF

Frasa apositif yaitu sekelompok kata yang berfungsi memberi keterangan tambahan kepada subjek atau objek.

Frasa apositif dapat berupa kata benda, kata sifat, kata keterangan, atau frasa preposisi.

- Kata benda: He had asked Mr. Wilson, a prominent lawyer, to represent him in court.
- Kata sifat: The professor, unaware that many of his students were asleep, went right on lecturing.
- Kata keterangan: The gentleman over there by the door is our accountant.
- Frasa preposisi: Mr. Harris, in a hurry to get home, took a taxi from the airport.

a. Susunan Kalimat dengan Frasa Apositif

1. Perubahan klausa kata sifat menjadi frasa apositif

Klausa kata sifat yang mengandung bentuk *be* dapat disingkat menjadi frasa apositif dengan hanya mempertahankan pelengkap (*complement*) sesudah *be* (kata benda, kata sifat, kata keterangan, atau frasa preposisi).

- The young man, who is now a lawyer in a large firm, has lost much of his old ambition.
Menjadi: The young man, now a lawyer in a large firm, has lost much of his old ambition.
- The person who is responsible for the damage will have to pay for it.
Menjadi: The person responsible for the damage will have to pay for it.

2. Letak frasa apositif dalam kalimat

Letak frasa apositif yang paling umum adalah sesudah kata benda yang diterangkan olehnya, dan terletak di antara dua tanda koma.

- His uncle, a proud and unbending man, refused all help that was offered him.
- Ahmad, eager to get ahead in his career, worked hard day and night.
- The man, aware that he had made a mistake, tried to correct it.
- The high-powered computer machine, the most powerful of its type, was finally readied for use.

Namun frasa apositif yang mengacu (menerangkan) subjek dari kata kerja utama dapat pula diletakkan di awal kalimat atau di akhir kalimat.

- Di awal kalimat
 - A proud and unbending man, his uncle refused all help that was offered him.
 - Eager to get ahead in his career, Charles worked hard day and night.
(Pada posisi seperti ini, frasa apositif sering mengekspresikan sebab akibat, kadang-kadang kelonggaran.)
- Di akhir kalimat
 - His uncle refused all help that was offered him, a proud and unbending man.
 - Charles worked hard day and night, eager to get ahead in his career.

EXERCISE I:

Underline the correct answer!

1. My mom (*reads, read*) a short story to my little sister every night.
2. Loving you with all my heart (*are, is*) a crime.
3. Equality between men and women (*was, were*) often not taken for granted in the past.
4. On the wall (*was, were*) several posters.
5. This year's deficit, together with those of previous years, (*has, have*) caused the company to go bankrupt.
6. The poor (*do, does*) not have the same right to be here.
7. To show what he feels (*need, needs*) a long time.
8. Twenty dollars (*is, are*) too expensive to buy the bag.
9. Sometimes what we face (*is, are*) never as beautiful as what we want.
10. The police (*has, have*) just caught the thieves.
11. Who (*was, were*) at the party?
12. There (*was, were*) no one.
13. Here (*is, are*) the news stories you asked.
14. In my country, every house (*has, have*) a big stone fence.
15. There (*is, are*) a lot of problems that (*needs, need*) to be discussed.
16. Where (*do, does*) Dicky's friends live?
17. Maya and Alya (*has, have*) been here for 2 months.
18. The star of the show (*acts, act*) very well, and so (*does, do*) all the other members of the cast.
19. Everybody (*are, is*) coming to see the play.
20. The shoes he always wear (*was, were*) stolen last night.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|----------|--------------|
| 1. Reads | 11. Were |
| 2. Is | 12. Was |
| 3. Was | 13. Are |
| 4. Were | 14. Has |
| 5. Has | 15. Is |
| 6. Does | 16. Do |
| 7. Need | 17. Have |
| 8. Is | 18. Acts, do |
| 9. Is | 19. Is |
| 10. Has | 20. Were |

EXERCISE I:

Select one answer from the choices provided after each sentence. The word you choose should fit the blank in the sentence!

1. Either the physicians in this hospital or the chief administrator going to have to make a decision.
A. is
B. are
2. my boss or my sisters in the union going to win this grievance?
A. is
B. are
3. Some of the votes to have been miscounted.
A. seem
B. seems
4. The tornadoes that tear through this county every spring more than just a nuisance.
A. are
B. is
5. Everyone selected to serve on this jury to be willing to give up a lot of time.
A. have
B. has
6. Kara Wolters, together with her teammates, a formidable opponent on the basketball court.
A. presents
B. present
7. He seems to forget that there things to be done before he can graduate.
A. are
B. is
8. There to be some people left in that town after yesterday's flood.
A. have
B. has

9. Some of the grain to be contaminated.
A. appear
B. appears
10. Three-quarters of the students against the tuition hike.
A. is
B. are

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. A | 6. B |
| 2. B | 7. A |
| 3. A | 8. A |
| 4. A | 9. A |
| 5. B | 10. B |

21

INTRODUCTORY

A. INTRODUCTORY VERBAL MODIFIERS

Introductory verbal modifiers menerangkan subjek dan kata kerja dalam klausa utama sebuah kalimat. Mereka bisa berupa bentuk -ing, bentuk -ed, atau infinitif. Mereka biasanya terpisah dari klausa dengan sebuah koma (,).

Verbal modifier menerangkan kata benda yang langsung mengikutinya. Jika tidak, hubungan antara kata benda dan pengubah menjadi tidak jelas dan kalimat menjadi tidak logis.

Salah : *After graduating, Prof. Smith's studies were continued.*

Benar : *After graduating, Prof. Smith continued his studies.*

("After graduating" modifies "Prof. Smith", rather than "studies", because it was Prof. Smith, not his studies, who did graduate.)

Salah : *Accustomed to getting up early, the new schedule was no difficult for him to adjust to.*

Benar : *Accustomed to getting up early, he had no difficulty adjusting to the new schedule.*

("Accustomed to getting up early" modifies "he", because it was he, not the schedule, who is accustomed).

B. INTRODUCTORY "IT"

Bila subjek berupa frasa infinitif, kalimat dimulai dengan *it*. Selain mengatakan 'To find fault with others is easy', kita mengatakan, 'It is easy to find fault with others'.

Contoh:

- It is easy to learn English. (More natural than 'To learn English is easy'.)
- It was not easy to understand his motive.
- It may be advisable to consult a specialist.

- It could be dangerous to drive so fast.
- It was pleasant to sit on the beach.

Tetapi, ketika kita ingin menekankan frasa infinitif, "it" dapat diletakkan di awal terutama jika frasanya pendek.

- To err is human.
- To withdraw now will be sheer folly.

Ketika subjeknya berupa frasa yang melibatkan sebuah *gerund*, "it" digunakan sebagai subjek sementara untuk memulai kalimat. Alih-alih mengatakan 'Your trying to deceive us is no good', kita bisa mengatakan 'It is no good your trying to deceive us'.

- Will it be any good my talking to him about it?
- It is no use arguing with him.
- It won't be much good complaining to the officer about it.

Ingat bahwa *gerund* dapat diubah menjadi infinitif.

- Will it be any good for me to talk to him about it?

Ketika subjeknya berbentuk klausa, kalimatnya biasanya dimulai dengan "it". Alih-alih mengatakan 'That she was once a famous artist is true', kita bisa mengatakan, 'It is true that she was once a famous artist'.

- It does not matter whether he comes or not. (= Whether he comes or not does not matter.)
- It is doubtful whether he can pay the dues. (= Whether he can pay the dues is doubtful.)
- It cannot be denied that the doctors did their best to save his life. (= That the doctors did their best to save his life cannot be denied.)

EXERCISE:

Rewrite the following sentences using 'introductory it'!

1. To become a millionaire was his life-long ambition.
2. To withdraw now will be sheer folly.
3. To err is human, to forgive, divine.
4. To learn English is easy.
5. To understand his motive was difficult.
6. To think of it now would be premature.
7. To drive so fast could be dangerous.
8. To get such an offer must be tempting.

9. To consult specialists must be advisable.
10. To accept your advice is difficult.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

1. It was his life-long ambition to become a millionaire.
2. It will be sheer folly to withdraw now.
3. It is human to err; it is divine to forgive.
4. It is easy to learn English.
5. It was difficult to understand his motive.
6. It would be premature to think of it now.
7. It could be dangerous to drive so fast.
8. It must be tempting to get such an offer.
9. It must be advisable to consult specialists.
10. It is difficult to accept advice.

22

PARALLEL STRUCTURE

A. PENGERTIAN *PARALLEL STRUCTURE*

Struktur paralel (*parallel structure*) atau parallelism berarti elemen-elemen kalimat yang memiliki fungsi yang sama dan menggunakan konstruksi atau pola gramatikal yang sama pula. Elemen-elemen kalimat tersebut meliputi kata, frasa, maupun klausa. Menggunakan *parallel structure* dalam kalimat akan membuat tulisan menjadi lebih jelas dan menyenangkan untuk dibaca.

B. ATURAN STRUKTUR PARALEL (*PARALLEL STRUCTURE RULES*)

Beberapa aturan dan contoh kalimat *parallel structure* pada berbagai kasus adalah sebagai berikut:

1. Parallelism diterapkan pada elemen-elemen yang dihubungkan oleh *coordinate conjunction* (*and, or, etc.*). Di dalam suatu lists (daftar) atau series (rangkaian), jika elemen-elemen yang dihubungkan diawali oleh *article* (*a, an, the*) atau preposisi (*to, at, in, etc.*), maka *article* atau preposisi tersebut digunakan pada setiap elemen atau hanya pada elemen yang pertama saja.

Contoh Salah	Contoh Benar
While Mario was sleeping, his bag and what its contents disappeared.	While Mario was sleeping, his bag and its contents disappeared. (Ketika Mario sedang tidur, tas dan isinya hilang.)

The air force base may be in the north, the south, west, and east.	The air force base may be in the north, the south, the west, and the east. (Pangkalan angkatan udara tersebut mungkin di utara, selatan, barat, atau timur.)
The show will be held in Bandung, Jakarta, Semarang, and in Yogyakarta.	The show will be held in Bandung, Jakarta, Semarang, and Yogyakarta. (Pertunjukkan akan diadakan di Bandung, Jakarta, Semarang, dan Yogyakarta.)

2. Parallelism diterapkan pada elemen-elemen yang dihubungkan *correlative conjunction*.

Contoh Salah	Contoh Benar
He can <i>not only</i> drive a car <i>but also</i> a helicopter.	He can drive <i>not only</i> a car <i>but also</i> a helicopter. [atau He can <i>not only</i> drive a car <i>but also</i> drive a helicopter.] (Dia dapat mengendarai tidak hanya mobil tetapi juga helikopter.)
This book is <i>not</i> for you <i>but</i> your cousin.	This book is <i>not</i> for you <i>but</i> for your cousin. (Buku ini bukan untukmu tetapi untuk sepupumu.)

3. Parallelism diterapkan pada elemen-elemen yang dibandingkan (*comparison*).

Contoh Salah	Contoh Benar
I like swimming <i>better than</i> to bike.	I like swimming better than biking. [atau I like to swim <i>better than</i> to bike.] (Saya lebih suka berenang daripada bersepeda.)

My handphone is *cheaper than my brother*.

My handphone is *cheaper than my brother's*.

(Ponsel saya lebih murah dari ponsel saudara saya.)

EXERCISE:

Add a parallel element to the sentence!

1. 'Star Wars' was one of Georege Lucas' **finest** and (*most famous, most famously*) ... movies.
2. While I watch movies, I **eat popcorn** and (*sit, sitting, am sitting*) ... with my family.
3. **Sitting in a theater** and (*hear, to hear, hearing*) ... everyone's reaction fun too.
4. A lot of times, during movies people **are talking** and (*shout, shouting*) ... out jokes.
5. I like the part in the movie when he walks **slowly** and (*cautious, cautiously*) ... towards the alien being.
6. The little furry man tells every one **where to go** and (*how they can get, how to get*) ... there
7. Obe Wan is **understanding, patient,** and (*kider, kinderly, kindly, kind*) ... to Luke Skywalker.
8. Not only do they **blow up the space ship,** but they also (*destroy, destroying*) ... space colony.
9. Both he and his navigator **fly through flames** and (*avoid, avoids*) ... on coming gunfire.
10. In the end, he either has **to kill his own father** or (*to killed, being killed, will kill*) ... by his own father.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. most famous | 6. how they get |
| 2. sit | 7. kind |
| 3. hearing | 8. destroy |
| 4. shouting | 9. avoid |
| 5. cautiously | 10. to killed |

EXERCISE:

Parallel Structure in the following pairs, one sentence has parallel structure, and the other sentence lacks parallel structure. Mark the CORRECT sentence!

- A. ... Jennifer is smart, beautiful, and loves everyone.
B. ... Jennifer is smart, beautiful, and caring.
- A. ... Andy's day is so long that he gets up at 6:00 a.m., leaves for work at 6:30 a.m., is eating dinner at 11:00 p.m., and goes to bed at 2:00 a.m.
B. ... Andy's day is so long that he gets up at 6:00 a.m., leaves for work at 6:30 a.m., eats dinner at 11:00 p.m., and goes to bed at 2:00 a.m.
- A. ... Bob was not only Sam's roommate, but also he was his best friend.
B. ... Bob was not only Sam's roommate, but also his best friend.
- A. ... If you go to the store, please remember to pick up your prescription, buy some shampoo, and to look for a notebook.
B. ... If you go to the store, please remember to pick up your prescription, to buy some shampoo, and to look for a notebook.
- A. ... I spent two hours with Ms. Smith, reviewing my job performance, evaluating my goals, and discussing my future with the company.
B. ... I spent two hours with Ms. Smith, reviewing my job performance, evaluating my goals, and my future with the company was also discussed.
- A. ... Mr. Brown's lecture was inaccurate, boring, and unnecessary.
B. ... Mr. Brown's lecture was inaccurate, boring, and should have been omitted.
- A. ... Most people play golf for pleasure, for exercise, and for social contacts.
B. ... Most people play golf for pleasure, for exercise, and so they can meet people.
- A. ... The most dangerous forms of transportation are bicycles, cars, and riding a motorcycle.
B. ... The most dangerous forms of transportation are bicycles, cars, and motorcycles.

9. A. ... Many people share the same three fears: making speeches, being in high places, and numbers.
B. ... Many people share the same three fears: making speeches, being in high places, and working with numbers.
10. A. ... At the body shop, the car was sanded to the bare metal, painted with primer, and sprayed with blue enamel.
B. ... At the body shop, the car was sanded to the bare metal, painted with primer, and blue enamel was sprayed on.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

1. Jawaban A salah.
Smart dan *beautiful* adalah kata sifat, tetapi *loves everyone* adalah frasa.
Jawaban B benar.
2. Jawaban A salah.
Gets up, leaves, and goes adalah dalam bentuk *present tense*. *Is eating* adalah *present progressive tense*.
Jawaban B benar.
3. Jawaban A salah.
Sam's roommate adalah frasa, dan *he was his best friend* adalah kalimat.
Jawaban B benar.
4. Jawaban A salah.
To dipakai dalam frasa pertama dan frasa ketiga, jadi *to should* juga dipakai dalam frasa kedua.
Jawaban B benar.
5. **Jawaban A benar.**
Jawaban B salah.
Reviewing my job performance dan evaluating my goals adalah frasa. *My future with the company was also discussed* adalah kalimat.
6. **Jawaban A benar.**
Jawaban B salah.
Inaccurate dan *boring* adalah kata sifat. *Should have been omitted* adalah sebuah frasa.

7. **Jawaban A benar.**
Jawaban B salah.
For pleasure dan *for exercise* adalah frasa preposisi. *So they can meet people* adalah klausa.
8. Jawaban A salah.
Bicycles dan *cars* adalah kata benda. *Riding a motorcycle* adalah frasa.
Jawaban B benar.
9. Jawaban A salah.
Making speeches dan *being in high places* adalah frasa. *Numbers* adalah kata benda.
Jawaban B benar.
10. **Jawaban A benar.**
Jawaban B salah.
Sanded to the bare metal dan *painted with primer* adalah kata kerja dan frasa preposisi. *Blue enamel was sprayed on* adalah sebuah kalimat.

EXERCISE:

Select the word that is consistent with the rules of parallel structure!

1. The Freeport Board of Education wants students to take more required courses and ...
them before they can earn a diploma.
A. passing
B. pass
2. By a vote of 6 to 1, the board last night approved requirements beginning the freshman year and ... through the senior year.
A. extending
B. extend
3. The requirements include four years of English, two years of science and mathematics and ... of a foreign language.
A. three
B. three years

4. Board members expressed concern about the large numbers of Freeport high school graduates who failed college entrance exams and ... placed in remedial courses.
 - A. are
 - B. were

5. Too many graduates find they cannot read well, write properly or ..., board members felt.
 - A. logically think
 - B. think logically

6. They agreed that it is easier ... students in high school than to have them spend money to take remedial college courses.
 - A. to prepare
 - B. preparing

7. The lone dissenting vote was cast by Edwin Minter, who said that the action is punitive and ... bound to create turmoil in the high schools.
 - A. is
 - B. was

8. Minter also said the proposal would fall disproportionately on the foreign born, the late bloomers and ... poor.
 - A. those who are
 - B. the

9. Albert Swimmer disagreed. He said that providing students with a better education and ... them intellectual stimulation should be the aim of high school.
 - A. to give
 - B. giving

10. The majority agreed the proposal will require smaller classes, better teacher training and ...
 - A. money
 - B. more money

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. B | 6. A |
| 2. A | 7. B |
| 3. B | 8. B |
| 4. B | 9. B |
| 5. B | 10. B |

23

REDUNDANCY

Redundancy artinya berlebihan atau pemborosan. Sebuah kalimat dikatakan *redundant* (berlebihan) bila ada kata atau kelompok kata tambahan yang tidak perlu dalam kalimat dan tanpa kata tersebut pun maksudnya tetap sama.

Contoh *redundancy*:

Advance forward (maju ke depan)
Return back (mengembalikan kembali)
Sufficient enough (cukup)
Compete together (bersaing bersama)
Join together (bergabung bersama)
Repeat again (mengulangi lagi)
New innovations (inovasi baru)
The time when (waktu ketika)
The place where (tempat di mana)

Contoh dalam kalimat:

The motorcycle advanced **forward** slowly in the rain.
You have to **return back** the car before Friday.
She did not have **sufficient enough** time to finish her homework.
We have to **compete together** very tightly in this game.
I want you to **join together** our tour next month.
Now, **repeat again** what he has said.
Students should have **new** innovation in learning.
I do not know **the time when** she left the party.

Berikut ini adalah daftar *redundancy* yang biasa dipakai dan pembetulannya:

REDUNDANT	CORRECT
advance forward	advance
advance planning	planning

appears to be	is
as to whether	whether
attach together	attach
basic essentials	essentials
blue in color	blue
but nevertheless	nevertheless
cheaper in cost	cheaper
circle around	circle
close proximity	proximity
Combine together	combine
completely eliminate	eliminate
completely finished	finished
connect together	connect
consensus of opinion	consensus
descend down	descend
disappear from view	disappear
each and every day	each day, every day, daily
end result	result
few in number	few
filled to capacity	filled
final outcome	outcome
first priority	priority
follow after	follow
free gift	gift
gather together	gather
important essentials	essentials
last of all	last
lift up	lift

local resident	resident
may possibly	possibly
never at any time	never
new beginning	beginning
original source	source
past history	history
penetrate into	penetrate
personal opinion	opinion
postponed until later	postponed
refer back	refer
repeat again	repeat
return back	return
separate apart	separate
small/large in size	small, large
square/round in shape	square/round
surround on all sides	surround
total annihilation/extinction/ destruction	annihilation/extinction/destruction
true facts	facts
violent explosion	explosion
3 p.m. in the afternoon	3:00 p.m.

Redundancy juga dapat terjadi saat sebuah gagasan diulangi secara tidak perlu di dalam sebuah kalimat.

Contoh:

Astonished, the natives stared at the automobile in amazement.

Astonished dan *amazement* memiliki arti yang sama, dan karena itu menjadi *redundant* di dalam kalimat. Kalimat tersebut harus ditulis ulang untuk menghapus salah satu kata.

Pembetulan:

The natives stared at the automobile in amazement.

EXERCISE I:

Eliminate the redundant words!

1. Her handbag was square in shape.
2. Detectives search for the true facts in an investigation.
3. The consensus of opinion on the basic fundamentals created the shortest meeting of the year.
4. If you refer back to the day of March 18 at eight o'clock in the morning, you will recall seeing a woman wearing a dress that was red in color gather together her belongings before crossing the street.
5. Even though she had performed the operation a numerous number of times, she still reviewed the basic essentials each and every day.
6. The first priority appears to be to group together the children that live in close proximity to one another.
7. The local residents filled to capacity the new auditorium as they waited to hear the developer recount the past history of the archaeological site.
8. Advance planning can avoid total destruction of a historical site.
9. Fruit at Winn Dixie may possibly be cheaper in cost than fruit at Publix, but nevertheless it is of poorer quality
10. In my personal opinion, we should refer back to last year's budget to see how we postponed that expenditure until a later time.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

1. Her handbag was square ~~in shape~~.
2. Detectives search for the ~~true~~ facts in an investigation.
3. The consensus ~~of opinion~~ on the ~~basic~~ fundamentals created the shortest meeting of the year.
4. If you refer ~~back to the day of~~ March 18 at eight ~~o'clock in the morning~~, you will recall seeing a woman wearing a dress that was red ~~in color~~ gather ~~together~~ her belongings before crossing the street.
5. Even though she had performed the operation a numerous ~~number~~ of times, she still reviewed the basic ~~essentials each and~~ every day.
6. The ~~first~~ priority appears to be to group ~~together~~ the children that live in close proximity to one another.
7. The ~~local~~ residents filled ~~to capacity~~ the new auditorium as they waited to hear the developer recount the ~~past~~ history of the archaeological site.
8. ~~Advance~~ planning can avoid total destruction of a historical site.
9. Fruit at Winn Dixie ~~may possibly be cheaper in cost than~~ fruit at Publix, ~~but~~ nevertheless it is of poorer quality

10. In my **personal** opinion, we should refer **back** to last year's budget to see how we postponed that expenditure until a later time.

EXERCISE 1:

Revise the following sentences to eliminate redundancy! Not all the expressions used in the following sentences are contained in the table. You should be "hearing" redundant expressions as you read these sentences.

1. Physical aerobic exercise is recommended for healthy hearts.
2. Conrad sold houses in a large 600-acre housing development.
3. Modern antiques that have been made recently have been offered at high prices.
4. Last of all, I would like to completely finish this exercise before I go to bed.
5. Although my future plans are uncertain, I intend to adhere to my basic and fundamental belief that humans were meant to be lazy.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

In the first sentence of each pair, the redundant words are in bold letters. In the second sentence, the redundancy has been eliminated.

1. **Physical** aerobic exercise is recommended for healthy hearts.
Answer: Aerobic exercise is recommended for healthy hearts.
2. Conrad sold houses in a **large** 600-acre housing development.
Answer: Conrad sold houses in a 600-acre housing development
3. "Modern antiques" **that have been made recently** have been offered at high prices.
Answer: "Modern antiques" have been offered at high prices.
4. Last **of all**, I would like to **completely** finish this exercise before I go to bed.
Answer: Last, I would like to finish this exercise before I go to bed.
5. Although my **future** plans are uncertain, I intend to adhere to my **basic and** fundamental belief that humans were meant to be lazy.
Answer: Although my plans are uncertain, I intend to adhere to my fundamental belief that humans were meant to be lazy.

EXERCISE I:

In the following sentences, ideas are repeated. Underline the redundant expressions and rewrite the sentences to achieve clarity!

1. People pay good money and spend hardearned dollars for labor-saving devices to save time from their busy lives.
2. Mall researchers often interview and talk to many people who are respondents for their surveys.
3. In a very real sense, the side effects of today's medical discoveries have created many health complications, including results that are not related to a drug's purpose.
4. In point of fact, people who fail to have success in their careers frequently give up too easily and are not tenacious in sticking to their goals.
5. If you want to have a clear direction in your career, your skills and achievements should be written down in a written inventory that you incorporate into your career path.

KUNCI JAWABAN:

In the first sentence of each pair, the redundant expressions are in bold letters.

Notice how the bold letters make the repetition of ideas very apparent.

The second sentence of each pair is rewritten to eliminate the redundancy.

1. People **pay good money** and **spend hard-earned dollars** for **labor-saving** devices **to save time** from their busy lives.
Answer: Busy people spend hard-earned dollars for labor-saving devices.
2. Mall researchers often **interview** and **talk** to many **people** who are **respondents** for their surveys. **Answer:** Mall researchers often interview many respondents for their surveys.
3. **In a very real sense**, the **side effects** of today's **pharmaceutical** discoveries have created many health complications, **including results that are not related** to a **drug's** purpose.
Answer: The side effects of today's pharmaceutical discoveries have created many unrelated health complications.

4. **In point of fact**, people who **fail to have success** in their careers frequently **give up too easily** and are **not tenacious in sticking** to their goals.

Answer: People who fail in their careers frequently do not tenaciously stick to their goals.

5. If you want to have a **clear direction in your career**, your skills and achievements should be **written down** in a **written inventory** that you incorporate into your **career** path.

Answer: If you want to have a career path, your skills and achievements should be inventoried.

24

GERUND DAN INFINITIVE

(a)	<p style="text-align: center;">S V</p> <p>Playing tennis is fun.</p>	<p><i>Gerund</i> adalah bentuk <i>-ing</i> dari kata kerja yang dipakai sebagai kata kerja dari kata benda. <i>Gerund</i> dipakai sama seperti kata benda, misalnya subjek atau objek</p>
(b)	<p style="text-align: center;">S V O</p> <p>We enjoy playing tennis.</p>	<p>Dalam (a): <i>playing</i> adalah <i>gerund</i>. Dia dipakai sebagai subjek kalimat. <i>Playing tennis</i> adalah <i>gerund phrase</i>.</p>
(c)	<p style="text-align: center;"> PREP O</p> <p>He's excited about playing tennis.</p>	<p>Dalam (b): <i>playing</i> dipakai sebagai objek dari kata kerja <i>enjoy</i>. Dalam (c): <i>playing</i> dipakai sebagai objek dari preposisi (kata depan) <i>about</i>.</p>

Bandingkan dengan penggunaan bentuk *-ing* dari kata kerja:

- (1) *Walking is good exercise.* → *walking* = *gerund*, digunakan sebagai subjek kalimat.
- (2) *Bob and Ann are playing tennis.* → *playing* = *a present participle*, digunakan dalam *present progressive tense*.
- (3) *I heard some surprising news.* → *surprising* = *a present participle*, digunakan sebagai kata sifat.

A. GERUND SEBAGAI OBJEK PREPOSISI

<p>(1) We talked about going to Canada for our vacation,</p> <p>(2) Sue is in charge of organizing the meeting,</p> <p>(3) I'm interested in learning more about your work.</p>	<p>Sebuah <i>gerund</i> sering dipakai sebagai objek dari preposisi.</p>
<p>(4) I'm used to sleeping with the window open.</p> <p>(5) I'm accustomed to sleeping* with the window open.</p> <p>(6) I look forward to going home next month.</p> <p>(7) They object to changing their plans at this late date.</p>	<p>Dalam (4) sampai (7) "to" dipakai sebagai preposisi, bukan bagian dari bentuk infinitive, maka diikuti oleh <i>gerund</i>.</p>
<p>(8) We talked about not going to the meeting, but finally decided we should go.</p>	<p>Bentuk negatif: tidak didahului <i>gerund</i>.</p>

*Dimungkinkan dalam *British English*: *I'm accustomed to sleep with the window open.*

B. KATA KERJA YANG LAZIM DIKUTI OLEH GERUND

<p>V + GERUND</p> <p>(1) I enjoy playing tennis.</p>	<p><i>Gerund</i> dipakai sebagai objek dari kata kerja tertentu.</p> <p>Dalam (1), <i>enjoy</i> diikuti oleh <i>gerund</i> (<i>playing</i>).</p> <p><i>Enjoy</i> tidak diikuti oleh <i>to infinitive</i>.</p> <p>SALAH: I enjoy to play tennis.</p> <p>Kata kerja umum yang diikuti <i>gerund</i> dapat dilihat di daftar yang ada di bawah.</p>
<p>(2) Joe quit smoking.</p> <p>(3) Joe gave up smoking.</p>	<p>(2) and (3) mempunyai arti yang sama. Beberapa kata kerja dua-kata (<i>two-words verb</i>), seperti <i>give up</i>, diikuti oleh <i>gerund</i>.</p> <p>Contoh kata kerja dua-kata seperti yang ada di dalam kurung dapat dilihat di daftar di bawah.</p>

V + GERUND

enjoy	postpone (put off)
quit (give up)	discuss (talk about)
avoid	mind stop*
consider (think about)	delay
appreciate	mention
finish (get through)	suggest
keep (keep on)	

**Stop* juga bisa langsung diikuti oleh *infinitive of purpose (in order to)*.

Bandingkan:

- (1) *stop + gerund*: When the professor entered the room, the students stopped talking. The room became quiet.
- (2) *stop + infinitive of purpose*: While I was walking down the street, I ran into an old friend. I stopped to talk to him. (I stopped walking in order to talk to him.)

C. KATA KERJA YANG LAZIM DIKUTI INFINITIVE

V + INFINITIVE (1) I hope to see you again soon. (2) He promised to be here by ten. (3) He promised not to be late.	Beberapa kata kerja secara langsung diikuti oleh infinitive, seperti dalam (1) dan (2). Lihat kelompok A di bawah. Bentuk negatif: 'not' mendahului infinitive.
V + (PRONOUN + INFINITIVE) (4) Mr. Lee told me to be here at ten o'clock. (5) The police ordered the driver to stop.	Beberapa kata kerja diikuti oleh kata ganti (<i>pronoun</i>) dan kemudian infinitive, seperti dalam (4) dan (5). Lihat Group B di bawah.
(6) I was told to be here at ten o'clock. (7) The driver was ordered to stop.	Kata kerja langsung diikuti oleh infinitive ketika dipakai dalam kalimat pasif, seperti dalam (6) dan (7).

<p>(8) I expect to pass the test. (9) I expect Mary to pass the test.</p>	<p><i>Ask, expect, would like, want, dan need</i> bisa atau tidak diikuti oleh objek kata ganti.</p> <p>Bandingkan: In (8): I think I will pass the test. In (9): I think Mary will pass the test.</p>																		
<p>GROUP A: V + INFINITIVE</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>hope to</td> <td>promise to</td> <td>seem to</td> <td>ask to plan</td> </tr> <tr> <td>agree to</td> <td>appear to</td> <td>expect to intend to*</td> <td>offer to</td> </tr> <tr> <td>pretend to</td> <td>would like to</td> <td>decide to refuse to</td> <td>want to need to</td> </tr> </table>		hope to	promise to	seem to	ask to plan	agree to	appear to	expect to intend to*	offer to	pretend to	would like to	decide to refuse to	want to need to						
hope to	promise to	seem to	ask to plan																
agree to	appear to	expect to intend to*	offer to																
pretend to	would like to	decide to refuse to	want to need to																
<p>GROUP B: V + (PRONOUN + INFINITIVE)</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>tell someone to</td> <td>invite someone to</td> <td>require someone to</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ask someone to</td> <td>advise someone to**</td> <td>permit someone to</td> </tr> <tr> <td>order someone to</td> <td>expect someone to</td> <td>encourage someone to</td> </tr> <tr> <td>allow someone to</td> <td>force someone to</td> <td>would like someone to</td> </tr> <tr> <td>remind someone to</td> <td>warn someone to</td> <td>want someone to</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td>need someone to</td> </tr> </table>		tell someone to	invite someone to	require someone to	ask someone to	advise someone to**	permit someone to	order someone to	expect someone to	encourage someone to	allow someone to	force someone to	would like someone to	remind someone to	warn someone to	want someone to			need someone to
tell someone to	invite someone to	require someone to																	
ask someone to	advise someone to**	permit someone to																	
order someone to	expect someone to	encourage someone to																	
allow someone to	force someone to	would like someone to																	
remind someone to	warn someone to	want someone to																	
		need someone to																	

* *Intend* biasanya diikuti oleh infinitive (*intend to go to the meeting*), tetapi kadang-kadang boleh diikuti oleh gerund (*I intend going to the meeting*) dengan tidak mengubah arti.

** *Gerund* dipakai setelah *advise* (aktif) bila tidak ada objek kata ganti.

Bandingkan:

- (1) He advised buying a Fiat.
- (2) He advised me to buy a Fiat. I was advised to buy a Fiat.

D. GO + GERUND

(a) Did you go shopping?	Go is followed by a gerund express, for the most part, in certain idiomatic expressions to recreational activities.	
(b) We went fishing yesterday.		
GO + GERUND		
Go birdwatching	go hiking	go sightseeing
Go boating	go hunting	go skating

Go bowling	go jogging	go skiing
Go camping	go mountain climbing	go sledding
Go canoeing	go running	go swimming
Go dancing	go sailing	go tobogganing
Go fishing	go shopping	go window shopping

E. KATA KERJA YANG LAZIM DIKUTI INFINITIVE ATAU GERUND

Beberapa kata kerja dapat diikuti oleh baik sebuah infinitif atau *gerund*, kadang dengan arti yang tidak berbeda, seperti yang ada di Grup A di bawah, dan kadang dengan arti yang berbeda, seperti di Grup B di bawah.

GRUP A: V + INFINITIVE atau GERUND (TANPA PERBEDAAN ARTI)

Kata kerja di Grup A dapat diikuti baik oleh sebuah infinitive atau *gerund* dengan sedikit atau tanpa perbedaan dalam artinya.

Begin, like, hate

start, love, can't stand

continue, prefer, can't bear*

- (1) It began to rain. It began raining.
- (2) I started to work. I started working.
- (3) It was beginning to rain.

Dalam (1): Tidak ada perbedaan antara "began to rain" and "began raining."
Bila dalam bentuk *progressive*, infinitive (bukan *gerund*) biasanya dipakai.

GRUP B: V + INFINITIVE atau GERUND (DENGAN PERBEDAAN ARTI)

Kata kerja di Grup B dapat diikuti baik oleh sebuah infinitive atau *gerund*, tetapi artinya berbeda.

Remember, regret, forget, try.

<p>(4) Judy always remembers to lock the door.</p>	<p><i>Remember</i> + infinitive = ingat, menunjukkan tanggung jawab, kewajiban, atau tugas, seperti kalimat (4).</p>
<p>(5) Sam often forgets to lock the door.</p>	<p><i>Forget</i> + infinitive = lupa melaksanakan sebuah tanggung jawab, kewajiban, atau tugas, seperti kalimat (5).</p>
<p>(6) I remember seeing the Alps for the first time. The sight was impressive.</p>	<p><i>Remember</i> + <i>gerund</i> = mengingat sesuatu yang terjadi pada masa lalu, seperti kalimat (6).</p>
<p>(7) I'll never forget seeing the Alps for the first time.</p>	<p><i>Forget</i> + <i>gerund</i> = melupakan sesuatu yang terjadi di masa lalu, seperti kalimat (7).**</p>
<p>(8) I regret to tell you that you failed the test.</p>	<p>Regret + infinitive = menyesal mengatakan, memberi tahu seseorang, menginformasikan kabar buruk pada seseorang, seperti kalimat (8).</p>
<p>(9) I regret lending him some money. He never paid me back.</p>	<p>Regret + <i>gerund</i> = menyesal atas sesuatu yang terjadi di masa lalu, seperti kalimat (9).</p>
<p>(10) I'm trying to learn English.</p>	<p>Try + infinitive = membuat usaha, seperti dalam kalimat (10).</p>
<p>(11) The room was hot. I tried opening the window, but that didn't help. So I tried turning on the fan, but I was still hot. Finally, I turned on the air conditioner.</p>	<p>Try + <i>gerund</i> = bereksperimen dengan pendekatan baru atau berbeda untuk melihat apakah hal itu berhasil, seperti kalimat (11).</p>

*Perhatikan polanya dengan *prefer*:

prefer + *gerund*: I prefer staying home to going to the concert.

prefer + infinitive: I prefer to stay home than (to) go to the concert.

****Forget** yang diikuti oleh *gerund* biasanya muncul dalam kalimat negatif atau pertanyaan, misalnya *I'll never forget, I can't forget, Have you ever forgotten, dan Can you ever forget* dapat diikuti oleh frasa *gerund*.

F. KATA KERJA YANG DIKUTI GERUND

1. admit	He admitted stealing the money.
2. advise	She advised waiting until tomorrow.
3. anticipate	I anticipate having a good time on vacation.
4. appreciate	I appreciated hearing from them.
5. avoid	He avoided answering my question.
6. complete	I finally completed writing my term.
7. consider	I will consider going with you.
8. delay	He delayed leaving for school.
9. deny	She denied committing the crime.
10. discuss	They discussed opening a new business.
11. dislike	I dislike driving long distances.
12. enjoy	We enjoyed visiting them.
13. finish	She finished studying about ten.
14. forget	I'll never forget visiting Napoleon's tomb.
15. can't help	I can't help worrying about it.
16. keep	I keep hoping he will come.
17. mention	She mentioned going to a movie.
18. mind	Would you mind helping me with this?
19. miss	I miss being with my family.
20. postpone	Let's postpone leaving until tomorrow.
21. practice	The athlete practiced throwing the ball.
22. quit	He quit trying to solve the problem.
23. recall	I don't recall meeting him before.

24. recollect	I don't recollect meeting him before.
25. recommend	She recommended seeing the show.
26. regret	I regret telling him my secret.
27. remember	I can remember meeting him when I was a child.
28. resent	I resent her interfering in my business.
29. resist	I couldn't resist eating the dessert.
30. risk	She risks losing all of her money.
31. stop	She stopped going to classes when she got sick.
32. suggest	She suggested going to a movie.
33. tolerate	She won't tolerate cheating during an examination.
34. understand	I don't understand him leaving school.

G. KATA KERJA YANG DIKUTI *INFINITIVE*

a. KATA KERJA YANG LANGSUNG DIKUTI <i>INFINITIVE</i>	
1. afford	I can't afford to buy it.
2. agree	They agreed to help us.
3. appear	She appears to be tired.
4. arrange	I'll arrange to meet you at the airport.
5. ask	He asked to come with us.
6. beg	He begged to come with us.
7. care	I don't care to see that show.
8. claim	She claims to know a famous movie star.
9. consent	She finally consented to marry him.
10. decide	I have decided to leave on Monday.
11. demand	I demand to know who is responsible.
12. deserve	She deserves to win the prize.
13. expect	I expect to enter graduate school in the fall.

14. fail	She failed to return the book to the library on time.
13. forget	I forgot to mail the letter.
16. hesitate	Don't hesitate to ask for my help.
17. hope	Jack hopes to arrive next week.
18. learn	He learned to play the piano.
19. manage	She managed to finish her work early.
20. mean	I didn't mean to hurt your feelings.
21. need	I need to have your opinion.
22. offer	They offered to help us.
23. plan	I am planning to have a party.
24. prepare	We prepared to welcome them.
25. pretend	He pretends not to understand.
26. promise	I promise not to be late.
27. refuse	I refuse to believe his story.
28. regret	I regret to tell you that you failed.
29. remember	I remembered to lock the door.
30. seem	That cat seems to be friendly.
31. struggle	I struggled to stay awake.
32. swear	She swore to tell the truth.
33. threaten	She threatened to tell my parents.
34. volunteer	He volunteered to help us.
35. wait	I will wait to hear from you.
36. want	I want to tell you something.
37. wish	She wishes to come with us.

b. KATA KERJA YANG DIKUTI KATA GANTI + INFINITIVE	
38. advise	She advised me to wait until tomorrow.
39. allow	She allowed me to use her car.
40. ask	I asked John to help us.
41. beg	They begged us to come.
42. cause	Her laziness caused her to fail.
43. challenge	She challenged me to race her to the corner.
44. convince	I couldn't convince him to accept our help.
45. dare	He dared me to do better than he had done.
46. encourage	He encouraged me to try again.
47. expect	I expect you to be on time.
48. forbid	I forbid you to tell him.
49. force	They forced him to tell the truth.
50. hire	She hired a boy to mow the lawn.
51. instruct	He instructed them to be careful.
52. invite	Harry invited the Johnsons to come to his party.
53. need	We needed Chris to help us figure out the solution.
54. order	The judge ordered me to pay a fine.
55. permit	He permitted the children to stay up late.
56. persuade	I persuaded him to come for a visit.
57. remind	She reminded me to lock the door.
58. require	Our teacher requires us to be on time.
59. teach	My brother taught me to swim.
60. told	The doctor told me to take these pills.
61. urge	I urged her to apply for the job.
62. want	I want you to be happy.
63. warn	I warned you not to drive too fast.

H. GERUND SEBAGAI SUBJEK; IT + INFINITIVE

(1) Riding with a drunk driver is dangerous.	Sebuah <i>gerund</i> sering dipakai sebagai subjek kalimat, seperti kalimat (1).
(2) To ride with a drunk driver is dangerous.	Kadang-kadang infinitive dipakai subjek kalimat, seperti kalimat (2).
(3) It is dangerous to ride with a drunk driver.	Meskipun begitu, infinitive lebih lazim dipakai dengan <i>it</i> , seperti kalimat (3). Kata yang dirujuknya memiliki arti yang sama dengan frasa infinitive di akhir kalimat.*

Kadang-kadang, *gerund* dipakai bersama *it* bila pembicara membicarakan situasi tertentu dan ingin memberikan gagasan/ide dari *while*: *Tom was drunk. It was dangerous riding with him. = We were in danger while we were riding with him.*

I. INFINITIVE TUJUAN: IN ORDER TO

(1) He came here in order to study English.	<i>In order to</i> dipakai untuk mengekspresikan tujuan.
(2) He came here to study English.	Untuk menjawab pertanyaan " <i>Why?</i> " <i>In order</i> sering dihilangkan, seperti dalam kalimat (b).
3) SALAH: He came here for studying English. (4) SALAH: He came here for to study English. (5) SALAH: He came here for study English.	Untuk mengekspresikan tujuan, gunakan (<i>in order</i>) <i>to not for</i> dengan kata kerja.*
(6) I went to the store for some bread. (7) I went to the store to buy some bread.	<i>For</i> kadang-kadang dipakai untuk mengekspresikan tujuan, tetapi preposisi diikuti oleh objek kata benda, seperti kalimat (6).

Pengecualian:

Frasa dipakai untuk menyatakan tipikal atau tujuan umum suatu benda. Dalam hal ini, kata depan *for* diikuti oleh sebuah *gerund*.

Contoh:

A saw is used for cutting wood.

Atau

A saw is used to cut wood.

Namun, untuk mengatakan tentang suatu situasi yang spesifik, gunakan **be used + an infinitive**.

Contoh:

A chain saw was used to cut down the old oak tree.

(SALAH: A chain saw was used for cutting down the old oak tree.)

J. KATA SIFAT YANG DIKUTI OLEH INFINITIVE

(1) We were sorry to hear the bad news.

(2) I was surprised to see Tim at the meeting.

Kata sifat tertentu dapat langsung diikuti oleh infinitive, seperti kalimat (1) dan (2). Secara umum, kata sifat tersebut menerangkan orang, bukan benda. Banyak dari kata benda ini menerangkan orang/perasaan atau sikap seseorang.

Beberapa kata sifat yang umum diikuti oleh infinitive:

glad to	happy to	pleased to	delighted to
content to	relieved to	lucky to	fortunate to
sorry to	sad to	ready to	prepared to
lucky to	willing to	proud to	motivate to
ashamed to	determined to	careful to	hesitant to
reluctant to	afraid to	surprised to	amazed to
astonished to	shocked to	stunned to	

K. INFINITIVE DENGAN *TOO* DAN *ENOUGH*

<p>(1) That box is too heavy for Bob to lift. Bandingkan:</p>	<p>Dalam pikiran pembicara, pemakaian <i>too</i> menggambarkan hasil negatif. Dalam kalimat (1): <i>too heavy = It is impossible for Bob to lift that box.</i></p>
<p>(2) That box is very heavy, but Bob can lift it.</p>	<p>Dalam kalimat (2): <i>very heavy = It is possible but difficult for Bob to lift that box.</i></p>
<p>(3) I am strong enough to lift that box. I can lift it.</p>	<p><i>Enough</i> mengikuti kata sifat, seperti kalimat (3).</p>

(4) I have enough strength to lift that box.	Enough bisa didahului oleh kata benda, seperti kalimat (4), atau mengikuti kata benda, seperti kalimat (5).
(5) I have strength enough to lift that box.	

L. BENTUK PASIF DAN LAMPAU DARI INFINITIVE DAN GERUND

PASSIVE INFINITIVE: to be + past participle (1) I didn't expect to be invited to his party.	Dalam (1): <i>to be invited</i> adalah pasif. The understood "by phrase" is "by him": I didn't expect to be invited by him.
PASSIVE GERUND: being + past participle (2) I appreciated being invited to your home.	Dalam (2): <i>being invited</i> adalah pasif. The understood "by phrase" is "by you": I appreciated being invited by you.
PAST INFINITIVE: to have + past participle (3) The rain seems to have stopped.	Peristiwa tersebut dinyatakan oleh <i>past infinitive</i> atau <i>past gerund</i> terjadi sebelum keterangan waktu dari kata kerja utama. Dalam (3): <i>The rain seems now to have stopped a few minutes ago.*</i>
PAST GERUND: having + past participle (4) I appreciate having had the opportunity to meet the king.	Dalam (4): <i>I met the king yesterday. I appreciate now having had the opportunity to meet the king yesterday.*</i>
PAST-PASSIVE INFINITIVE: to have been + past participle (5) Jane is fortunate to have been given a scholarship.	Dalam (5): <i>Jane was given a scholarship last month by her government. She is fortunate. Jane is fortunate now to have been given a scholarship last month by her government.</i>
PAST-PASSIVE GERUND: having been + past participle (6) I appreciate having been told the news.	Dalam (6): <i>I was told the news yesterday by someone. I appreciate that. I appreciate now having been told the news yesterday by someone.</i>

*Bila kata kerja utama dalam bentuk *past*, tindakan pada *past infinitive* atau *gerund* terjadi sebelum *time in the past*:

The rain seemed to have stopped. = The rain seemed to have stopped before six p.m.

I appreciated having had the opportunity to meet the king. = I met the king in 1985.

I appreciated in 1987 having had the opportunity to meet the king in 1985.

M. GERUND ATAU INFINITIVE PASIF DI BELAKANG NEED

<p>(1) I need to borrow some money.</p> <p>(2) John needs to be told the truth.</p>	<p>Biasanya, infinitive mengikuti setelah <i>need</i>, seperti kalimat (1) and (2).</p>
<p>(3) The house needs painting.</p> <p>(4) The house needs to be painted.</p>	<p>Dalam situasi tertentu, <i>gerund</i> bisa diikuti oleh <i>need</i>. Dalam kasus ini, <i>gerund</i> membawa arti pasif. Biasanya, situasi itu melibatkan pembetulan atau perbaikan sesuatu, kalimat (3) dan (4) memiliki arti yang sama.</p>

N. POSSESSIVE UNTUK MODIFIKASI GERUND

<p>We came to class late. Mr. Lee complained about that fact.</p>			<p>Dalam bahasa Inggris, sebuah kata ganti milik (misalnya, <i>our</i>) dipakai untuk menerangkan <i>gerund</i>, seperti kalimat (1). Dalam bahasa Inggris informal, bentuk objek (misalnya, <i>us</i>) sering dipakai, seperti kalimat (2). Dalam bahasa Inggris yang sangat formal, kata benda milik (misalnya, <i>Mary's</i>) dipakai untuk menerangkan <i>gerund</i>. Bentuk possessive sering tidak dipakai dalam bahasa Inggris informal, seperti kalimat (4).</p>
(1)	Formal	Mr. Lee complained about our coming to class late.	
(2)	Informal	Mr. Lee complained about us coming to class late.	
(3)	Formal	Mr. Lee complained about Mary's coming to class late.	
(4)	Informal	Mr. Lee complained about Mary coming to class late.	

EXERCISE I:

1. I had to ask the boys (stop) ... (ride) ... their mini-scooters in the corridor.
2. Don't start (try) ... (learn) ... algebra before you have finished (learn) ... (do) ... simple things in arithmetic.
3. We can't think of (buy) ... a new house before (sell) ... the old one.
4. I'd love (have) ... the opportunity of (meet) ... you again.
5. Our teacher has promised (help) ... us (prepare) ... for next week's test.
6. I hate (get up) ... early in winter and (get ready) ... in the dark.
7. If you can't fix that old thing, try (hit) ... it with a hammer!
8. I saw her (sit) ... at the bus stop, and I heard her (tell) ... her friend not to wait for her.
9. Poor Charles! The police suspected him of (try) ... (sell) ... stolen bicycles.
10. Can you manage (finish) ... (pack) ... these parcels alone?

KUNCI JAWABAN:

1. to stop, riding
2. trying , to learn, learning, to do
3. buying, selling
4. to have, meeting
5. to help, to prepare
6. getting up, getting ready
7. hitting
8. sitting, tell
9. trying, to sell
10. to finish, packing

EXERCISE I:

1. I can't help (feel) ... worried about the situation in the Middle East.
2. I think most people prefer (ride) ... in comfortable cars to (walk)
3. She loves (swim) ... in the lake.
4. There's no (deny) ... that he enjoys (listen) ... to his own voice.
5. Don't keep on (shout) ... like that; you will wake up your mother.
6. I enjoy (rest) ... in the afternoon after (try) ... to finish (do) ... my English homework.
7. She likes (begin) ... pieces of knitting but hates (finish) ... them.
8. I dread (take) ... examinations for fear of (fail)

9. I couldn't resist (buy) ... the lovely apples.
10. I wouldn't miss (see) ... that lovely film for the world!

KUNCI JAWABAN:

Semua kata ditambah *-ing*.

EXERCISE I:

1. Some people like ... breakfast in bed, but I don't.
A. to have
B. having
2. She continued ... during the whole meal.
A. talk
B. talking
C. to talk
3. I want ... a film on TV this evening.
A. seeing
B. see
C. to see
4. When did you finish ... the kitchen?
A. paint
B. painting
C. to painting
5. When she saw how I was dressed she started
A. laughing
B. laugh
6. We've decided ... married in the spring.
A. to get
B. get
C. getting

7. I love ... to live music.
 - A. listening
 - B. listen
 - C. to listen

8. I began ... English when I was seven.
 - A. learn
 - B. to learn
 - C. learning

9. I'd liketo the theatre.
 - A. to go
 - B. go
 - C. going

10. I hope ... from you soon. Best wishes, Peter.
 - A. that I can hear
 - B. to hear
 - C. hear

11. What do you want ... tonight ?
 - A. to do
 - B. doing
 - C. do

12. Don't forget ... my letter.
 - A. to post
 - B. posting

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. C | 7. C |
| 2. C | 8. B |
| 3. A | 9. B |
| 4. B | 10. A |
| 5. A | 11. B |
| 6. B | 12. C |

25

QUESTION

Dalam Bahasa Inggris, ada dua macam kalimat tanya, yaitu kalimat tanya yang memakai kata tanya (*question word/W-H question*) dan kalimat tanya yang jawabannya adalah ya atau tidak (*yes/no answer question*).

A. PENGERTIAN KATA TANYA

Kata tanya adalah kata yang digunakan untuk menanyakan waktu, tempat, orang, benda, hal, alasan, cara, dan lain-lain.

Kata tanya dalam Bahasa Inggris berupa berbagai *wh-word*, yaitu kata yang diawali oleh *wh-* (*what, where, when, why, which, who, whom, whose*) atau kata yang mengandung huruf w dan h (*how*).

Pola Kalimat:

**W-H + *to be/auxiliary verb* + Subjek + Kata Kerja
+ Objek/Keterangan?**

B. FUNGSI DAN CONTOH KALIMAT DENGAN KATA TANYA

Berikut fungsi dan contoh kalimat masing-masing kata tanya:

Kata Tanya	Fungsi	Contoh Kalimat
What (apa)	Kata tanya ini digunakan untuk menanyakan benda atau hal (<i>thing</i>).	What do you want from me? (Apa yang kamu inginkan dari saya?)
		What are you doing here? (Apa yang sedang kamu lakukan di sini?)

Where (di mana)	<i>Where</i> digunakan untuk menanyakan tempat (<i>place</i>).	Where does he live? (Di mana dia tinggal?)
When (kapan)	Kata tanya ini digunakan untuk menanyakan waktu (<i>time</i>).	When does the train from Yogyakarta arrive? (Kapan kereta dari Yogyakarta tiba?)
Why (mengapa)	Kata tanya ini digunakan untuk menanyakan alasan (<i>reason</i>).	Why do you hate cats? (Mengapa kamu membenci kucing?)
Which (yang mana)	Kata tanya ini untuk menanyakan orang (<i>person</i>), benda atau hal (<i>thing</i>) yang mana yang dimaksud di antara sejumlah orang, benda, atau hal.	Which one is better? (Yang mana yang lebih baik?)
Who (siapa – subjek)	Kata tanya ini digunakan untuk menanyakan orang (<i>person</i>).	Who send me a letter? (Siapa yang mengirimiku surat?)
		Who is that man? (Siapa pria itu?)
Whom (siapa – objek)	<i>Whom</i> digunakan untuk menanyakan orang yang menerima aksi, atau dengan kata lain: objek langsung.	Whom are you going to meet? (Siapa yang akan kamu temui?)
Whose (siapa – <i>possessive</i>)	Kata tanya ini digunakan untuk orang yang mana yang memiliki sesuatu (<i>possessive</i>).	Whose turn is it? (Giliran siapa?)

How (bagaimana)	<i>How</i> digunakan untuk menanyakan cara (<i>manner</i>). Kata tanya ini juga dapat dikombinasikan dengan berbagai huruf menjadi: how often (seberapa sering), how far (berapa jauh), how much/many (berapa banyak), how long (berapa lama).	How did you meet your soulmate? (Bagaimana kamu bertemu belahan jiwamu?)
		How often should I change my toothbrush? (Seberapa sering saya harus mengganti sikat gigi?)
		How far is moon from earth? (Berapa jauh bulan dari bumi?)
		How much do we need? (Berapa banyak yang kita butuhkan?)
		How long does it take to get pregnant? (Berapa lama waktu yang dibutuhkan untuk hamil?)

C. YES-NO QUESTIONS

Pertanyaan yang membutuhkan baik jawaban *yes* maupun *no*, disebut **yes-no questions**:

Contoh:

Do you like vanilla ice cream? (answer: *yes* or *no*)

Have you ever seen a ghost? (answer: *yes* or *no*)

a. Pembentukan Yes-No Questions

1. Dengan kata kerja bantu (*auxiliary verb*)

Kita membentuk *yes-no questions* dengan kata kerja bantu (*be, do or have*) + subjek + kata kerja utama atau dengan kata kerja modal:

<i>Be: Is she working very hard?</i>	<i>Were they travelling together?</i>
<i>Do: Does that taste okay?</i>	<i>Did you go to the concert?</i>
<i>Have: Have they eaten yet?</i>	<i>Had they visited Rome before?</i>
<i>Modal: Could you help me lift this?</i>	<i>Should I open the window?</i>

Bila tidak ada kata kerja bantu verb *be*, *have* atau *modal verb* yang ada dalam pernyataan, kita gunakan kata bantu *do*, *does*, *did*:

Bentuk Pernyataan (tidak ada kata bantu)	Bentuk Pertanyaan
<i>You usually walk to work.</i>	<i>Do you usually walk to work? Bukan: Walk you...?</i>
<i>You liked disco music in the 70s.</i>	<i>Did you like disco music in the 70s? Bukan: Liked you...?</i>

Kita tidak menggunakan kata kerja bantu ketika menggunakan *be* sebagai kata kerja utama: ***Is she** your sister?*
Bukan: ~~Does she be~~ your sister?

CATATAN:

Apabila tidak ada lebih dari satu *auxiliary verb* atau *modal verb* ditambah *auxiliary verb(s)*, kita hanya meletakkan *auxiliary* yang pertama atau *modal verb* sebelum subjek dan yang lainnya setelah subjek:

Auxiliary + subject + auxiliary + verb

*Is this phone call **being** recorded?*

Bukan: ~~Is being this phone call recorded?~~ or ~~Is being recorded this phone call?~~

Auxiliary + subject + auxiliary + verb

*Has the garden **been** looked after while you were away?*

Bukan: ~~Has been the garden looked after while you were away?~~ or ~~Has been looked after the garden while you were away?~~

Modal + subject + auxiliary + auxiliary + verb

*Should we **have** been writing this down?*

Bukan: ~~Should have we been writing this down?~~

Kita hanya meletakkan *auxiliary* dan *modal verbs*, BUKAN kata kerja utama, sebelum subjek:

*Where **did** you find the keys?*

Bukan: ~~Where did find you the keys?~~

2. Tanpa kata kerja bantu

Apabila kita bertanya *yes-no questions* memakai kata kerja utama *be*, kita tidak menggunakan kata kerja bantu.

Urutannya: *be* + subjek

*Is **the weather** nice in Turkey in the winter?*

*Was **she** angry when you told her about the accident?*

Apabila kita bertanya *yes-no questions* dengan kata kerja utama *have*, kita dapat juga memakai urutan: **kata kerja + subjek**, tetapi itu terlihat lebih normal.

Kita memakai *have got* dan *do* karena lebih normal atau pilihan yang informal:

Have you an identity card? (formal)

*Do you **have** an identity card? (netral)*

*Have you **got** an identity card? (informal)*

CATATAN:

Apabila kita bertanya dengan kata kerja utama *have* dalam bentuk lampau untuk merujuk pada *possession*, kita lebih sering menggunakan *did ... have* daripada *had ... got*:

Did you **have** your glasses with you when you left the car?

Had you **got** your glasses with you when you left the car? (lebih tidak umum)

b. Merespons Yes-No Questions

Cara lain untuk mengatakan *yes* dan *no* termasuk *yeah, yep, mm, okay*, dan *nah, nope*.

Ini adalah informal:

A : *Would you like to play tennis with me later?*

B : **Okay**. (berarti iya)

A : *Have you seen Greg?*

B : **Nope**. (Berarti tidak)

Kita juga bisa memberikan lebih daripada hanya jawaban *yes* atau *no*. Kita kadang juga bisa menambahkan informasi lebih:

A : *Can I grow potatoes in a pot?*

B : *Yeah. They grow really well in pots.*

A : *Will you be going to Ryan's party?*

B : *No. I'm actually going to be away on Friday night.*

Kadang-kadang kita tidak memakai *yes* atau *no* sebagai jawaban, tetapi jawaban yang berarti *yes* atau *no*:

A : *Do you know Tina Gomez?*

B : *We've known each other for years. We went to the same school.* (berarti iya)

A : *Do you have the Thrills latest album?*

B : *I'm afraid we've just sold the last one!* (berarti tidak)

Kita kadang merespons memakai bentuk kata kerja bantu selain pertanyaan *yes* dan *no*:

A : *Hey Tim, did you go fishing today?*

B : *I **did**. I went with the boys.*

A : *Has Jason had breakfast?*

B : *He **hasn't**. He's still in bed.*

c. **Yes-No Questions Negatif**

Kita biasanya memakai pertanyaan *yes-no* negatif untuk memeriksa atau mengonfirmasi sesuatu yang kita percayai, harapkan, atau apabila kita mempertimbangkan sesuatu itu adalah yang terbaik yang bisa kita lakukan:

***Isn't** that Pauline's car?* (I'm pretty sure that this is correct. I'm asking for confirmation.)

***Shouldn't** we be leaving?* (I think that we should leave now.)

Kita membentuk pertanyaan *yes-no* negatif dengan *not*. Kita biasanya memakai *the contraction n't*. Bila kita memakai *not* dalam bentuk yang lengkap, pertanyaanya terdengar sangat formal:

***Isn't** that the oldest building on this street?*

CATATAN:

Apabila kita memakai bentuk lengkap *not*, urutan **auxiliary + subject (s) + not** lebih lazim daripada **auxiliary + not + subject**:

[AUX][s] *Is that [not] **not** the oldest building in this street?* (formal) (preferred to [the very formal] *Is **not** that the oldest building on this street?*)

Kita bisa menggunakan pertanyaan *yes-no* negatif untuk membuat undangan, penawaran, dan keluhan yang lebih kuat:

***Won't** you stay for dinner?* (undangan; lebih kuat dibanding *Will you stay for dinner?*)

***Wouldn't** you like another coffee?* (penawaran, lebih kuat dibanding *Would you like another coffee?*)

***Can't** the manager do something about the noise?* (keluhan, lebih kuat dibanding *Can the manager do something about the noise?*)

d. Intonasi dan Yes-No Questions

Intonasi dari pertanyaan *yes-no* secara normal baik naik (*rising [riʒing arrow]*) atau turun (*fall-rising [dowʒn uʒp arrow]*) tergantung pada arti (*the meaning*). Bila tidak mengetahui jawabannya, kita menggunakan intonasi naik. Bila kurang lebih tahu jawabannya dan mencari tahu/mengonfirmasi, kita menggunakan intonasi turun-naik:

Are you wʒarm enough?

Did you once liʒve in Irʒeland? (I think the answer is yes.)

Kata *We* kadang menggunakan intonasi turun-naik dengan pertanyaan *yes-no* ketika menanyakan sejumlah pertanyaan bersama-sama:

A : You're living iʒn Bʒayswater? [Pertanyaan 1]

B : Yeah. That's right.

A : Are you rentinʒg youʒr house? [Pertanyaan 2]

B : Yeah, we are.

A : Is it expʒensiʒve? [Pertanyaan 3]

B : It's not very expensive for somewhere so near the city centre.

EXERCISE I:

Answer the question with positive or negative answer!

1. Are you French? (+)
2. Do you live in Germany? (-)
3. Did you see Alan yesterday? (+)
4. Have you got a brother? (-)
5. Were you late for your train last night? (-)
6. Are you going to phone him? (+)
7. Can you drive? (-)
8. Is she sleeping? (+)
9. Would you like to be a teacher? (-)
10. Will she travel by plane? (+)

KUNCI JAWABAN:

1. Yes, I am.
2. No, I don't.

3. Yes, I did.
4. No, I haven't.
5. No, I weren't.
6. Yes, I am are.
7. No, I can't.
8. Yes, she is.
9. No, I wouldn't.
10. Yes, she will.

EXERCISE 1:

Select the correct Wh question word!

1. ... is your name?
 - A. What
 - B. Where
 - C. When
 - D. Who

2. ... is your favourite actress?
 - A. What
 - B. Why
 - C. When
 - D. Who

3. ... are you from?
 - A. What
 - B. Where
 - C. When
 - D. Who

4. ... is your birthday?
 - A. Whose
 - B. Where
 - C. When
 - D. Who

5. colour is your new car?
 - A. What
 - B. How
 - C. Where
 - D. Whose

6. ... old are you?
A. What
B. How
C. Which
D. Whose
7. ... books are these?
A. Why
B. How
C. Where
D. Whose
8. ... did you quit your job?
A. Who
B. Which
C. Why
D. Whose
9. ... are you going to America?
A. Who
B. What
C. When
D. Which
10. ... aren't you going to Peter's party?
A. What
B. How
C. Where
D. Why

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. A | 6. B |
| 2. D | 7. D |
| 3. B | 8. C |
| 4. C | 9. C |
| 5. A | 10. D |

EXERCISE 1:

Ask for the underlined part. Write the questions into the gaps!

Contoh: The students play football.

Jawaban: What do the students play?

1. She is opening a present.

.....

2. The boys are hiding under Tom's bed.

.....

3. My sister prefers porridge for breakfast.

.....

4. On Thursday Jack has German, history, and maths.

.....

5. Yesterday Carol and Jane went to the swimming pool.

.....

6. The plane is landing at the airport.

.....

7. The telephone is ringing.

.....

8. Sarah has to stop because of a security check.

.....

9. Andrew's new mountain bike costs €1000.

.....

10. At sunset Peter is walking along the beach.

.....

KUNCI JAWABAN:

1. What is she opening?
2. Where are the boys hiding?
3. Who prefers porridge for breakfast?
4. What does Jack have on Thursday?
5. When did Carol and Jane go to the swimming pool?
6. Where is the plane landing?
7. What is ringing?
8. Why does Sarah have to stop?
9. What does Andrew's new mountain bike cost?
10. Who is walking along the beach at sunset?

26

QUESTION TAGS

A. PENGERTIAN QUESTION TAG

Question tag adalah pertanyaan pendek yang ditambahkan di akhir pernyataan (*declarative sentence*) untuk menanyakan informasi atau meminta persetujuan.

Seperti *idiom* (ungkapan Bahasa Inggris), *question tag* merupakan bagian yang sering digunakan dalam percakapan sehari-hari seorang *native speaker*. Walaupun *grammar*, *pronunciation*, dan intonasinya baik, seseorang dapat mudah dikenali bukan sebagai *native speaker* jika tidak menggunakan *question tag*.

B. RUMUS QUESTION TAG

linking verb "be"/auxiliary verb +/- not + pronoun

Keterangan:

- Kata kerja penghubung (*linking verb*) *be*, yaitu *is, am, are, was, were*, sedangkan kata kerja bantu (*auxiliary verb*) berupa kata kerja bantu primer (*be, do, have*) atau kata kerja bantu modal (*will, would, may, might, can, could, shall, should*) yang cocok dengan kata kerja pada bagian pernyataan.
- Kata ganti (*pronoun*) disesuaikan dengan subjek pada bagian pernyataan.

Contoh question tag:

- You love math, don't you? (Kamu suka matematika, kan?)
- You don't love math, do you? (Kamu tidak suka matematika, kan?)

a. Pembentukan *Question Tag*

Berdasarkan aturan umum, *question tag* positif dapat mengikuti kalimat negatif. Begitu pula sebaliknya, *question tag* negatif dapat mengikuti kalimat positif.

Question tag terdiri dari kata kerja utama (jika berupa kata kerja penghubung *be*), *dummy auxiliary verb* "do/does/did" (jika kata kerja utama bukan berupa kata kerja penghubung) atau kata kerja bantu yang pertama (jika terdiri dari kata kerja utama dan satu atau lebih kata kerja bantu) +/- *not* + subjek (kata ganti) yang disesuaikan dengan kalimat utama.

Kalimat Negatif, <i>Question Tag</i> Positif	Kalimat Positif, <i>Question Tag</i> Negatif
Ahmad didn't come late, did he? (Ahmad tidak datang terlambat, bukan?)	Ahmad came late, didn't he? (Ahmad datang terlambat, bukan?)
The man isn't stingy, is he? (Pria itu tidak pelit, bukan?)	The man is stingy, isn't he? (Pria itu pelit, bukan?)
You haven't finished your homework, have you? (Kamu belum menyelesaikan PR-mu, bukan?)	You have finished your homework, haven't you? (Kamu telah menyelesaikan PR-mu, bukan?)
They won't attend the seminar, will they? (Mereka tidak akan menghadiri seminar, bukan?)	They will attend the seminar, won't they? (Mereka akan menghadiri seminar, bukan?)

b. Intonasi pada *Question Tag*

Tujuan penggunaan *question tag* adalah untuk menanyakan informasi atau meminta persetujuan. Ketika menggunakannya untuk menanyakan informasi, posisi pembicara tidak tahu informasi tersebut benar atau salah. Pada kondisi tersebut, *question tag* diberi penekanan dengan intonasi naik (*rising intonation*).

Adapun ketika *question tag* digunakan untuk meminta persetujuan, pembicara yakin bahwa informasi yang diketahui benar, namun mengharapkan jawaban yang mendukung keyakinannya. Pada situasi itu, *question tag* dilafalkan tanpa penekanan dengan intonasi turun (*falling intonation*).

c. Contoh Kalimat Question Tag

You didn't drink alcohol, did you? (Kamu tidak minum alkohol, bukan?)

- Jika pembicara tidak tahu apakah lawan bicaranya minum alkohol dan dia ingin tahu jawabannya, *question tag* diberi penekanan dengan intonasi naik.
- Jika pembicara hanya ingin tahu bahwa lawan bicaranya tidak minum alkohol dan hanya mengharapkan penegasan, *question tag* diucapkan tanpa penekanan dengan intonasi turun.

Beberapa dari contoh kalimat *question tag* berikut mungkin tidak terlalu mengikuti *general rule* sehingga mungkin agak membingungkan:

Contoh Kalimat Question Tag	
I'm right, aren't I?	spoken English
I'm right, am I not?	formal English
Everybody likes him, don't they?	digunakan <i>they</i> sebagai <i>gender neutral pronoun</i> .
Nothing is impossible, is it?	<i>Nothing</i> = <i>no thing</i> , sehingga kalimat menjadi negatif, maka <i>question tag</i> -nya positif.
Nobody came late, did they?	<i>Nobody</i> = <i>no body</i> , sehingga kalimat menjadi negatif maka <i>question tag</i> -nya positif. Digunakan <i>they</i> sebagai <i>gender neuter pronoun</i> .
You will never regret it, will you?	<i>Never</i> = <i>not ever</i> , sehingga kalimat menjadi negatif. Oleh karena itu <i>question tag</i> -nya positif.
Everything is nice, isn't it?	
Let's go now, shall we?	
Don't speak, will you?	
This/that is his bag, isn't it?	
These/those are your tools, aren't they?	
There is an old house, isn't there?	

C. QUESTION TAG DI UJUNG KALIMAT IMPERATIF (KALIMAT PERINTAH)

Kadang-kadang *questions tag* digunakan bersama kalimat imperatif (tipe kalimat untuk membuat perintah, permintaan, atau petunjuk). *Question tag* ditambahkan di ujung kalimat imperatif untuk melembutkan instruksi agar tidak terdengar seperti perintah (*command*) dan akan lebih terdengar seperti permintaan (*request*). Efek penambahan *question tag* di ujung kalimat imperatif seperti efek penambahan kata *please*.

Question tag yang dapat ditambahkan di ujung kalimat imperatif, antara lain *Will you? Won't you? Would you? Could you?*

Baik *Will you?* maupun *Won't you?* yang digunakan bersama kalimat imperatif, semuanya setara dalam tingkat kesopanan (*degree of politeness*).

Contoh:

- Turn down the radio, will you?
- Turn down the radio, won't you?

Hanya *will you?* yang dapat digunakan bersama kalimat imperatif negatif.

Contoh:

- Don't go away, will you?
- Don't tell him, will you?

Menggunakan *won't you* mengesankan kalimat imperatif jauh lebih tentatif dan less confident. Yang perlu diperhatikan adalah konteks kalimat imperatifnya, apakah cocok si pembicara mendapatkan jawaban *no*. Misalnya, perintah dokter gigi kepada asistennya, tentunya dia percaya diri perintahnya dipenuhi.

Contoh:

- Brush her teeth, please.
- Brush her teeth, would you?
- Brush her teeth, won't you?

D. MENJAWAB QUESTION TAGS

Bagaimana cara menjawab question tag?

Sebelumnya kita harus dapat membedakan apakah pertanyaan pendek tersebut membutuhkan jawaban apa tidak. Jika question tag menggunakan intonasi datar (*flat*) atau menurun (*falling intonation*),

pertanyaan pendek tersebut lebih merupakan pernyataan (statement) sehingga hanya meminta penegasan.

Namun, jika question tag diucapkan dengan intonasi naik (rising intonation) maka pertanyaan pendek tersebut benar-benar membutuhkan jawaban atau meminta persetujuan.

Jawaban question tags sama halnya dengan yes-no question (pertanyaan yang membutuhkan jawaban yes atau no). Normalnya positive tag mengharapkan jawaban negatif, sedangkan negative tag mengharapkan jawaban positif. Namun, kita perlu fokus pada fakta yang ada sehingga jawaban tidak selalu mengikuti tipe pertanyaan.

a. Contoh Menjawab Question Tag (Checking Information):

1	You haven't finished your homework, have you? No, I haven't. (Kamu belum menyelesaikan PR, kan? Belum)
2	She will come on time, won't she? Yes, she will. (Dia akan datang tepat waktu, kan? Ya)
3	I talked in my sleep, didn't I? Yes, you did. (Saya mengigau, ya? Ya)
4	Stars are cold, aren't they? No, they aren't.* Stars aren't cold, are they? No, they aren't.* Stars are hot, aren't they? Yes, they are.* Stars aren't hot, are they? Yes, they are.*

Catatan:

*Fokus pada fakta bahwa bintang itu panas. Maka, jawabannya *yes* karena bintang itu panas, dan *no* karena bintang itu tidak dingin.

b. Contoh Menjawab Question Tag (Seeking Agreement):

1	It's a beautiful day, isn't it? Yes, it is. (Hari yang indah, bukan? Ya)
2	The party was very nice, wasn't it? Yes, it was. (Pesta tadi sangat menyenangkan, bukan? Ya)
3	She'd look great without make up, wouldn't she? Yes, she would. (Dia akan kelihatan hebat tanpa <i>make up</i> , bukan? Ya)

E. PENGERTIAN SAME-WAY QUESTION TAG

Same-way question tag berarti *question tag* dan kalimat di depannya sama-sama berbentuk positif atau negatif. Struktur ini digunakan untuk mengonfirmasi tebakan, menyatakan ketertarikan (*interest*), keterkejutan (*surprise*), atau kemarahan (*anger*), dan bukan pertanyaan sungguhan (*real question*).

Contoh kalimat *same-way question tag*:

1	So you can speak both English and Japanese very well, can you? (Jadi, kamu dapat berbicara baik bahasa Inggris dan Jepang dengan sangat baik?)
2	So you think you're suitable for the job, do you? (Jadi, kamu pikir kamu cocok untuk pekerjaan itu?)
3	You want to make money from home, do you? (Kamu ingin menghasilkan uang dari rumah?)
4	So you don't like my humor, don't you? (Jadi, kamu tidak suka humor saya?) negatif: question tag negatif biasanya terdengar agak kurang bersahabat – British English

EXERCISE I:

Choose the correct question tag to complete each sentence!

1. My nickname in the office is "Slugger", ...
 - A. isn't it?
 - B. aren't I?
 - C. am I?
2. Clifdon was the place we went for that rainy vacation, ...
 - A. isn't it?
 - B. isn't there?
 - C. wasn't it?

3. Hayley's your best friend! You should come to her party, ...
 - A. shouldn't you?
 - B. isn't she?
 - C. should you?

4. The price of gas hasn't fallen much recently, ...
 - A. has it?
 - B. is it?
 - C. will it?

5. There are too many chairs around that table, ...
 - A. are they?
 - B. isn't there?
 - C. aren't there?

6. The weather won't improve if we sit here and look out the window, ...
 - A. will we?
 - B. will it?
 - C. won't it?

7. Everyone can hear me at the back of the room, ...
 - A. can you?
 - B. can't you?
 - C. can't they?

8. (DIFFICULT!) I'm late again, ...
 - A. amn't I?
 - B. aren't I?
 - C. am I?

KUNCI JAWABAN:

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. A | 5. C |
| 2. C | 6. B |
| 3. A | 7. B |
| 4. A | 8. B |

EXERCISE I:

Put in the correct question tags!

Contoh : Peter works in the shop, ...?

Jawaban : Peter works in the shop, doesn't he?

1. She is collecting stickers, ... ?
2. We often watch TV in the afternoon, ... ?
3. You have cleaned your bike, ... ?
4. John and Max don't like maths, ... ?
5. Peter played handball yesterday, ... ?
6. They are going home from school, ... ?
7. Mary didn't do her homework last Monday, ... ?
8. He could have bought a new car, ... ?
9. Kevin will come tonight, ... ?
10. I'm clever, ... ?

KUNCI JAWABAN:

1. She is collecting stickers, **isn't she?**
2. We often watch TV in the afternoon, **don't we?**
3. You have cleaned your bike, **haven't you?**
4. John and Max don't like maths, **do they?**
5. Peter played handball yesterday, **didn't he?**
6. They are going home from school, **aren't they?**
7. Mary didn't do her homework last Monday, **did she?**
8. He could have bought a new car, **couldn't he?**
9. Kevin will come tonight, **won't he?**
10. I'm clever, **aren't I?**

A. PENGERTIAN *WORD CHOICE*

Pertanyaan tentang pilihan kata yang sangat umum dalam *high reading close paper*. Seringkali Anda diminta untuk menangani pertanyaan secara khusus dengan pilihan kata. Pertanyaan lain mungkin meminta Anda untuk mempertimbangkan pilihan kata antara teknik lainnya.

Kata-kata yang digunakan dalam konteks yang berbeda dapat memiliki konotasi yang berbeda. Ketika menjawab pertanyaan tentang pilihan kata, Anda tidak hanya diminta apa arti kata itu, tetapi mempertimbangkan bagaimana makna yang dipengaruhi oleh konteks dari bagian itu. Anda akan dapat menyimpulkan banyak tentang pendapat penulis dari kata-kata yang mereka gunakan.

“Word choice questions ask you to focus on the *connotation* rather than the *denotation* of a word.”

(Pertanyaan pilihan kata meminta Anda untuk fokus pada konotasi daripada denotasi dari sebuah kata.)

Mengingat pilihan kata adalah berpikir di luar arti yang jelas dari sebuah kata untuk mengeksplorasi yang disarankan, seringkali, kata-kata yang berarti hal yang hampir sama menyiratkan hal yang sangat berbeda. Anda perlu waspada mengenali hal ini ketika mereka terjadi.

Contoh:

1. *Sebuah pertanyaan: Should parents be allowed to smack their children?*
Yang lain: *Should parents be allowed to strike their children?*
Kedua pertanyaan ini hampir sama, tetapi aksi memukul di kalimat pertama lebih hebat dibanding kalimat kedua, karena kata *strike* (memukul) menunjukkan sesuatu yang lebih keras dan agresif dari *smack* (menampar) yang memiliki konotasi dari aksi yang lebih lembut, tamparan daripada pukulan.

2. *Would you rather have a 'crowd' outside your house, or a mob?*
Jawaban yang lebih mungkin adalah *crowd* (kerumunan), karena *mob* (gerombolan) memiliki konotasi yang agak negatif, yaitu kelompok yang sifatnya agak mengancam.
3. Ketika sekelompok pekerja sedang mencari kenaikan gaji (*a pay-rise*), koran yang mendukung mereka biasanya akan menulis sesuatu, seperti *Sheet metal workers are **asking** for a 20% increase*.
Sementara surat kabar yang menentang mereka, mungkin akan mengatakan mereka ***demanding*** a 20% increase.
Mengapa? Meskipun gambarannya sama, *demanding* menyarankan sesuatu yang lebih agresif, pendekatan yang tidak beralasan.
4. *She looked at Sharon's new hairstyle, and sniggered.*
Apakah pemilihan kata *sniggered* di sini menyarankan tentang tingkah laku Sharon? Ramah? Simpatik? Terhormat? Tentu saja tidak. Apabila penulis ingin mengesankan tersebut, dia pasti sudah memilih kata, seperti *chuckle* atau *giggle* yang memberi kesan lebih ramah, hangat, banyak senyum. Kara *sniggered* memberi kesan sedikit menghina, sedikit sinis.

Anda sudah bisa mengucapkan Bahasa Inggris dengan benar, kosakata Anda kaya, dan Anda juga sudah mengenal tata bahasa dengan baik, tetapi tetap saja Anda merasa Bahasa Inggris Anda aneh dan kurang dapat dipahami oleh penutur asli. Mungkin masalahnya adalah Anda belum mengenal kolokasi.

Kolokasi atau collocation adalah kombinasi kata yang dianggap lazim. Kombinasi *quick* dan *shower*, *quick shower*, adalah lazim bagi telinga penutur asli, sedangkan *fast shower* terdengar kaku dan asing.

Contoh:

Fast car terdengar alami, sedangkan *quick car* agak janggal.

A circle of friends atau *a group of friends* sangat diterima dan berkolokasi, tetapi *a pack of friends* tidak begitu berkolokasi.

A slice of bread terdengar lazim, tetapi tidak *a cut of bread*.

Lions bisa diikuti dengan kata kerja *roar*, tetapi *cats* tidak lazim atau tidak tepat diikuti dengan kata *roar*.

Satisfied sering disandingkan dengan *very* atau *completely* (e.g. *completely satisfied*), tetapi tidak dengan *utterly*.

Burst into tears adalah rangkaian kata yang sering ditemukan, tetapi tidak *explode into tears*.

Banyak penggunaan kombinasi kata kita kurang tepat disebabkan pengaruh bahasa ibu. Anda bisa mengatakan *read silently*, tetapi tidak *read in your heart* (terjemahan literal: "baca dalam hati").

Anda bisa *talk quietly* dan *talk slowly*, tetapi jangan anggap artinya sama: satu merujuk ke volume suara, satu lagi pada kecepatan.

Yang menarik adalah kata kerja *get*. Kata tersebut dapat diikuti oleh banyak kata benda dan sifat, antara lain *a job, a degree, serious, going, lost, married, caught, bored, excited, bigger, old, tired, dan busy*.

Pada banyak kesempatan, kata-kata yang salah dalam kalimat akan membuat kalimat yang canggung.

Contoh 1 : Plastic is able to be shaped into many forms.

Bentuk yang benar:

Plastic can be shaped into many forms.

Contoh 2 : As counting progressed, it became increasingly clear that Democrats were heading for a victory.

Dalam kalimat ini, kata *increasing* dimaksudkan untuk menerangkan kata sifat *clear*. Oleh karena itu, terbentuk sebuah kata keterangan, yaitu *increasingly*.

Kalimat yang benar:

As counting progressed, it became increasingly clear that Democrats were heading for a victory.

Contoh 3 : The chance of your being run over by a truck increases if you drive your scooter in the middle of the road.

Kata *chance* harus digunakan hanya untuk menandakan peristiwa yang diinginkan. Untuk menandakan peristiwa yang tidak diinginkan, kata *risk* yang harus digunakan.

Kalimat yang benar:

The risk of your being run over by a truck increases if you drive your scooter in the middle of the road.

Contoh 4 : George lacks illness.

Kata *lack* harus dipakai hanya untuk menunjukkan kepemilikan benda yang diinginkan. Dalam hal ini, yang tidak diinginkan harus menggunakan kata *has not*.

Kalimat yang benar adalah:

George has no illness.

Contoh 5 : An obvious irritated voice answered the telephone.
Karena dalam contoh ini, kata '*obvious*' menerangkan kata sifat '*irritated*'.
Maka kata tersebut pastinya sebuah kata keterangan (*adverb*).

Kalimat yang benar:

An obviously irritated voice answered the telephone.

Contoh 6 : It was in 1947 in which India got its independence.
Subordinate conjunction yang menunjukkan keterangan waktu *WHEN*,
bukan *IN WHICH*.

Kalimat yang benar:

It was in 1947 when India got its independence.

Contoh 7 : I went to the market so as to buy apples.
Frasa *so as to* selalu salah.

Kalimat yang benar:

I went to market for buying apples.
(ATAU) I went to market to buy apples.

Contoh 8 : Newton is credited with the discovering of gravity.
Gerund harus dipakai hanya apabila tidak ada bentuk kata benda untuk
kata kerja yang terpisah. *Gerund* '*discovering*' seharusnya tidak dipakai di
sini. Ada kata benda yang terpisah = *discovery*.

Kalimat yang benar:

Newton was credited with discover of gravity.

Contoh Lain:

Salah : I do not like your choosing of that sari

Benar : I do not like your choice of that sari.

Salah : Do you agree with his judging in this case?

Benar : Do you agree with his judgment in this case?

Salah : Trespassing into this property is not allowed.

Benar : Trespass into this property is not allowed.

Salah : In spite of his denying of his guilt, the accused was convicted by
the judge.

Benar : In spite of his denial of his guilt, the accused was convicted by the
judge.

CATATAN:

- Biasanya, kalimat dalam bentuk aktif lebih disukai dibanding kalimat pasif.

Contoh:

- When we bought this house, it was unknown to us that it had a reputation of being haunted. Meskipun secara gramatikal kalimat ini benar, kalimat aktif di bawah ini lebih disukai:
 - We bought this house without knowing its reputation of being haunted.
- Sebuah kata lebih idiomatis dibanding sebuah frasa.
 - Sebuah frasa yang lebih pendek lebih idiomatis dibanding frasa yang lebih panjang.
 - Sebuah frasa lebih idiomatis dibanding klausa.

Contoh:

- Vikram is a boy who is intelligent
Kalimat di bawah ini lebih disukai daripada yang di atas.
Vikram is an intelligent boy.
- I used to play cricket while being a young boy.
Kalimat di bawah ini lebih disukai daripada yang di atas.
I used to play cricket as a young boy.

B. PERSAMAAN KATA (KATA YANG HAMPIR SAMA)

a. *Start, Begin, Commence*

Start, begin, dan commence mempunyai arti yang sama, yaitu 'mulai'. Ketiganya adalah kata kerja. Walaupun mempunyai arti yang sama, ketiganya memiliki persamaan dan perbedaan seperti penjelasan di bawah ini:

1. Dalam banyak contoh kalimat, *begin* dan *start* dapat digunakan dan tidak ada perbedaan fungsi.
 - I **start/begin** mountain climbing when I was eighteen.
 - It is no use waiting for Jeremy. Let's **start/begin**.

2. Dalam bentuk informal, *start* lebih sering digunakan daripada *begin*.
3. *Start* digunakan dalam kasus di bawah ini, *begin* tidak dapat digunakan:
 - Memulai perjalanan.
I think we ought to **start** at six.
 - Menghidupkan mesin.
How do you **start** the washing machine?
4. *Commence* digunakan hampir sama dengan *begin*, namun *commence* digunakan untuk situasi formal dan jarang digunakan dalam percakapan sehari-hari.
Term will commence on September 4th.

b. Act, Deed, Exploit, Feat dan Achievement

Bandingkan penggunaan **Act, Deed, Exploit, Feat** dan **Achievement**.

1. *Act/Action*

Act atau *Action* adalah perbuatan baik atau buruk. Arti keduanya hampir sama. *Action* digunakan untuk kata benda dapat dihitung (*countable noun*), sedangkan *actions* berhubungan dengan perilaku secara umum.

Act digunakan untuk tipe atau kualitas perilaku yang lebih spesifik.

Contoh:

- Individuals must take responsibility for their actions.
(Setiap individu harus mempertanggungjawabkan segala perbuatannya, yang baik dan yang buruk.) - Gambaran umum.
- Mr. Hunt is successful of his act of mercy.
(Tuan Hunt sukses karena sikapnya yang berbelas kasihan.) - Sikap yang lebih spesifik.

2. *Deed*

Deed adalah kata resmi yang mengacu pada perbuatan yang "*sangat baik*" atau "*sangat buruk*".

Contoh:

He was guilty of many evil **deeds**.

(Dia dinyatakan bersalah karena banyak perbuatannya yang buruk.)

3. *Exploit*

Exploit menjelaskan suatu hasil perbuatan yang berani dan luar biasa.

Contoh:

His exploits as an explorer brought him fame and wealth.

(Tindakannya sebagai seorang penjelajah menjadikannya terkenal dan kaya raya.)

4. *Feat dan Achievement*

Kedua kata ini menekankan pada hasil perbuatan yang secara mental atau fisik sulit untuk dilakukan.

Contoh:

Coming top in the exam was quite an **achievement**.

(Menjadi yang terbaik pada ujian ini merupakan prestasi tersendiri.)

c. **Afraid, Frightened, dan Scared**

Afraid, Frightened, dan Scared memiliki arti yang sama, yaitu 'takut'. Walaupun sama artinya, ketiganya memiliki persamaan dan perbedaan.

Makna ketiga kata ini sama ketika seseorang takut akan sesuatu, tidak menyukai sesuatu dan ketakutan ketika mereka melihat atau mengalaminya.

Contoh:

- I must admit I'm scared of flying.
(Saya harus mengakui bahwa saya takut terbang.)
- I've always been afraid of dogs.
(Saya selalu takut pada anjing.)
- All the kids in the class were frightened of Mr. Radley
(Semua anak di dalam kelas takut terhadap Pak Radley.)

1. *Scared, Frightened*

Kedua kata ini digunakan ketika seseorang khawatir dan takut jika sesuatu yang buruk akan terjadi.

Contoh:

- The earthquake was awful! I have never been so scared in my life.
(Gempa bumi itu sangat mengerikan! Saya tidak pernah begitu takut dalam hidup saya.)
- She woke up suddenly in the middle of the night feeling very frightened.
(Dia tiba-tiba terbangun di tengah malam merasa sangat ketakutan.)

2. *Scared*

Scared sering digunakan untuk menggambarkan ketakutan kecil, terutama untuk anak-anak.

Contoh:

I wasn't scared of the wicked witch but Thomas was.

(Saya tidak takut pada penyihir jahat, tetapi Thomas takut.)

3. *Scared, Frightened, dan Afraid*

Scared dan *frightened* dapat diletakkan sebelum kata benda, sedangkan *afraid* tidak.

Contoh:

- The worst thing for a frightened child is a frightened adult. **ATAU**
- The worst thing for a scared child is a scared adult.
- The worst thing for an afraid child is an afraid adult. **SALAH**

d. ... Years Old dan ... Years of Age

Anda pernah mendengar kalimat di bawah ini?

- I am 30 years old.
- I am 30 years of age.

Apakah kedua kalimat di atas benar? Apa perbedaannya?

1. ... *years old*

Frasa ... *years old* digunakan untuk menggambarkan usia atau umur orang dan benda.

Contoh:

- I am forty years old.
(Saya berusia 40 tahun.)
- My car is ten years old.
(Mobil saya berusia 10 tahun.)

2. ... *years of age*

Frasa ... *years of age* digunakan untuk menunjukkan usia/umur orang saja. Usia/umur benda tidak dapat digunakan dengan frasa ini. Frasa ini banyak digunakan dalam situasi formal dan tulisan formal.

Contoh:

Children do not start school in some countries until they are seven years of age.

(Anak-anak tidak bisa masuk sekolah di beberapa negara sampai usia mereka 7 tahun.)

e. **Allow, Permit, dan Let**

Allow, permit dan *let* memiliki arti yang sama, yaitu 'mengizinkan'. Perbedaannya adalah sebagai berikut:

1. *Let*

Let adalah kata kerja paling umum yang paling banyak digunakan untuk menyatakan 'mengizinkan' dan sering digunakan dalam kalimat perintah (imperatif).

Contoh:

- Let Grandma sit there!
(Izinkan/Biarkan Nenek duduk di sana!)
- Don't let me forget there's a cake in the oven, will you?
(Tolong ingatkan saya ada kue di oven, ya?)

Let juga digunakan untuk menyatakan seseorang/sesuatu mengizinkan Anda untuk melakukan sesuatu.

Contoh:

- Dad doesn't let me watch the program.
(Ayah tidak mengizinkan saya menonton acara itu.)
- The cash machine wouldn't let me get any money out.
(ATM itu tidak mengeluarkan uang saya lagi.)

2. *Allow*

Allow biasanya digunakan dalam kalimat pasif.

Contoh:

- I am not allowed to eat any milk products.
(Saya tidak diizinkan makan makanan yang mengandung susu.)
- She was allowed home from hospital after being treated for shock.
(Dia diizinkan pulang dari RS setelah dirawat karena terkejut.)

3. *Permit*

Permit digunakan dalam situasi formal, teknis, atau dalam surat-menyurat resmi.

Contoh:

- Smoking is not permitted in the coach.
(Dilarang merokok di dalam bus.)
- You shall not permit the use of the vehicle by any other person.
(Kendaraan ini tidak diizinkan digunakan oleh orang lain.)

f. Almost, Nearly, Scarcely, dan Hardly

Almost, nearly, scarcely dan *hardly* memiliki arti yang sama, yaitu 'hampir'. Namun, keempat kata keterangan ini memiliki fungsi yang berbeda, yaitu:

1. *Almost & Nearly*

Kedua kata ini digunakan dalam kalimat positif.

Contoh:

- She fell and almost/nearly broke her neck.
(Dia jatuh dan lehernya hampir patah.)
- He nearly/almost always arrives late.
(Dia hampir selalu datang terlambat.)

2. *Hardly*

Hardly pada umumnya menggantikan *almost* di depan kalimat negatif.

Contoh:

- She sang so quietly that I could hardly hear her.
(Dia bernyanyi pelan sekali sehingga saya hampir tidak dapat mendengarnya.)
- She sang so quietly that I almost couldn't hear her. **SALAH**

3. *Hardly & Scarcely*

Dalam kalimat yang menjelaskan atau menggambarkan sesuatu, terjadi sesaat setelah kejadian lainnya, *hardly* dan *scarcely* ditempatkan di awal kalimat. Setelah itu, pola yang digunakan adalah pola **inversion**.

Contoh:

Hardly/Scarcely had we arrived, when it began to rain.
(Kami hampir tiba, ketika hujan mulai turun.)

g. However, Though, Even though, dan Although

However, (even) though, dan although mempunyai arti yang sama, yaitu 'walaupun/namun'. Walaupun sama, namun fungsinya berbeda, yaitu:

1. *Although, even though, dan though*

Ketiga kata ini diletakkan di depan kalimat atau klausa yang memiliki kata kerja.

Contoh:

- Although/Even though/Though everyone played well, we lost the game. **ATAU**

- We lost the game although/even though/though everyone played well.
(Kami kalah walaupun semua pemain bermain dengan baik.)

Though banyak digunakan dalam percakapan sehari-hari atau percakapan tidak resmi dan letaknya di akhir kalimat. Namun, *although* dan *even though* tidak dapat diletakkan di akhir kalimat.

Contoh:

Everyone played well. We still lost the game, though.

(Semua pemain bermain dengan baik, namun, kami kalah dalam pertandingan itu.)

Although dan *though* dapat diletakkan sebelum kata sifat, kata keterangan, atau frasa keterangan.

Contoh:

His first acting role, though/although small, was a great success.

(Penampilan perdananya, walaupun kecil, namun sukses besar.)

2. *However*

However digunakan untuk situasi yang lebih formal/resmi. *However* diikuti dengan tanda koma dan dapat diletakkan di awal atau di akhir kalimat.

Contoh:

- Everyone played well. However, we still lost the game. **ATAU**
- Everyone played well. We still lost the game, however.

h. In Which dan Where

In which adalah frasa yang mempunyai arti yang sama dengan *where* yang artinya 'di mana'. Keduanya tidak mempunyai makna yang berbeda. Anda dapat menggunakan salah satunya. Namun, biasanya kata *in which* banyak digunakan dalam situasi formal.

Perhatikan contoh kalimat di bawah ini:

- In my office, there are **three cabinets**.
(Di kantorku, ada 3 lemari.)
- Legal documents are kept in **them**. (Them menggantikan "three cabinets")
(Dokumen-dokumen legal disimpan di dalamnya.)

Apabila kedua kalimat tersebut kita satukan dengan tujuan untuk menyederhanakannya maka kalimatnya akan menjadi:

- In my office, there are three cabinets in which legals documents are kept.
Atau bisa juga:
- In my office, there are three cabinets where legals documents are kept.
Atau bisa juga:
- In my office, there are three cabinets which legals documents are kept in.
- In my office, there are three cabinets where legals documents are kept in. (SALAH)

Dari ketiga kalimat ini, mana yang terbaik? Jawabannya semuanya terbaik. Terserah Anda mau menggunakan yang mana. Kalau saya pribadi lebih suka dengan yang ketiga.

i. **Agree to, Agree with, Agree on**

Kata *agree* secara leksikal diartikan dengan 'setuju'. Namun, dalam teks-teks Bahasa Inggris, kita sering melihat *agree with*, *agree to*, atau *agree on*. Kata ini sering membingungkan sebab semuanya mempunyai arti yang sama, yaitu 'setuju dengan'.

Sebenarnya, ketiga kata tersebut berbeda fungsi seperti yang akan dijelaskan di bawah ini:

1. *Agree to*

Agree to berarti setuju dengan saran atau tindakan orang lain.

Contoh:

- My father agreed to my action.
(Ayah saya setuju dengan tindakan saya.)
- Our manager agreed to our recommendation.
(Manager kami setuju dengan rekomendasi kami.)

2. *Agree with*

Agree with berarti setuju dengan orang lain, suatu pendapat atau kebijakan.

Contoh:

- Malaysia agrees with the Policy of the Government of Republic Indonesia on Labor Matters.
(Malaysia setuju dengan kebijakan Pemerintah RI tentang Ketenagakerjaan.)

- I completely agree with you.
(Saya sangat setuju denganmu.)

3. *Agree on*

Agree on berarti setuju dengan masalah yang ingin diputuskan, mempunyai perasaan yang sama atas suatu masalah.

Contoh:

- I agree on the the Government decision on Indonesian Labor.
(Saya setuju dengan keputusan Pemerintah tentang TKI.)
- More than a million people agree on the Human Right National Commission concerning Amrin's problem.
(Lebih dari satu juta orang setuju dengan Komnas HAM tentang masalah di Amrin.)

j. *Be dan Being*

Kata kerja *to be* disebut juga *stative verb*. Kata kerja tersebut jarang digunakan dalam bentuk kata kerja *continuous (progressive)*, seperti *Present Continuous, Past Continuous, Future Continuous*, dll.

Contoh:

- I am sad at the moment (**BUKAN** I am being sad ...)
(Saya sedang sedih saat ini.)
- He was in the kitchen when the phone rang. (**BUKAN** He was being in the kitchen ...)
(Dia sedang ada di dapur ketika teleponnya berbunyi.)
- I will be in Semarang this time next week (**BUKAN** I will be being in Semarang...)
(Saya akan sedang berada di Semarang pada jam segini minggu depan.)

Namun, beberapa kata kerja statif dapat juga digunakan dalam bentuk kata kerja *continuous* ketika mengandung makna tertentu. Kata *be* adalah salah satu dari kata kerja tersebut. Kalimat berikut ini tidak salah karena *be* digunakan untuk menggambarkan sebuah aktivitas.

Contoh:

- The children are **being** very naughty (= They are doing naughty things)
(Anak-anak sedang melakukan hal-hal yang nakal.)
- He was **being** careless (= He was doing something carelessly)
(Dia sedang melakukan sesuatu yang sangat ceroboh.)

Bandingkan contoh berikut ini, kata *be* digunakan tidak untuk menggambarkan sebuah aktivitas.

Contoh:

- I hope you **are** well. (**BUKAN** I hope you are being well).
(*Saya harap kamu dalam keadaan baik..*)
- He **was** very happy when his friends arrived. (**BUKAN** He was being very happy ...)
(*Dia sangat senang saat teman-temannya tiba.*)

Penggunaan lainnya dari kata *being* dalam bentuk kata kerja pasif. Kita biasanya memakainya dengan kata kerja bentuk ketiga.

Bentuknya seperti di bawah ini:

- Present progressive (am/are/is **being** + past participle)
Contoh: The shop is closed because it is **being** renovated.
(*Toko itu tutup karena sedang direnovasi.*)
- Past progressive (was/were **being** + past participle)
Contoh: I knew that he was **being** dishonest.
(*Saya tahu bahwa dia sedang berbohong.*)
- Passive -ing form (**being** + past participle)
Contoh: They look forward to **being** invited.
(*Mereka berharap diundang.*)

1. *be* + infinitive

Rencana yang matang: fungsi bentuk seperti ini untuk menjelaskan suatu rencana yang sudah disusun terlebih dahulu, terutama untuk menjelaskan suatu rencana yang bersifat resmi.

Contoh:

- The President **is to** visit Nigeria next month.
(*Presiden akan mengunjungi Nigeria bulan depan.*)
Nasib: Fungsi ini juga untuk menjelaskan sesuatu yang mungkin terjadi pada masa yang akan datang.
- I thought we were saying goodbye for ever. But, we **were to** meet again, many years later.
(*Saya pikir kita akan berpisah selamanya. Namun kita akan berjumpa lagi, beberapa tahun kemudian.*)
Pra-syarat: Di dalam kalimat pengandaian (*conditional*), ketika klausa utama mengekspresikan sesuatu yang harus terjadi dulu jika sesuatu yang lainnya itu terjadi.

- We must hurry if we **are to** get there by lunchtime.
(Kita harus bergegas jika kita mau tiba di sana saat makan siang.)
Perintah: bentuk ini juga digunakan untuk memberikan perintah.
- You can go to the party, but you **are not to** be back late.
(Kamu bisa pergi ke pesta itu, namun kamu tidak boleh pulang terlambat.)

2. *Be + passive infinitive*

Bentuk ini sering digunakan dalam bentuk pemberitahuan dan instruksi.

Contoh:

- This cover **is not to** be removed.
(Penutup ini tidak boleh dibuka.)
- The medicine **is to** be taken three times a day.
(Obatnya harus diminum 3 kali sehari.)

k. ***Already, Yet, dan Still***

Dalam *present perfect*, kita sering menyatakan kegunaannya untuk membicarakan kejadian yang berlangsung pada masa lampau dan terjadi pada waktu tertentu di masa itu dan saat bicara kejadian tersebut masih berlangsung.

Perhatikan contoh berikut ini:

- I've visited my parents three times this week.
(Saya sudah mengunjungi orang tua saya 3 kali minggu ini.)
- She's smoked a packet of cigarettes already today.
(Dia sudah mengisap sebungkus rokok hari ini.)

Nah, ketika kita membicarakan "waktu yang belum selesai" ini, kita sering menggunakan *already* dan *yet*, yang semuanya dapat digunakan untuk menggambarkan kejadian yang sedang berlangsung atau kita mengharapkannya akan terjadi pada masa sekarang.

1. *Already* dipakai untuk mengatakan sesuatu itu ada antara sekarang atau masa lampau, bukan pada masa yang akan datang. Kata tersebut menyatakan ekspresi terkejut, misalnya karena sesuatu itu berlangsung lebih cepat dari yang diharapkan.

Contoh:

- When's Sally going to come? (Kapan Sally akan datang?)
She's already here. (Dia sudah ada di sini.)
- You must go to Scotland. (Kamu harus pergi ke Skotlandia.)
I've already been. (Saya sudah pernah ke sana.)

- Have you already finished? That was quick!
(Sudah selesai? – Cepat sekali!)

2. *Not yet* digunakan untuk mengatakan sesuatu yang diharapkan itu akan terjadi pada masa datang, bukan sekarang atau masa lalu.

Contoh:

- Is Sally here? (Apakah Sally ada di sini?)
Not yet. (Belum.)
- The postman hasn't come yet.
(Tukang pos belum datang.)

Di dalam pertanyaan, kita memakai *yet* untuk bertanya apakah sesuatu yang kita harapkan itu sudah terjadi atau belum.

Contoh:

- Is supper ready yet?
(Apakah makan malam sudah siap?)
- Has the postman come yet?
(Apakah tukang posnya sudah datang?)

Already dan *yet* dapat juga digunakan untuk membicarakan masa lalu. Dalam *British English*, kita memakai *past perfect tense* untuk menyatakannya:

Contoh:

- I wanted to know if he had already left.
(Saya ingin tahu apakah dia sudah berangkat atau belum.)
- They hadn't even got up yet.
(Mereka belum bangun.)

3. *Still* memiliki arti dan penggunaan yang sama dengan *already* dan *yet*.

Contoh:

- She's still asleep.
(Dia masih tidur.)
- Is it still raining?
(Apakah masih hujan di luar?)
- I've been thinking for hours, but I still can't decide.
(Saya sudah memikirkannya selama berjam-jam, namun saya masih belum bisa memutuskan.)

Kata *still* tersebut digunakan dengan *present simple* dan *tenses-tenses continuous*. Sama dengan *already* dan *yet*, kata *still* dapat juga digunakan dengan arti *past*. Dalam hal ini, *past simple*, *continuous*, atau *perfect* bisa juga digunakan.

Contoh:

- When we arrived they were still at the dinner table.
(Ketika kami tiba, mereka masih di meja makan.)
- When we arrived they were still having dinner.
(Ketika kami tiba, mereka sedang makan malam.)
- When we arrived they still hadn't finished dinner.
(Ketika kami tiba, mereka masih belum selesai makan malam.)

I. Can dan May

Dalam percakapan sehari-hari, sebuah permintaan izin biasanya dijawab dengan *can*, *cannot*, atau *can't* daripada menggunakan *may* atau *may not* walaupun pertanyaannya memakai *may*.

Contoh dialog:

- May I come to your house tonight?
(Apakah saya boleh datang ke rumahmu malam ini?)
- No, you can't. ATAU Yes, you can go.



PRACTICE TEST

1

PRACTICE TEST

STRUCTURE AND WRITTEN EXPRESSION

Time: 25 minutes 40 questions

This section is designed to measure your ability to recognize language that is appropriate for standard written English. There are two types of question in this section, with special direction for each type.

STRUCTURE DIRECTION

Question 1–15 are incomplete sentences. Beneath each sentence you will see four words or phrases, marked A, B, C, and D. Choose one word or phrase that best completes the sentence. Then, on your answer sheet, find the number of the question and cross that corresponds to the letter of the answer you have chosen.

1. If endangered species ... saved, rain forests must be protected.
 - A. are to be
 - B. be
 - C. can be
 - D. will be
2. The average spoken sentence in conversational English takes 2.5
 - A. for to complete
 - B. completing
 - C. to complete
 - D. by completing
3. Civil engineering had better ... steel supports in concrete structure built on unstable geophysical sites.
 - A. include
 - B. including

- C. inclusion
 - D. included
4. The two main ... are permanent magnets and electromagnets.
- A. kinds of magnets
 - B. kind of magnets
 - C. kind magnets
 - D. kinds magnets
5. Seals can ... because they have a thick layer of bubbler under their fur.
- A. keep them warm
 - B. keep themselves warm
 - C. they keep warm
 - D. keep their warm.
6. The New England states have had ... serious earthquake since the Ice Age.
- A. none
 - B. not only
 - C. not
 - D. no
7. The cost of a thirty-second commercial on a network television station is ... for most businesses.
- A. so much
 - B. much
 - C. very much
 - D. much too much
8. All of the sense ... smell must pass through intermediate gateways to be processed before they are registered in the brain.
- A. untill
 - B. but
 - C. to
 - D. for
9. The Scholastic Aptitude Test (SAT) ... by high school students as a requirement for admission to many colleges.
- A. which is taken
 - B. is taken
 - C. taken
 - D. is taking

10. Before the 1800s, when William Young made different shoes for right and left feet, shoes ... on their foot.
 - A. can wear
 - B. are wearing
 - C. could be worn
 - D. worn

11. How many musical notes of the 11,000 tones that the human ear can distinguish ... in the musical scale?
 - A. it is
 - B. is it
 - C. there are
 - D. are there

12. An abstract painter and pioneer of Surrealism, ... and symbolic images.
 - A. Miro's works are characterized by bright colors
 - B. the works of Miro are characterized by bright colors
 - C. Miro is famous for works characterized by bright colors
 - D. bright colors characterized the works of Miro

13. Most of the Cajun French who live in Louisiana can neither read ... the French variety that they fluently.
 - A. nor they write
 - B. nor write
 - C. ot writing
 - D. neither write

14. Whereas a gas expands ... in all directions, a vapor remains somewhat more concentrated.
 - A. in a uniform manner
 - B. uniformly
 - C. uniformly in manner
 - D. uniform

15. The pilgrim ... seven thousand dollars at 43 percent interest to make their journey in 1620.
 - A. lent
 - B. borrowing
 - C. to lend
 - D. borrowed

WRITTEN EXPRESION

DIRECTION

In questions 16–40 each sentence has four underlined words or phrases. The four underlined parts of the sentence are marked A, B, C, and D. Identify the one underlined word or phrase that must be changed in order for the sentence to be correct. Then, on your answer sheet, find the number of the question and cross that corresponds to the letter of the answer you have chosen.

16. When the silkworm gets through to lay its eggs, it dies.
A B C D
17. It is generally believed that Thomas Jefferson was the one who had
A
researched and wrote the Declaration of Independence during the
B
months prior to its signing in July 1776.
C D
18. The understanding electricity depends on a knowledge of atoms and the
A B C
subatomic particles of which they are composed.
D
19. Sloths spend most of its time hanging upside down from trees and
A B
feeding on leaves and fruits.
C D
20. When the European settlers came in the seventeenth century, the
A
newcomers began a systematic effort to push the Native American into the
B
wilderness and to take their land from their.
C D
21. There are more potatoes cultivated than any the other vegetable crop
A B C D
worldwide.

30. The purpose of traveler's checks is to protect travelers from theft and
 A B C
 accidental lost of money.
 D
31. The plan connected the Hudson River with Lake Ery by a canal was first
 A B C
 proposed in the late eighteenth century.
 D
32. Why certain plants contain alkaloids remains a mystery, although botanists
 A B C
 have formulated a number of theory to explain it.
 D
33. Dimness of light will not harm the eyes anymore than taking a photograph
 A B C
 in dimly light can harm a camera.
 D
34. Contemporary film director, some of them write the scripts for, act in, and
 A
even produce their own motion picture, are there by assuming ever
 B C D
 more control of their art.
35. Petroleum it is composed of a complex mixture of hydrogen carbon.
 A B C D
36. People usually wear clothing why two basic purposes: warmth and
 A B C
decoration.
 D
37. In 1890 Kate Hurd-Mead became medical director of the Bryn Mawr School
 A B
 for girls, one of a first schools in the United States to initiate a preventive
 C D
 health program.

KUNCI JAWABAN DAN PEMBAHASAN PRACTICE 1

STRUCTURE AND WRITTEN EXPRESSION

- Jawaban : A
Pembahasan : Kata *if* menunjukkan bahwa kalimat ini adalah kalimat *conditional*. Karena *modal* sudah ada (*must*), yang dibutuhkan adalah kata kerja. Bentuk yang tepat adalah *are to be* untuk mengekspresikan hasil (*result*).
- Jawaban : C
Pembahasan : *Infinitive to complete* dipakai untuk mengungkapkan tujuan.
- Jawaban : A
Pembahasan : *Had better* memerlukan kata kerja dalam bentuk *infinitive* tanpa *to*.
- Jawaban : A
Pembahasan : Kata *two* menunjukkan bahwa kata benda setelahnya harus jamak. Selain itu bentuk *kind/kinds of* selalu dipakai sebelum kata benda jamak. Jadi, jawaban yang tepat adalah *kinds of magnets*.
- Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : Pada kalimat ini, klausa induk kalimat belum lengkap karena setelah rumpang langsung dilanjutkan dengan anak kalimat. Yang dibutuhkan rumpang adalah frasa yang bermakna "dapat menghangatkan diri mereka sendiri". Bentuk yang tepat adalah *themselves* yang merupakan *reflexive pronoun*.
- Jawaban : D
Pembahasan : *No* dipakai sebelum noun *earthquakes* untuk menunjukkan makna 'tidak ada'.
- Jawaban : D
Pembahasan : *Much too much* adalah frasa yang dipakai untuk mengungkapkan sesuatu yang berlebihan.

8. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : *But* dipakai sebelum kata benda *smell* untuk mengungkapkan pengecualian.
9. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : *Is taken* adalah kata kerja utama dari subjek *The Scholastic Aptitude Text*.
10. Jawaban : C
Pembahasan : *Adverbial phrase "before the 1800s"* menekankan sudut pandang di masa lampau (*past*). *Could* menunjukkan sudut pandang tersebut.
11. Jawaban : D
Pembahasan : *Are* dipakai sebelum *there* untuk merujuk pada kata benda *notes* dan untuk menunjukkan susunan kata pada kalimat tanya.
12. Jawaban : C
Pembahasan : *Introductory phrase* seharusnya didahului *noun* yang menerangkannya.
13. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : Susunan paralel *neither* adalah *nor*. *Nor* harus diikuti oleh kata yang sejenis dengan kata yang berada setelah *neither* sebelumnya. Karena *neither* diikuti langsung oleh kata kerja (*read*), maka *nor* harus langsung diikuti oleh kata kerja juga.
14. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : Pilihan A dan B sebenarnya benar. Hanya saja *redundant* dan *indirect phrase* seharusnya dihindarkan. *Adverb 'uniformly'* di pilihan B tepat karena lebih sederhana dan lebih langsung.
15. Jawaban : D
Pembahasan : Karena penunjuk waktunya adalah *in 1960*, bentuk kata kerja harus *past*. Makna kalimatnya adalah "para peziarah ... tujuh ribu dolar dengan bunga 43 persen untuk melakukan perjalanan mereka pada tahun 1620". Jadi, kata kerja yang tepat adalah yang bermakna "meminjam",

yaitu *borrowed*. *Lent* tidak tepat karena bermakna "meminjamkan".

Written Expression:

16. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : Karena frasa kata kerja *to get through* memerlukan bentuk *-ing* dalam *complement*, *to lay* seharusnya *laying*.
17. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : *Wrote* seharusnya *written* karena auxiliary *had* memerlukan *participle*.
18. Jawaban : A
Pembahasan : Baik bentuk *-ing* atau *infinitive* bisa dipakai sebagai subjek kalimat. *The understanding* seharusnya *Understanding* atau *To understand*.
19. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : Harus ada kesesuaian/*agreement* antara *pronoun* dan *antecedent*. *Its* seharusnya *their* untuk disesuaikan dengan *antecedent* '*sloths*' yang berbentuk jamak.
20. Jawaban : D
Pembahasan : *Object pronoun* dipakai setelah preposisi *from*. *Their* seharusnya *them*.
21. Jawaban : C
Pembahasan : *The other* seharusnya cukup *other* karena sudah ada *any*.
22. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : *Real* adalah *adjective* yang dipakai dalam percakapan sehari-hari sebagai *adverb*. *Real great* seharusnya *very great*.
23. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : *The same* pada kalimat perbandingan berpasangan dengan *as*. Karena itu *than*, seharusnya *as*.
24. Jawaban : A
Pembahasan : *Because* dipakai sebelum klausa dengan subjek dan kata

kerja. *Because of* dipakai sebelum frasa. Karena *the expense of...* merupakan frasa, jawaban yang tepat menggunakan *because of*.

25. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : *Among* merujuk pada tiga atau lebih kata benda. *Between* digunakan untuk dua kata benda. Karena kalimat hanya ada dua kata benda, yaitu *speed* dan *pressure*, penghubung yang tepat adalah *between*.
26. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : Kata ganti penghubung (*relative pronoun*) benda adalah *which*, bukan *whom*. *Whom* seharusnya *which*.
27. Jawaban : A
Pembahasan : Karena jamak *year* seharusnya *years*.
28. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : Karena kata benda berbentuk tunggal (*lizard* yang dikuatkan dengan penggunaan *its* dan *it*), *tails* seharusnya *tail*.
29. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : *Head noun* dari frasa *several basis characteristics* adalah *characteristics*. Karena kata-kata pada frasa tersebut menerangkan *characteristics*, bentuk *basis* tidak tepat karena kata benda. Yang tepat adalah bentuk kata sifatnya, yaitu *basic*.
30. Jawaban : A
Pembahasan : *Lost of* seharusnya *loss of*
31. Jawaban : A
Pembahasan : *Connected* seharusnya *to connect* karena mengandung tujuan, yaitu rencana untuk menghubungkan dua buah sungai sehingga bentuk *verb* yang benar adalah *to+V1*.
32. Jawaban : D
Pembahasan : *A number* diikuti oleh kata benda jamak, sedangkan *the number* diikuti oleh kata benda tunggal. Jadi, *theory* seharusnya *theories*.

33. Jawaban : D
Pembahasan : *Dimly* seharusnya *dim* (bentuk *adjective*) yang bermakna 'redup' untuk menjelaskan kata *light*.
34. Jawaban : A
Pembahasan : *Some of them* seharusnya *some of whom* karena bentuk *W-H clausal* yang dimaksudkan untuk menghindari pengulangan atas hal yang sama. Pada kalimat ini, yaitu *contemporary directors. Them* seharusnya *whom*.
35. Jawaban : A
Pembahasan : *It* seharusnya dihilangkan karena akan menjadikan subjek ganda. *Petroleum* sudah jelas merupakan subjek kalimat sehingga *it* tidak diperlukan dalam kalimat tersebut.
36. Jawaban : C
Pembahasan : *Why* pada kalimat seharusnya *for* untuk menunjukkan alasan.
37. Jawaban : C
Pembahasan : *A* pada *one of a first schools* seharusnya *the* karena merujuk pada *first schools* yang bentuknya jamak.
38. Jawaban : A
Pembahasan : *Others* seharusnya *other* karena diikuti kata bendanya (*woods*). *Others* hanya dipakai bila tidak diikuti kata benda.
39. Jawaban : C
Pembahasan : *Great* seharusnya *greatly* (bentuk *adverb*) karena menjelaskan kata kerja *change*.
40. Jawaban : D
Pembahasan : *His* seharusnya *its* karena merujuk pada *attainment*. *His* dipakai untuk merujuk kepemilikan laki-laki.

2

PRACTICE TEST

STRUCTURE AND WRITTEN EXPRESSION

PART A

This section is designed to measure your ability to recognize language that is appropriate for standard written English. There are two types of question in this section, with special direction for each type.

DIRECTION

Question 1–15 are incomplete sentences. Beneath each sentence you will see four words or phrases, marked A, B, C, and D. Choose one word or phrase that best completes the sentence. Then, on your answer sheet, find the number of the question and cross that corresponds to the letter of the answer you have chosen.

1. Air constricted between the vocal chords makes them ... producing sound.
 - A. to vibrate
 - B. vibrating
 - C. vibrate
 - D. the vibration
2. Even without strong wings, the ostrich has survived because it ... at high speeds to escape predators.
 - A. to run
 - B. can run
 - C. running
 - D. run
3. Termites can do ... to the wood in homes before they are detected.
 - A. an intensive damage
 - B. intensive damae
 - C. the intensive damage
 - D. extensive damage

4. Hawkeye was a character ... James Fenimore Cooper created for *The Last of the Mohicans*.
- A. who
 - B. whom
 - C. which
 - D. whose
5. The brightest body in the constellation Hydra, Alphard is only ...
- A. a second-magnitude star
 - B. a magnitude second star
 - C. a star of the magnitude second
 - D. a second magnitude star
6. A dancer, while always graceful and precious in her movement, trains ... any other athlete.
- A. as strenuously
 - B. more strenuously as
 - C. as strenuously as
 - D. as strenuously that
7. Cooking oil made from corn does not become saturated when heated, and
- A. neither oil made from any
 - B. oil made from soy does either
 - C. neither does oil made from soy
 - D. oil made from soy either
8. The jet stream ... usually occurs at about thirty-five to sixty degrees latitude.
- A. a narrow band of wind that
 - B. is a narrow band of wind that
 - C. a narrow band of wind
 - D. it is narrow bad of wind that
9. The smallest flying dinosaurs ... of a robin.
- A. about the size
 - B. was about the size
 - C. were about the size
 - D. have been about the size

10. People under thirty years old cannot remember when ... without a computer terminal.
 - A. they have to work
 - B. they had to work
 - C. their working
 - D. working

11. Born in 1892, ... while he wrote the poems and plays that made him famous.
 - A. the Library of Congress is where Archibald MacLeish worked as a librarian
 - B. Archibald MacLeish worked as a librarian at the Library of Congress
 - C. a librarian at the Library of Congress, Archibald MacLeish worked
 - D. at the Library of Congress, Archibald MacLeish worked as a librarian

12. The Cabinet consists of secretaries department who report to the president, give him advice, and ... decisions.
 - A. helping him making
 - B. helping him make
 - C. help him making
 - D. help him make

13. Natural gas often occurs ... petroleum in the minute pores of rock such as sandstone and limestone.
 - A. both together with
 - B. both together
 - C. with
 - D. both with

14. People with exceptionally high intelligence quotients may not be the best employees since they ... unless the job is constantly changing.
 - A. become bored of work
 - B. are becoming boring in work
 - C. become bored with their wor
 - D. work becoming bored

15. The Ford Theater Lincoln was shot
 - A. must restore
 - B. must be restoring
 - C. must have been restored
 - D. must restored

WRITTEN EXPRESSION

DIRECTION

In question 16–40 each sentence has four underlined words or phrases. The four underlined part of the sentence are marked A, B, C, and D. Identify the one underlined word or phrase that must be changed in order for the sentence to be correct. Then, on your answer sheet, find the number of the question and fill in the space that corresponds to the letter of the answer you have chosen.

16. During his twelve year there, Ellis Marshalis turned the New Orleans Center for the Creative Arts into a rich training place for future jazz stars.
A B C D
17. Gothic revival architechure has several basis characteristics that distinguish it from other nineteenth-century architectural style.
A B C D
18. While studying in chemistry of human body, Dr Rosalyn Yalow won a Nobel Prize for the research she conducted on the role of hormones.
A B C D
19. Although complete paralysis is rare with neuritis, some degree of muscle weakness common.
A B C D
20. In 1884 Belva Lockwood, a lawyer who has appeared before the Supreme Court, became the first woman was nominated for President of United States.
A B C D
21. The most important parameters affecting the rocket's maximum flight felocity is the relationship between the vehicle's mass and the amount of propellan it can carry.
A B C D

32. Neither editors the photographer nor the reporter witnesses the event,
 A B
 but they and their editors prepared both articles and photos as if they
 D
have been there.
 C
33. Recent studies show that during a volcanic eruption, ash spreads in the
 A B
 sky, lava flows up and hot wind travel for miles disturbing weather pattern.
 C D
34. Marcy said that she know how the procedure for doing the experiment, but
 A
 when began to work in the laboratory, she found that she was mistaken.
 B C D
35. Whenever students asked for help or guidance, the counselor will advise
 A B
them or refer them to someone who will.
 C D
36. Jack told his girlfriend that the party will be held in Jakarta Plaza.
 A B C D
37. The new student's progress advanced forward with such speed that all
 A B C
 the teacher will amazed.
 D
38. Because they have moved away, they hardly never go to the beach
 A B C D
 anymore.
39. Neither of the girls have turned in the term papers to the instructor yet.
 A B C D
40. After studying all the new materials the student was able to rise his test
 A B C D
 score by twenty-five points.

PRACTICE 2

KUNCI JAWABAN DAN PEMBAHASAN

STRUCTURE AND WRITTEN EXPRESSION

1. Jawaban : C
Pembahasan : Bentuk *make* dengan sesuatu, seperti *the vocal chords (them)* dan kata kerja mengekspresikan *causative*. Pada *causative*, *make* diikuti oleh kata kerja bentuk dasar.
2. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : Kata *can* diikuti kata kerja mengekspresikan *ability/kemampuan*.
3. Jawaban : D
Pembahasan : Dalam Bahasa Inggris, *damage* adalah *uncountable noun*.
4. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : *Whom* adalah *complement* dari subjek *Cooper* dan kata kerja *created*.
5. Jawaban : A
Pembahasan : Penyebutan nomor *second* muncul mendahului sebelum benda dalam urutan *hyphenated adjectives*.
6. Jawaban : C
Pembahasan : *Comparative* dengan *adverb*, seperti *strenuously* memerlukan *as* sebelum dan *as* sesudah *adverb*.
7. Jawaban : C
Pembahasan : *Agreement* negatif memerlukan kata kerja sebagai *subject order* dan kata kerja *affirmative* setelah *neither* atau sebelum *either*.
8. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : Kalimat masih memerlukan frasa kata kerja untuk menjadi *main clause*.

9. Jawaban : C
Pembahasan : Kalimat masih memerlukan kata kerja ataupun *auxiliary*. Bentuk yang tepat i dengan subjek jamak (*flying dinosaurs*), yaitu *were about the size*.
10. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : Frasa *remember when* menegaskan waktu lampau. Jadi, jawaban membutuhkan kata kerja dalam bentuk *past tense*.
11. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : Sebuah frasa *introductory verb* seharusnya didahului kata benda yang diterangkan. Pilihan A terdapat kata benda yang bisa diterangkan oleh frasa *introductory 'born in 1892'*.
12. Jawaban : D
Pembahasan : Gagasan yang berurutan harus diungkapkan dengan struktur paralel. *Help* dalam pilihan D paralel/sejajar dengan kata kerja *report* dan *give*.
13. Jawaban : C
Pembahasan : Penggunaan kata dengan arti kata yang sama adalah pengulangan/*repetitive*.
14. Jawaban : C
Pembahasan : *Become bored with* adalah idiom dengan preposisi. Pilihan A,B dan D bukan *idiomatic expression* dengan *bored*.
15. Jawaban : C
Pembahasan : Kesimpulan yang logis mengenai waktu lampau diungkapkan oleh *must have* dan *participle*.
16. Jawaban : A
Pembahasan : Karena ada kata *twelve, year* seharusnya *years*.
17. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : Kata benda dari frasa *several basic characteristics* adalah *characteristic*. Karena kata-kata pada frasa tersebut menerangkan *characteristic*, *basis* seharusnya *basic* (bentuk *adjective*).

18. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : *Chemistry* seharusnya diikuti oleh preposisi *in* bukan *of*.
19. Jawaban : D
Pembahasan : Susunan frasa *weakness common* terbalik karena *weakness* adalah kata benda dan *common* adalah kata sifat, jadi seharusnya *common weakness*.
20. Jawaban : D
Pembahasan : Pada kalimat terdapat, predikat ganda: *became* dan *was nominated*. Pemakaian dua predikat sekaligus dan berurutan harus dihindari. Jadi, *nominated* seharusnya *who was*.
21. Jawaban : A
Pembahasan : Predikat *is* menunjukkan bahwa subjek yang dipakai seharusnya tunggal. Jadi, seharusnya *parameter*, bukan *parameters*.
22. Jawaban : A
Pembahasan : *Conjunction 'and'* menggabungkan kata yang setara, dalam hal ini *writer*, *poetry*, dan *critic*. Namun, penggunaan *poetry* tidak tepat karena berarti 'puisi', sementara dua kata yang lain berarti 'penulis' dan 'kritikus' yang merupakan suatu pekerjaan. Jadi, seharusnya *poetry* diganti *poet* yang artinya 'penyair'.
23. Jawaban : A
Pembahasan : Kata *all* seharusnya diikuti kata benda dalam bentuk jamak. Oleh karena itu, kata *library* seharusnya dalam bentuk jamak juga yaitu *libraries*.
24. Jawaban : D
Pembahasan : Frasa kata benda untuk *science* seharusnya dibentuk dari *adjective + noun*. Kata *physically* (*adverb*) seharusnya dalam bentuk *adjective* yaitu *physical*.
25. Jawaban : C
Pembahasan : Penggunaan *concord* antara *to prove* dengan *studying* tidak tepat. Karena menerangkan tujuan, *studying* seharusnya *to study*.

26. Jawaban : D
Pembahasan : Kata *than* menunjukkan bahwa kalimat tersebut adalah perbandingan tingkat *comparative*. Jadi, *the largest* seharusnya *larger than*.
27. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : Kata benda setelah *together with* tidak mempengaruhi predikat. Subjek kalimat tersebut adalah *Robin Hood*. Seharusnya, predikatnya adalah *is*. Jadi, sesuai antara subjek tunggal dengan predikat dalam bentuk tunggal juga.
28. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : Penggunaan kata *productioned* sebagai kata kerja tidak tepat, seharusnya *produced*.
29. Jawaban : A
Pembahasan : Penggunaan *relative pronoun 'where'* tidak tepat karena hal itu mengacu pada keterangan tempat. Yang digunakan seharusnya *which* yang menerangkan kata bendanya.
30. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : Karena kalimat tersebut adalah *conditional type III* maka *will* seharusnya *would have*.
31. Jawaban : C
Pembahasan : Dalam kalimat negatif, paralel kesesuaian *neither* adalah *nor*. Maka, *or* seharusnya *nor*.
32. Jawaban : D
Pembahasan : Kalimat majemuk tersebut dalam bentuk *past tense*. Jadi, *have been there* seharusnya *were there*.
33. Jawaban : C
Pembahasan : Kata *flows up* seharusnya *flows down* karena idiom *flows up* tidak sesuai, sedangkan *flows down* artinya mengalir ke bawah.
34. Jawaban : A
Pembahasan : *Know how* seharusnya *knew how* karena kalimat tersebut adalah kalimat tidak langsung atau *reported speech* sehingga *present* berubah menjadi *past*.

35. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : *Will advise* seharusnya *would advise* karena kalimat tersebut adalah kalimat *reported speech*. Jadi, *present* berubah menjadi *past*.
36. Jawaban : D
Pembahasan : *Will be held* seharusnya *would be held* karena kalimat tersebut adalah kalimat *reported speech*.
37. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : Kata *such* tidak perlu dipakai, seharusnya dihilangkan.
38. Jawaban : C
Pembahasan : Kata *hardly* bukan bentuk *adverb* dari *hard* maka tidak bisa menerangkan kata kerja. Jadi, seharusnya dihilangkan.
39. Jawaban : B
Pembahasan : Kata *yet* selalu didahului oleh *not* sehingga kata *have* seharusnya *haven't*.
40. Jawaban : D
Pembahasan : Kata *to rise* dalam kalimat tersebut mempunyai arti 'naik' atau 'bergerak naik'. Seharusnya, kata ini diubah menjadi *to raise* yang artinya 'meningkatkan'.



ADDITIONAL

ADDITIONAL 1

Study The Verbs Phrase Below! (Pelajarilah Kelompok Kata Kerja di Bawah Ini!)

belong to (milik)	This beautiful house belongs to Mr. Darmawan. (Rumah yang indah ini milik Tuan Darmawan.)
carry on (terus)	The workers carry on working until night. (Para pekerja terus bekerja sampai malam.)
come in (masuk)	Please come in. (Silakan masuk.)
complain to (mengeluh)	The workers complain to the manager of the company. (Para pekerja mengeluh pada manajer perusahaan itu.)
cross out (mencoret)	Cross out this word with a red ink. (Coretlah kata ini dengan tinta merah.)
depend on (bergantung pada)	Everything depends on you as chairman of this committee (Semuanya bergantungnya padamu sebagai ketua komite ini.)
die of (meninggal)	This old man died of cancer. (Pria tua itu meninggal karena kanker.)
different from (berbeda dengan)	Lombok is different from Bali. (Lombok berbeda dengan Bali.)
explain (menjelaskan)	Now explain the situation to us. (Sekarang jelaskan situasinya pada kami.)
fell over (jatuh)	Ratria fell over from the tree. (Ratria jatuh dari pohon.)
fill in (mengisi)	Fill in the blanks with the correct word. (Isilah titik-titik dengan kata yang tepat.)

get on/off (naik/turun)	The passengers get on/off the bus. (Para penumpang naik/turun bus.)
give up (menyerah)	Don't give up, trying again. (Jangan menyerah, coba lagi.)
go away (pergi)	Go away, now! (Pergilah, sekarang!)
go in (masuk)	We go in the room. (Kita masuk ke dalam ruangan.)
good at (pandai)	Kusuma is good at mathematics. (Kusuma pandai matematika.) Miranda is good at playing piano. (Miranda pandai bermain piano.)
happen to (terjadi pada)	I did not expect but it happened to me. (Aku tidak mengharapkannya, tapi itu terjadi padaku.)
hear from (mendengar dari)	I hear from my neighbor. (Aku mendengar dari tetanggaku.)
hurry up (bergegas)	Hurry up, please! (Bergegaslah!)
interested in (tertarik)	Jose Rizal is interested in history of the world. (Jose Rizal tertarik pada sejarah dunia.)
listen to (mendengarkan)	Usually I listen to western songs and pop songs in the evening. (Biasanya, saya mendengarkan lagu-lagu Barat dan pop pada malam hari.)
look after (merawat)	Mother looks after her child very patiently. (Ibu merawat anaknya dengan sangat sabar.)
look ahead (memandang ke muka)	We look ahead my future. (Kami memandang ke depan pada masa depanku.)
look around for/ round for (mencari)	I look around for/round for a new job. (Aku mencari pekerjaan baru.)

look at (melihat)	That man looks at my bag and necklace. (Pria itu melihat ke arah tas dan kalungku.)
look back (mengingat)	I look back my old days in Senior High School. (Aku mengingat hari-hariku di SMU dulu.)
look down (memandang rendah)	You must not look down other people. (Kamu tidak boleh memandang rendah orang lain.)
look for (mencari)	I am looking for my son, do you know him? (Aku sedang mencari putraku, apa kamu mengenalnya?)
look forward to (menanti-nanti)	I am looking forward to hearing from you. (Aku sangat menanti-nantikan mendengar kabarmu.)
look in (mampir)	We want to look in on the party. (Kami ingin mampir ke pesta.)
look into (memeriksa)	The police look into the murder. (Polisi memeriksa pembunuhan itu.)
look out (awas)	Look out! The bus is coming. (Awas! Busnya datang.)
look up (mencari)	Please look up the word in the dictionary. (Silakan cari kata itu di kamus.)
marry to (menikah dengan)	Rudy wants to marry to Peggy. (Rudy ingin menikah dengan Peggy.)
pick up (menggambil)	Pick the key up, please. (Tolong ambil kunci itu.)
provide with (menyediakan ... dengan/ memberikan)	This program provides the students with a lot of opportunities to express their ideas in English. (Program ini memberikan para siswa banyak kesempatan untuk mengekspresikan gagasan mereka dalam Bahasa Inggris.)
put down (letakkan)	Put the key down, please. (Tolong letakkan kunci itu.)
put off (menunda)	Don't put off doing your homework until tomorrow. (Jangan menunda mengerjakan PR-mu sampai besok.)

put on (pakai)	Put on your clothes right now. (Kenakan pakaianmu sekarang juga.)
put out (matikan)	Put out your cigarette here. (Matikan rokokmu di sini.)
slow down (pelan)	Slow down, please. (Tolong, pelan-pelan.)
speak to (bicara pada)	We have to speak to Mrs. Perry. (Kita harus bicara pada Mrs. Perry.)
speak up (bicara keras)	Speak up, please. (Tolong bicara dengan keras.)
spend on (menghabiskan ... pada)	Indah spends much money on books. (Indah menghabiskan banyak uang pada buku.)
switch on/off (nyalakan/matikan)	Switch on the computer. (Nyalakan/matikan komputer itu.)
take care of (menjaga)	Take care of yourself. (Jaga dirimu.)
take off (melepaskan)	Take off your shoes. (Lepaskan sepatumu.)
talk about (bicara tentang)	This film talks about World War Two. (Film ini membicarakan tentang Perang Dunia Kedua.)
talk to (bicara pada)	Let's talk to her now. (Mari bicara padanya sekarang.)
think of/about (memikirkan tentang)	I am thinking of /about joining a competition. (Aku sedang berpikir untuk bergabung dengan sebuah kompetisi.)
throw away (membuang)	Throw the paper away. (Buanglah kertas itu.)
translate into (menerjemahkan ke dalam)	Now translate this text into Indonesian. (Sekarang terjemahkan teks ini ke dalam Bahasa Indonesia.)
try on (mencoba)	Try this on. (Cobalah ini.)

turn on/off (nyalakan/matikan)	Turn on the electricity. (Nyalakan listriknya.)
turn over (balik)	Turn over the page, please. (Tolong balik halamannya.)
turn up/down (keraskan/kecilkan)	Turn up/down your TV, please. (Tolong kecilkan/keraskan suara TV-mu.)
work in (bekerja)	Mrs. Renny works in the office. (Renny bekerja di kantor.)

Study the Prepositions Phrase Below!

(Pelajarilah Kelompok Kata Depan di bawah ini!)

bring about (menyebabkan)	This tragedy brings about a lot of changes. (Tragedi ini menyebabkan banyak perubahan.)
bring on (menyebabkan)	This wind brings on flu. (Angin ini menyebabkan flu.)
bring up (mengangkat permasalahan)	He always brings up this issue at any meeting. (Dia selalu mengangkat permasalahan ini pada setiap pertemuan.)
call down (mencerca)	She was never called down by her manager. (Dia tidak pernah dicerca oleh manajernya.)
call off (menunda/ membatalkan)	The music show was called off because of flood. (Pertunjukan musik itu ditunda karena banjir.)
call on (mampir/mengunjungi)	Tomorrow I will call on you. (Besok saya akan mengunjungimu.)
call up (menelepon)	I call up my wife from my office. (Saya menelepon istri saya dari kantor.)
come out (terbit)	This magazine will come out soon. (Majalah ini akan segera terbit.)
come to (keseluruhan)	How much comes to? (Berapa keseluruhannya?)
come up (muncul)	A serious problem may come up at any time. (Suatu masalah serius bias muncul kapan saja.)

do over (menghiasi kembali)	Let's do over our office. (Mari kita menghiasi kembali kantor kita.)
do without (hidup tanpa/ pergi tanpa/berbuat tanpa)	We can not do without water. (Kita tidak dapat hidup tanpa air.)
get over (sembuh dari)	My daughter has got over from cold. (Anak perempuanku sudah sembuh dari demam.)
get up (bangun)	I usually get up at 5. (Saya biasanya bangun pukul 05.00.)
give out (membagj)	Give out the papers to all students. (Bagikan kertas ini kepada semua siswa.)
give up (menyerah)	Don't give up easily (Jangan mudah menyerah.)
go over (memeriksa)	He goes over his drafts. (Dia memeriksa drafnya.)
go with (sesuai dengan, cocok dengan)	This suit goes with his position. (Jas ini sesuai dengan jabatannya.)
hand down (meneruskan)	This radio station will hand down the latest news. (Stasion radio ini akan menyiarkan berita terakhir.)
hand in (menyerahkan, mengirimkan)	All proposals must be handed in on Saturday. (Semua proposal harus diserahkan pada Sabtu.)
hold down (menindas)	A dictator likes holding down his people. (Seorang diktator suka menindas rakyatnya.)
hold up (merampok)	This bank was held up last week. (Bank ini dirampok minggu lalu.)
keep off (menjauhi)	Keep off the grass, please. (Jauhi rumput itu.)
keep on (terus)	He keeps on going home. (Dia terus pulang.)

look after (merawat. memelihara)	She looks after her children patiently. (Dia merawat anak-anaknya dengan sabar.)
look over (mengulas)	I want to look over my notes before doing my test. (Saya ingin mengulas catan-catatan saya sebelum mengerjakan tes.)
look up (mencari arti kata-kata/ keterangan dalam kamus dll.)	You can look up this word in the dictionary. Kamu dapat mencari arti kata-kata ini di kamus.
make out (memahami, mengerti)	I could make out. (Saya dapat mengerti.)
make up (berdamai, berhias)	They made up after quarrelling. (Mereka berdamai setelah berkelahi.) Caroline is making up in her room. (Caroline sedang berhias di kamarnya.)
pass out (tak sadarkan diri, membagikan)	She passed out from the heat. (Dia tidak sadarkan diri karena panas.) Pass these forms out. (Bagikan formulir-formulir ini.)
pass up (mengabaikan kesempatan)	He passed up a chance to go abroad. (Dia mengabaikan kesempatan untuk pergi ke luar negeri.)
pick on (mengejek)	Please, stop picking on him. (Tolong, berhentilah mengejek dia.)
pick out (memilih)	You can pick out a shirt for me. (Kamu bisa memilihkan kemeja untuk saya.)
put off (menunda)	You must not putt off until tomorrow. (Kamu jangan menunda hingga besok.)
put on (mengenakan)	Put on your dress now. (Pakailah bajumu sekarang.)

put out (mematikan)	Don't forget to put out your cigarette butts here. (Jangan lupa matikan puntung rokokmu di sini.)
run across (bertemu tanpa sengaja)	I ran across my old friend in Bandung Supermall. (Aku bertemu teman lamaku di Bandung Supermall.)
run down (menghina)	Don't run down your friends like that. (Jangan menghina teman-temanmu seperti itu.)
run over (tertabrak mobil)	That old man was run over by a car. (Orang tua itu tertabrak mobil.)
take after (mirip)	You take after your father. (Kamu mirip ayahmu.)
take over (mengawasi)	The police will take over every building of this city. (Polisi akan mengawasi setiap gedung di kota ini.)
take up (membahas)	We will take this matter over next week. (Kami akan membahas masalah ini minggu depan.)
turn down (menolak)	Your idea was turned down. (Gagasanmu ditolak.)
turn off (mematikan lampu, TV, dll)	Turn off the TV, please. (Tolong matikan TV-nya.)
turn on (menyalakan lampu, TV, dll.)	It's dark here. Turn the light on, please. (Di sini gelap. Tolong nyalakan lampunya.)
turn out (terbukti)	His prediction turned out to be wrong. (Prediksinya terbukti salah.)
turn up (muncul)	He finally turns up in public. (Dia akhirnya muncul di muka umum.)

ADDITIONAL 2

Study The Most Frequently Used Idioms Below! (Pelajarilah Daftar Idiom Paling Sering Digunakan ini)

a good deal of (banyak)	There are a good deal of books in the library. (Ada banyak buku di perpustakaan.)
a lot of (banyak)	He has a lot of books. (Dia punya banyak buku.) He knows a lot about science. (Dia tahu banyak tentang ilmu pengetahuan.)
a man of the word (orang yang selalu memenuhi janjinya)	He is a man of the word. (Dia orang yang selalu memenuhi janjinya.)
about to (hampir/segera)	The ceremony is about to start. (Upacara akan segera dimulai.)
abroad (di luar negeri)	He is abroad. (Dia berada di luar negeri.)
according to (menurut)	According to Prof. James, there are five principles in managing a strong family. (Menurut Prof. James, ada lima prinsip dalam mengelola keluarga yang kuat.)
after all (bagaimanapun juga)	After all, Mirta is honest. (Bagaimanapun juga Mirta jujur.)
after one's own heart (sesuai dengan keinginan hatinya)	She wanted to do anything after her own heart. (Dia ingin melakukan apa saja sesuai dengan keinginan hatinya.)
all along (dari semula)	He had said all along that it was not true. (Dia sudah mengatakan sejak awal bahwa itu tidak benar.)

all of a sudden (tiba-tiba)	I didn't know why he stopped talking all of a sudden. (Saya tidak tahu kenapa dia tiba-tiba berhenti bicara.)
all over (sudah selesai)	The game is all over. Let's go home now. (Pertandingan sudah selesai. Mari kita pulang.)
all the better (lebih baik lagi)	If you can help me, that will be all the better. (Kalau kamu bias menolong saya, itu akan lebih baik lagi.)
all the same (bagaimanapun juga, namun)	He is rich. All the same he is unhappy. (Dia kaya. Namun dia tidak bahagia.)
along with (bersama dengan)	Farida, along with Alda, travel to Bali. (Farida, bersama dengan Alda, bepergian ke Bali.)
apart from (terlepas, selain daripada)	Apart from your reasons, he keep going. (Terlepas dari alasanmu, dia tetap jalan terus.)
as a matter of fact (sebenarnya, sesungguhnya)	As master of fact, he has left his wife for good. (Sebenarnya, dia telah meninggalkan istrinya untuk selamanya.)
as a whole (sebagai keseluruhan)*	You must take this job as a whole. (Kamu hams mengambil pekerjaan ini secara keseluruhan.)
as far as I am concerned (sepanjang yang saya ketahui)	As far as I'm concerned, he is still single. (Sepanjang yang saya tahu, dia masih sendirian.)
as for (adapun bagi)	As for me, I don't like meat. (Adapun bagi saya, saya tidak suka daging.)
as soon as (segera setelah)	I will call you back as soon as I arrive in Jayapura, Papua. (Saya akan meneleponmu segera setelah saya tiba di Jayapura, Papua.)

as to (mengenai)	I don't know as to his address. (Saya tidak tahu mengenai alamatnya.)
as well (juga, dan)	He likes English and Chinese as well. (Dia suka bahasa Inggris dan juga bahasa Tiongkok.)
at a time (berturut-turut, sekaligus)	Take these tablets three at a time. (Minumlah pil/tablet ini tiga buah sekaligus.)
at dawn (saat fajar)	I wake at dawn. (Saya bangun saat fajar.)
at all events (bagaimanapun juga)	At all events, Helen has decided to marry to the guy from the country. (Bagaimanapun juga, Helen telah memutuskan untuk menikah dengan pria dari desa.)
at all (sama sekali, biasanya) dengan 'not' = samasekali.	He didn't say anything at all. (Dia tidak mengatakan apa pun.)
at any rate (bagaimanapun juga)	He knows it is dangerous, but he wants to go at any rate. (Dia tahu ini bahaya, tetapi dia ingin pergi bagaimanapun juga.)
at break of day; at daybreak (pada waktu fajar)	The plane accident happened at the break of day. (Kecelakaan pesawat terbang terjadi pada waktu fajar.)
at length (secara terperinci, akhirnya)	Please, describe your trip at length. (Tolong jelaskan perjalanan Anda secara rinci.)
at will (sesuka hati)	You may not do this job at will. (Kamu tidak boleh mengerjakan pekerjaan ini sesuka hati.)
be about to (hampir)	The train is about to leave for Jakarta. (Kereta hampir berangkat ke Jakarta.)
be afraid of (takut akan)	She is afraid of dogs. (Dia takut pada anjing.)

be at a loss (bingung, tidak tahu apa yang harus dikerjakan)	When tsunami occurred, everyone was at a loss. (Ketika terjadi tsunami, setiap orang bingung, tidak tahu apa yang harus dikerjakan.)
be at large (bebas berkeliaran)	The escaped convict is still at large. (Penjahat yang melarikan diri itu masih bebas berkeliaran.)
be at work (sedang bekerja)	Please, don't bother me now. I'm still at work. (Tolong jangan ganggu saya sekarang. Saya masih bekerja.)
be aware of (sadar akan)	He is aware of his fault. (Dia sadar akan kesalahannya.)
be behind with (ketinggalan)	I am behind with my lesson. (Saya ketinggalan pelajaran saya.)
be broadminded (berpikiran luas)	You must be broadminded. (Anda harus berpikiran luas.)
be called to order (rapat dibuka)	A meeting is usually called to order by a chairman. (Pertemuan biasanya dibuka oleh ketua.)
be close up (to) (berada di dekat)	I was close up to him when he fell down. (Saya berada di dekatnya ketika dia jauh.)
be engaged to (bertunangan dengan)	She had been engaged to a Lieutenant when I met her. (Dia telah bertunangan dengan seorang Letnan ketika saya bertemu dengannya.)
be fed up with (muak akan, bosan akan)	Helen was fed up with her boy friend. (Helen muak/bosan dengan pacarnya.)
be fond of (suka akan, gemar akan)	He is fond of pop music. (Dia suka musik pop.)
be fussy about (terlampau cerewet, rewel soal)	He is too fussy about his food. (Dia terlalu rewel soal makanan.)

be interested in (berminat terhadap, tertarik pada)	He is interested in studying the History of Java. (Dia sangat tertarik mempelajari sejarah Jawa.)
be left behind (tertinggal di belakang)	Hurry up, unless you will be left behind ! (Bergegaslah, kalau tidak kamu akan tertinggal di belakang.)
be off (berangkat)	He'll be off for Japan tomorrow. (Dia akan berangkat ke Jepang besok.)
be on leave sedang cuti	I am on leave. (Saya sedang cuti.)
be out of breath (terengah-engah, sesak napas)	She is out breath after running for three kilometres. (Dia terengah-engah setelah berlari 3 km.)
be out of date (ketinggalan zaman)	This dress is out of date. (Baju ini sudah ketinggalan zaman.)
be out of town (dari atau di luar kota)	Our manager is not in today. He is out of town. (Manajer kita tidak masuk hari ini. Dia sedang keluar kota.)
be out of work (sedang menganggur)	They are out of work. (Mereka menganggur.)
be over (selesai)	The meeting is over. Let's go home. (Pertemuan sudah selesai. Mari kita pulang.)
be short of (kekurangan)	We are short of qualified teachers. (Kita kekurangan guru yang bermutu.)
be up to (terserah pada)	May I take my camera? (Boleh saya membawa kamera saya?) It is up to you. (Terserah kamu saja.)
be up to date (modern, baru)	This dictionary is up to date. (Kamus ini baru/modern.)
be upset (sangat sedih)	He was upset. (Dia sangat sedih.)

be worn-out (sangat letih)	We were all worn-out after a long trip. (Kami semua sangat letih setelah melakukan perjalanan jauh.)
bear in mind (ingat akan, mengingat)	We must bear in mind that you have an appointment at five this afternoon. (Kami harus ingat bahwa kamu ada janji pada pukul 5 sore ini.)
because of (karena)	That child died because of fever. (Anak itu meninggal karena demam.)
beg pardon (minta maaf, maaf)	I beg your pardon? (Maaf, apa kata Anda tadi?)
birth control (pembatasan kelahiran)	The government must have a program of birth control. (Pemerintah harus mempunyai program pembatasan kelahiran.)
break the news (menyiarkan berita)	TV 15 has broken the news on war. (TV 15 telah menyiarkan berita tentang perang.)
bring about (menyebabkan hasil, menyebabkan terjadinya)	This flood brings about many diseases. (Banjir ini telah menyebabkan banyak penyakit.)
bring home to (menyadarkan seseorang)	The punishment might bring home to him the danger of his action. (Hukuman ini mungkin menyadarkan dia akan bahaya tindakannya.)
bring up (mendidik)	It is the duty of parents to bring up their own children well. (Itu adalah tugas para orangtua untuk mendidik anak-anaknya dengan baik.)
But for (kalau bukan karenanya)	But for his help, he had been sent to prison. (Kalau bukan karena bantuannya, dia pasti telah dikirim ke penjara.)
by all means (tentu saja)	By all means, I know the code. (Tentu saja, saya tahu kodenya.)

by and by (tak lama kemudian, nantinya, pada akhirnya)	By and by he will come to see his fault. (Pada akhirnya, dia akan melihat kesalahannya.)
by degrees (lambat laun)	By degrees, he saw the consequence of his deed. (Lambat laun, dia melihat konsekuensi/akibat tindakannya.)
by heart (dihafalkan)	Please learn this dialogue by heart. (Tolong hafalkan dialog ini.)
by hook or by crook (tidak peduli, halal atau haram)	Today a lot of people earned a lot of money by hook or by crook. (Saat ini, banyak orang mendapatkan banyak uang, tidak peduli halal atau haram.)
by means of (dengan memakai)	He wrote a letter by means of a Parker. (Dia menulis surat dengan pulpen Parker.)
by no means (sama sekali tidak/ jangan)	You are, by no means, allowed to read my private file . (Anda sama sekali tidak diperbolehkan membaca file pribadi saya.)
by the way (omong-omong, sambil lalu)	By the way, do you know Simon's job? (Omong-omong, apakah Anda tahu pekerjaan Simon?)
by way of (melalui)	You can reach the location by way of river bank. (Kamu dapat mencapai lokasi melalui pinggiran sungai.)
catch the eye (menarik perhatian)	You must be able to catch an eye of the TVs viewers. (Kamu harus dapat menarik perhatian para pemirsa/penonton TV.)
call at, drop by (singgah, mampir)	I called at your house last night, but you were out. (Saya mampir rumahmu kemarin malam, tetapi kamu berada di luar.)
call in (minta datang ke rumah)	We are going to call in a computer technician. (Kami akan memanggil teknisi komputer untuk datang ke rumahku.)

call on (mengunjungi)	You should call on your parents. (Kamu seharusnya mengunjungi orangtuamu.)
call up (menelepon)	If necessary, just call me up. (Jika perlu, telepon aku.)
carry on (meneruskan)	Let's carry on the meeting. (Mari kita lanjutkan pertemuannya.)
carry out (melaksanakan)	It's time to carry out our plan. (Sudah saatnya kita melaksanakan rencana kita.)
catch a plane (mengejar agar bisa naik pesawat terbang)	Hurry up to catch your train. (Cepat kejar kereta api itu.)
catch sight of (melihat sekilas)	I catch sight of a black shadow in the still of the night. (Saya melihat bayangan hitam di kesunyian malam.)
catch up (mengejar ketinggalan, menyusul)	You may go now. I will catch you up later. (Kamu boleh pergi sekarang. Saya akan menyusul nanti.)
close by (dekat, di dekatnya)	My house is close by. (Rumah saya dekat.)
close down (menutup, gulung tikar)	The factory was closed down last year. (Pabrik ini tutup/gulung tikar tahun lalu.)
close up (menutup)	He closed up the book when he finished reading it. (Dia menutup bukunya ketika dia selesai membacanya.)
come about (terjadi)	How did the accident come about? (Bagaimana kecelakaan ini terjadi?)
come across (menemukan, menjumpai)	I came across this old book in a book store yesterday. (Saya menemukan buku tua ini di toko buku kemarin.)

come by (memperoleh, mendapatkan)	How did you come by this ring? (I found it in the street.) Bagaimana kamu mendapatkan cincin ini? (Saya menemukannya di jalan.)
come in (masuk, masuklah)	Come in please! (Silakan masuk!)
come off lepas, tanggal	One of my buttons has come off. (Salah satu kancing bajuku lepas.)
come on ayolah!	Come on! Let's go! (Ayolah! Mari kita pergi!)
come out (keluar (dari), muncul)	Finally, she came out and gave clarification over her issue on her marriage. (Akhirnya, dia keluar juga dan memberikan klarifikasi mengenai pernikahannya.)
come round (siuman kembali)	The girl has come round after falling down from her motorcycle. (Gadis itu telah siuman setelah jatuh dari motornya.)
come to (berjumlah)	His income comes to US\$ 135,000 after he becomes a member of parliament. (Pendapatannya berjumlah 135 ribu dolar AS setelah dia menjadi anggota parlemen.)
come to be (menjadi)	It is very difficult for her to come to be a popular singer. (Sukar baginya untuk menjadi penyanyi terkenal.)
come to blows (berkelahi, mulai berkelahi)	The gangs came to blows again at the New Year's Eve. (Geng-geng itu berkelahi lagi pada malam Tahun Baru.)
come to hand (telah diterima)	Your letter has come to hand. (Surat saudara telah diterima.)
come to light (ditemukan)	Gold comes to light in this island. (Emas ditemukan di pulau ini.)
come to pass (terjadi)	How did the plane crash come to pass? (Bagaimana tabrakan pesawat itu terjadi?)

come true (menjadi kenyataan)	In the end his dream has come true. (Akhirnya mimpinya jadi kenyataan.)
come up to (menyamai)	This football club has come up to Manchester United. (Klub sepakbola ini sudah menyamai Manchester United.)

ADDITIONAL 3

Cries of Animals and Birds

This is a list of names for the Cries of Animals and Birds.

ANIMAL	CRY
apes	gibber
asses	bray
bees	hum
beetles	drone
bears	growl
bitterns	boom
blackbirds	whistle
blackcaps	we speak of the "chick-chick" of the blackcap
bulls	bellow
canaries	sing or quaver
cats	mew, purr, swear, and caterwaul
calves	bleat and blear
chaffinches	chirp or pink
chickens	pip
cicadæ	sing
cocks	crow
cows	moo or low
crows	caw
cuckoos	cry, cuckoo
deer	bell
dogs	bark, bay, howl, and yelp

doves	coo
ducks	quack
eagles	scream
falcons	chant
flies	buzz
foxes	bark and yelp
frogs	croak
geese	cackle and hiss
goldfinch	we speak of the "merry twinkle" of the female
grasshoppers	chirp and pitter
grouse	we speak of the "drumming" of the grouse
guineafowls	cry "come back"
guineapigs	squeak
hares	squeak
hawks	scream
hens	cackle and cluck
horses	neigh and whinny
hyenas	laugh
jays	chatter
kittens	mew
lambs	baa and bleat
larks	sing
linnets	chuckle in their call
lions	roar
magpies	chatter
mice	squeak and squeal
monkeys	chatter and gibber

nightingales	pipe and warble—we also speak of its “jug-jug”
owls	hoot and screech
oxen	low and bellow
parrots	talk
peacocks	scream
peewits	cry “pee-wit”
pigeons	coo
pigs	grunt, squeak, and squeal
ravens	croak
redstarts	whistle
rooks	caw
screech-owls	screech or shriek
sheep	baa or bleat
snakes	hiss
sparrows	chirp or yelp
stags	bellow and call
swallows	twitter
swans	cry—we also speak of the “bombilation” of the swan
thrushes	whistle
tigers	growl
tits	we speak of the “twittwit” of the bottle-tit
turkey-cocks	gobble
vultures	scream
whitethroats	chirr
wolves	howl

DAFTAR PUSTAKA

- Allen, W.S. 1973. *Living English Structures*. London: Longman Green & Co.
- Azar, Betty Schramper. 1989. *Understanding and Using English Grammar*. New Jersey: Prentice Hall, Inc.
- Azar, Betty Schramper. 1992. *Fundamentals of English Grammarjtegens*. New Jersey: Prentice Hall, Inc.
- Azar, Betty Schramper. 1996. *Basic English Grammar*. New Jersey: Prentice Hall, Inc.
- Babin, Edith H. 1987. *TOEFL Test of English As A Foreign Language*. New York: Arco Publishing, Simon & Schuster, Inc.
- Boatener, Maxine Tull and Gates, John Edward. 1975. *Dictionary of American Idioms*. New York: Barrons' Educational Series, Inc.
- Echols. John M and Hassan Shadily. 1976. *Kamus Inggris-Indonesia*. Jakarta: Gramedia.
- Edithia Gloria Simanjuntak. 1988. *Developing Reading Skills For EFL Students*. Jakarta: Departemen Pendidikan dan Kebudayaan.
- Educational Testing Service. 2001. *TOEFL Institutional Testing Program-Examine Handbook and Admission Form*. New Jersey: Princeton.
- Educational Testing Service. 2002. *TOEFL Bulletin*. New Jersey: Princeton
- Frank, Marcella. 1974. *Modern English-A Practical Reference Guide*. New Jersey: Prentice Hall.
- Hinkel, Eli. 2005. *TOEFL Test Strategies*. Jakarta: Binarupa Aksara Publishing & Co
- Hornby, A.S. 1995. *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary*. London: Oxford University Press.
- Jessperson, Otto. 1933. *Essentials of English Grammar*, George Allen & Unwin, Ltd.
- Lougheed, Lin. 2004. *How To Prepare For the TOEIC TEST (Test of English For International Communication)*. Jakarta: Binarupa Aksara Publishing & Co.
- Murphy, Raymond. 1990. *Essential Grammar in Use: A reference and practice book for elementarv students*. London: Cambridge University Press.
- Neufeldt, Victoria and David Bernard Guralnik. 1990. *Webster's New World: Dictionary of American English*. New Jersey: Prentice Hall, Inc.

- Nuryanto, F. 1987. *Essentials of English Sentences Structures*. Jakarta: Azmadia Somacandra.
- Oshima, Alice and Hogue, Ann. 1999. *Writing Academic English*, London: Pearson Longman
- Riyanto, Slamet. 2007. *A Handbook of English Grammar: An Effective Way Towards Fluent English*. Yogyakarta: Pustaka Pelajar.
- Summers, Delia. 1988. *Longman Dictionary of English Language and Culture*. Essex: Addison Wesley Longman.
- Swan, Michael and Catherine Walte. 1995. *Practical English Usage*. London: Oxford University Press.
- Taylor, Grant. 1956. *Mastering American English*. New Jersey: McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc.
- Thomas, Henry. 1959. *The Complete Book of English*. New York: Perma Giants.
- Thomson, A.J. and A.V. Martinet. 1980. *A Practical English Grammar*. London: Oxford University Press.
- Zanvoort, R.W. 1964. *A Handbook of English Grammar*. Groningen: B.Wolter's Uitegeversmaatschappij.

www.englishpractice.com
www.wordsmile.com

TENTANG PENULIS

MIEN KASMINI

Lahir di Pati, Jawa Tengah 30 November 1965. Menyelesaikan Program Diploma III di Universitas Negeri Sebelas Maret Solo, kemudian melanjutkan jenjang S1 di Universitas Negeri Semarang. Aktivitas yang pernah dijalani, pernah mengajar di beberapa sekolah SMP, SMA, lembaga bimbil, dan lembaga kursus Bahasa Inggris. Sampai sekarang masih aktif sebagai pengajar bahasa Inggris di beberapa Perguruan Tinggi di Jakarta.

SIWI KADARMO

Lahir di Blitar, Jawa Timur 11 Januari 1936. Menyelesaikan pendidikan S1, S2, dan S3 di Institut Keguruan dan Ilmu Pendidikan (IKIP) Jakarta. Pensiun dari pegawai Lembaga Administrasi Negara. Berpengalaman mengajar di lembaga-lembaga Diklat Pegawai Negeri. Bersama penulis pertama, sudah menulis beberapa buku tentang bahan ajar Bahasa Inggris, meliputi *Enrichment Reading for Elementary School*, *Fun English for Kids*, *3 Hari Jago Bahasa Inggris*, dan *English for Secretary*.



FREE ANDROID APPS



APPS TOEFL CMEDIA

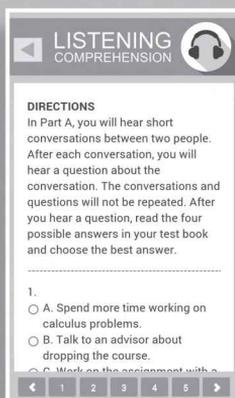


Instal

Untuk download apps toefl Cmedia, Anda dapat melakukan langkah-langkah sebagai berikut.

1. Buka Google Play dan search "TOEFL CMEDIA" atau "Penerbit Cmedia".
2. Klik "TOEFL CMEDIA" dari "Penerbit Cmedia".
3. Klik Install.

Preview



MODUL

ENGLISH

GRAMMAR

UNTUK
PELAJAR,
MAHASISWA,
& UMUM

METODE TERBAIK MENGUASAI TATA BAHASA INGGRIS LISAN DAN TERTULIS

Modul English Grammar merupakan solusi cerdas bagi Anda yang ingin menguasai bahasa Inggris lisan dan tertulis. Anda akan mendapatkan:

- **Ringkasan Materi Lengkap**, dikupas tuntas dengan bahasa yang mudah dipahami oleh Anda yang baru mempelajari bahasa Inggris sekalipun.
- **Tip dan Trik**, berisi kumpulan tip dan trik seputar penggunaan *grammar* bahasa Inggris yang baik dan benar.
- **Latihan Soal Komprehensif**, terdiri atas ratusan soal yang akan menguji kemampuan anda dalam berbahasa Inggris.
- **Paket Soal Structure and Written Expression**, sebagai latihan untuk Anda yang akan menghadapi Paper-Based TOEFL.
- **Free Android Apps "TOEFL CMedia"**, agar Anda bisa belajar dan berlatih kapan saja dan di mana saja.



Redaksi:

Jl. H. Montong No. 57 Ciganjur,
Jagakarsa, Jakarta Selatan 12630

Telp: (021) 78883030 / Faks: (021) 7270996
Email: redaksi@penerbitcmedia.com

Website: www.penerbitcmedia.com



YOUTUBE CHANNEL

ISBN (13) 978-602-6992-97-0



9 786026 992970

BAHASA